





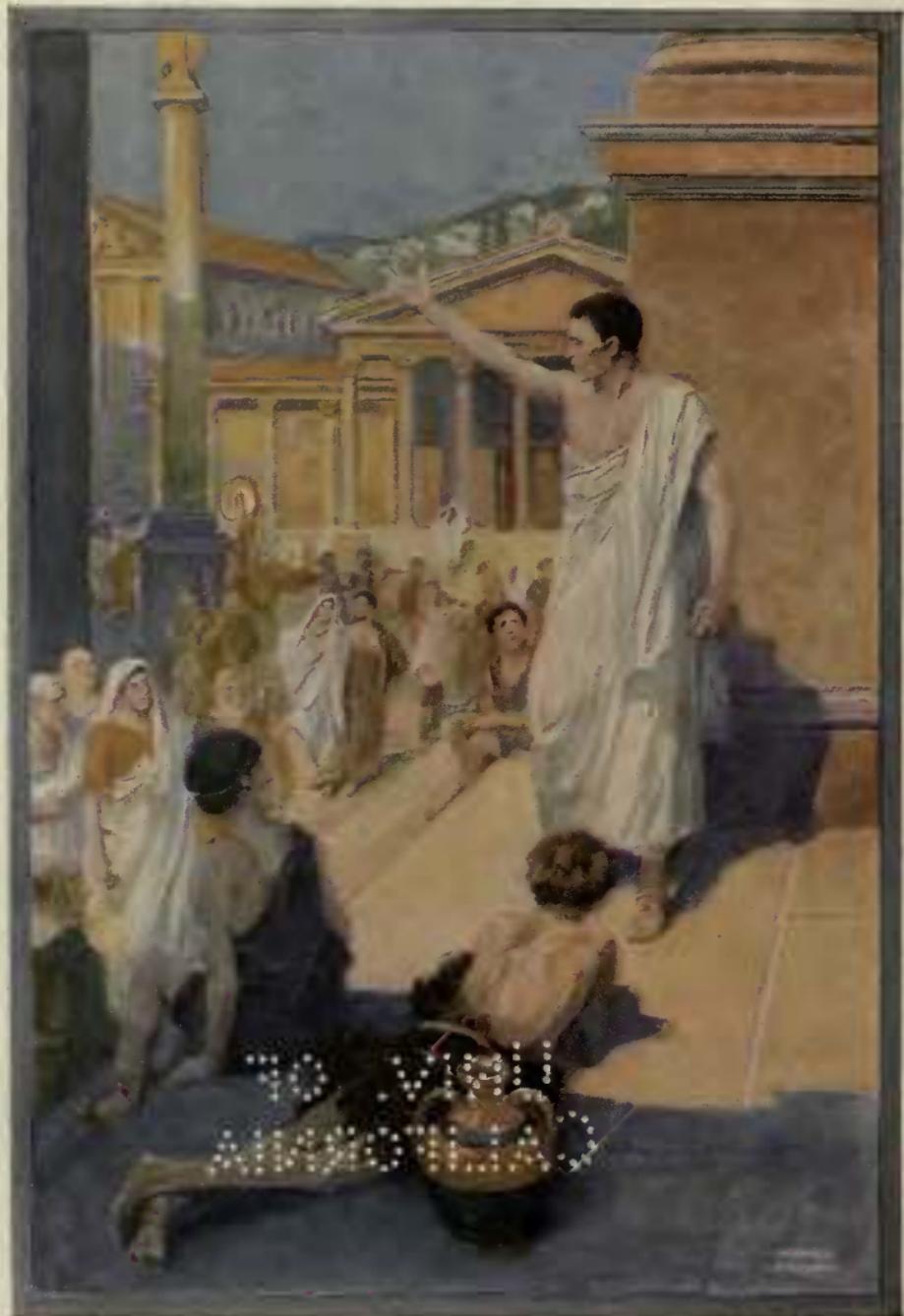




Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2007 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

3 3  
3 0 20 8 9 8  
3 4 30 2 9 2  
3 3 3 2 2 3 2 2  
3 6 3 3 3 3 3 3

2 2  
2 2 2 2 2 2 2  
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2  
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2  
2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2



A ROMAN CITIZEN SPEAKS

# COLLAR AND DANIELL'S FIRST YEAR LATIN

REVISED BY

THORNTON JENKINS\*

HEAD MASTER, HIGH SCHOOL, MALDEN, MASSACHUSETTS



GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON  
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1901, BY WILLIAM C. COLLAR AND M. GRANT DANIELL  
COPYRIGHT, 1918, BY GINN AND COMPANY  
ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL  
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

318.4

Main L. 10:

Literary Dept.

The Athenaeum Press  
GINN AND COMPANY - PRO-  
PRIETORS - BOSTON - U.S.A.

760  
C 697  
for  
1918

## PREFACE

The book that is placed in the hands of a pupil during his first year of the study of Latin should be simple and clear and interesting in its treatment of the language; it should teach with the utmost thoroughness those principles that it attempts to teach, but it should not attempt to teach to-day what may be taught more properly to-morrow; it should get the pupil into the reading of easy connected Latin as soon as possible, and for this purpose should supply a generous amount of material graded to his attainment; and it should never allow the pupil to leave the classroom without a reminder of the extent to which Latin is a part of his own language.

With these convictions the revision of Collar and Daniell's "First Year Latin" was undertaken. All these principles underlay the plan of "First Year Latin," but the unanimity with which they have been accepted since the publication of that text has made it possible in the revision so to extend their application as to produce what is in effect a new book.

The vocabulary has been made briefer and more Cæsarian. From the vocabularies of the lessons the pupil is asked to learn the meanings of some five hundred and seventy words. About ninety per cent of these words are included in the list of one thousand words which Professor Lodge<sup>1</sup> suggests should be learned before the end of the second year of the study of Latin. Over sixty per cent occur more than ten times in Cæsar. In the Selections for Reading the pupil has a chance to become acquainted casually with a wider vocabulary.

<sup>1</sup> Vocabulary of High School Latin.

A number of constructions which were taught in the original book have been omitted. With three exceptions the constructions included in the revision are those which Byrne<sup>1</sup> recommends for the first year. Similarly, the pupil is no longer required to learn uncommon forms which are not necessary for his second-year reading.

Increased attention has been given to derivatives. Related English words are often placed after the Latin words in the vocabularies of the lessons as well as in the general vocabulary. Everywhere in the reviews this important part of the study of Latin is kept constantly before the pupil. Suggestions are offered for the keeping of notebooks of English derivatives. The force of certain common prefixes and suffixes in the formation and meaning of Latin words is also explained.

Interspersed throughout the book there are ten Review Lessons, which take up the words and constructions previously taught. The machinery for drill has been further strengthened by a summary of the uses of nouns and of verbs, and by review questions touching upon the syntax, forms, derivatives, and principles of each lesson. These questions have been placed after the Selections for Reading, that they may be somewhat removed from the lessons they concern.

The treatment of the Essentials of Grammar has been made more useful by a comparison of English grammar with Latin grammar, and by the inclusion of Latin equivalents for the English illustrative words and phrases.

The material for reading has been somewhat changed, particularly by the omission of the Fables and Stories, and by the introduction of the Story of Perseus, of the simplified narrative of Cæsar's Campaign against the Helvetians, and of a number of pages from Eutropius. In all the selections the

<sup>1</sup> The Syntax of High School Latin.

syntāx has been made to conform with that taught in the lessons, so that the pupil may not be bothered or discouraged by unfamiliar constructions.

As an aid to the pupil's pronunciation, a mark of accent has been placed on the words in the vocabularies of the first eighteen lessons, and on declensions and conjugations, both in the text and in the Appendix.

Teachers who are familiar with "First Year Latin" will find that none of its well-known excellences have been sacrificed in the revision. There are, for example, the same short lessons, usually less than two pages in length. In the exercises the sentences for translation remain simple. Nowhere are many constructions brought within the limits of a single sentence. The exercises for translation from English into Latin are relatively shorter than those from Latin into English. The order in which the verb is developed and in which the various constructions are presented will be found the same, with a few exceptions. In the study of syntax the pupil is still led from the observation of model sentences to the deduction of usages and principles. Passages of connected Latin are introduced early and are of frequent occurrence throughout the lessons, and there is ample material for reading after the lessons have been completed. The content of the book is still such that it is possible for high-school classes to go through the lessons within thirty weeks.

The "Teacher's Manual," in addition to general directions and notes on each lesson, contains carefully graded sentences for sight reading and for the practice of the "direct method," as well as material for drill on English derivatives of the Latin words of the vocabularies.

It is hoped that teachers will find the numerous illustrations a help to them in familiarizing pupils with the life of the

Romans. The four plates in colors were made especially for this book by Mr. Arthur E. Becher after a careful study of all the phases of Roman life that they represent. As for the other pictures, half tones have been used where the subject could be made more realistic if reproduced directly from a photograph. In cases where line engravings seemed more suitable, drawings in the style of the early Italian engravings were made for the purpose by Mr. Thomas M. Cleland, Mr. W. A. Dwiggins, and Mr. Adrian J. Iorio. As a whole the illustrations are believed to be of a quality unexcelled in schoolbooks.

The reviser wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to the suggestions received from Mr. Collar himself, who, before his death, had given considerable thought to the aim and scope of the revision. Indebtedness is also gratefully acknowledged to Professor Charles Knapp, of Barnard College, New York; to Mr. Herbert F. Hancox, of Lewis Institute, Chicago; and to Miss Grace I. Bridge and Miss Grace E. Jackson, of the Hyde Park High School, Chicago, for their helpful criticisms.

T. J.

## CONTENTS

|   | PAGE |
|---|------|
| ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR . . . . .   | I    |
| TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN: WHAT LATIN IS, AND WHY IT IS<br>STUDIED. HOW TO STUDY LATIN . . . . .                                 | 15   |
| INTRODUCTION: ALPHABET, SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES,<br>QUANTITY, ACCENT . . . . .   | 19   |
| <br>LESSON  |      |
| I. THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS. THE<br>NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT . . . . .                                 | 24   |
| II. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT . . . . .   | 26   |
| III. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJU-<br>GATION . . . . .  | 28   |
| IV. THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION . . . . .   | 30   |
| V. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJU-<br>GATION. CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH <i>Quod</i> . . . . .                       | 32   |
| VI. THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT. THE<br>ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW<br>PLACE WHERE . . . . . | 34   |
| VII. THE FIRST DECLENSION. GENDER . . . . .   | 36   |
| FIRST REVIEW LESSON . . . . .   | 38   |
| VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .   | 40   |
| IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS . . . . .  | 42   |
| X. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>Sum</i> . PREDICATE NOUN AND<br>PREDICATE ADJECTIVE . . . . .                                   | 44   |
| XI. APPosition. <i>Cornēlia et Iūlia</i> . . . . .  | 46   |
| XII. THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN -er, -ir, -ius, AND -ium   | 48   |
| XIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS END-<br>ING IN -er. <i>Dē Graeciā</i> . . . . .                            | 50   |

## LESSON

## PAGE

|   |    |
|---|----|
| XIV. THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <b>Sum</b> . THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES . . . . .                                   | 52 |
| SECOND REVIEW LESSON . . . . .  | 54 |
| XV. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS . . . . .                             | 56 |
| XVI. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER . . . . .                              | 58 |
| XVII. PRINCIPAL PARTS. THE PERFECT STEM. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION. <b>Dē Sabīnīs</b>                    | 60 |
| XVIII. THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION. THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT . . . . .                               | 62 |
| XIX. THE DEMONSTRATIVE <b>Is</b> . THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF <b>Sum</b> . . . . .   | 64 |
| XX. THE INTERROGATIVE <b>Quis</b> . <b>Dē Deīs Rōmānōrum</b> . . . . .  | 66 |
| XXI. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION . . . . .                           | 68 |
| THIRD REVIEW LESSON . . . . .   | 70 |
| XXII. READING LESSON. <b>Dē Īcarō. Rōmānī prō Sociīs pugnant</b> . . . . .  | 72 |
| XXIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .   | 74 |
| XXIV. THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN <b>-iō</b> . THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH . . . . . | 76 |
| XXV. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE. PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE . . . . .  | 78 |
| XXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION: <b>i</b> -STEMS . . . . .   | 80 |
| XXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS . . . . .                                    | 82 |
| XXVIII. READING LESSON. <b>Horātius Pontem dēfendit. Dē Nātiō-nibus Eurōpae</b> . . . . .                                       | 84 |
| FOURTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .  | 86 |
| XXIX. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .  | 88 |
| XXX. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <b>Conloquium</b> . . . . .  | 90 |
| XXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME. <b>Laconic Speeches</b> . . . . .   | 92 |

## CONTENTS

ix

| LESSON  | PAGE |
|---|------|
| XXXII. THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE<br>ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS . . . . .   | 94   |
| XXXIII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <i>Hic</i> AND <i>Ille</i> . PLACE FROM<br>WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS . . . . .                                     | 96   |
| XXXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Victōria 'Caesaris. Dē Caesare et<br/>Britannīs</i> . . . . .   | 98   |
| XXXV. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE<br>PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGA-<br>TIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT . . . . .                 | 100  |
| XXXVI. THE RELATIVE <i>Qui</i> . . . . .<br>FIFTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .   | 102  |
| XXXVII. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE<br>PASSIVE OF <i>Regō</i> AND <i>Capiō</i> . . . . .  | 106  |
| XXXVIII. THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .  | 108  |
| XXXIX. THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE<br>PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. <i>Veturia,</i><br><i>Māter Coriolānī. Dē Perseō</i> . . . . . | 110  |
| XL. THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. THE ABLATIVE OF<br>SEPARATION . . . . .  | 112  |
| XLI. THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT<br>INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS. <i>Iup-<br/>piter Perseum servat</i> . . . . .                | 114  |
| XLII. THE FOURTH DECLENSION . . . . .   | 116  |
| XLIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .<br>SIXTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .  | 118  |
| XLIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -er OR<br>-lis. THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE . . . . .   | 122  |
| XLV. READING LESSON. <i>Scipiō et Hannibal. Perseus Medū-<br/>sam quaerit</i> . . . . .   | 124  |
| XLVI. THE IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. THE<br>ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE . . . . .   | 126  |
| XLVII. THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS  | 128  |
| XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT  | 130  |

| LESSON   | PAGE       |
|--|------------|
| XLIX. READING LESSON. <i>A Letter from Pompeii.</i> Perseus Medūsam interficit . . . . .                                 | 132        |
| L. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE. PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH <b>Ut</b> AND <b>Nē</b> . . . . .                 | 134        |
| LI. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. SEQUENCE OF TENSES .  | 136        |
| LII. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. RESULT CLAUSES. SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .                                     | 138<br>140 |
| LIII. READING LESSON. Caesar Hostis vincit. Andromeda Filia Cēpheī . . . . .   | 142        |
| LIV. THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS . . . . .  | 144        |
| LV. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE . .   | 146        |
| LVI. ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN <b>-ius</b> . Mōnstrum appropinquat . . . . .                                     | 148        |
| LVII. THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT . .  | 150        |
| LVIII. THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT. THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENTS . .                    | 152        |
| LIX. READING LESSON. Caesar in Conciliō dīcit. Perseus Cēpheō Andromedam reddit . . . . .                                | 156        |
| LX. THE DEMONSTRATIVES <b>Idem</b> , <b>Ipse</b> , <b>Iste</b> . THE IRREGULAR VERB <b>Possum</b> . . . . .              | 158        |
| EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON . . . . .   | 160        |
| LXI. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. <i>The Nations of Gaul</i> . .   | 162        |
| LXII. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE . . . . .  | 164        |
| LXIII. THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS. THE IRREGULAR VERBS <b>Volō</b> , <b>Nōlō</b> , <b>Mālō</b> . . . . . | 166        |
| LXIV. READING LESSON. <i>Belling the Cat.</i> Nasica and Ennius. Orgetorix and the Helvetians . . . . .                  | 168        |
| LXV. PARTICIPLES . . . . .   | 170        |
| LXVI. READING LESSON. <i>Dicta Antiquōrum.</i> Orgetorix and the Helvetians (CONTINUED) . . . . .                        | 173        |
| LXVII. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .   | 175        |

## CONTENTS

xi

| LESSON  | PAGE |
|---|------|
| LXVIII. THE GERUND. THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>Eō</i>  | 178  |
| NINTH REVIEW LESSON   | 180  |
| LXIX. THE GERUNDIVE. THE IRREGULAR VERB <i>Ferō</i>   | 182  |
| LXX. READING LESSON. <i>The Helvetians leave their Territory</i>  | 184  |
| LXXI. THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. DEONENT VERBS  | 186  |
| LXXII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH <i>Cum</i> . THE IRREGULAR VERB<br><i>Fiō</i>                                    | 188  |
| LXXIII. READING LESSON. <i>Cæsar refuses the Helvetians Per-<br/>mission to go through the Roman Province</i> | 190  |
| LXXIV. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY <i>Quod</i> .<br>THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES         | 192  |
| LXXV. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS  | 194  |
| TENTH REVIEW LESSON   | 196  |
| SUMMARY: THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS  | 198  |
| <br>SELECTIONS FOR READING:   |      |
| Cæsar: The Campaign against the Helvetians  | 201  |
| Cæsar: The Story of the Aduatuci  | 206  |
| Stories of Hercules   | 208  |
| Stories of Ulysses  | 213  |
| Eutropius: History of Rome  | 218  |
| Stories from Roman History  | 223  |
| REVIEW QUESTIONS  | 227  |
| <br>APPENDIX I:   |      |
| Rules of Syntax   | 245  |
| Formation of Latin Words  | 249  |
| English Derivatives   | 251  |
| <br>APPENDIX II:  |      |
| Declensions and Conjugations  | 253  |
| LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY  | 287  |
| ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY  | 331  |
| INDEX   | 341  |



# FIRST YEAR LATIN

## ESSENTIALS OF GRAMMAR

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH

#### NOUNS

I. a. A *noun* is the name of a person, place, or thing : *boy, London, ship*; *puer, Londinium, nāvis*.

b. A *proper noun* is the name of a particular person, place, or thing : *Cornelia, Rome, Rhone*; *Cornēlia, Rōma, Rhodanus*.

c. A *common noun* is a name that may be applied to any one of a class of objects : *boy, city, day*; *puer, urbs, diēs*.

d. A *collective noun* is a name that may be applied to a group of objects, though itself in the singular number (xxiii) : *crowd, family*; *multitūdō, gēns*.

e. A *verbal noun* is the name of an action : *seeing, writing, to see, to write*; *videndī* (459), *scribendī, vidēre, scribēre*.

f. An *abstract noun* is the name of a quality or condition : *goodness, truth, poverty*; *bonitās, vēritās, paupertās*.

#### PRONOUNS

II. a. A *pronoun* is a word used to take the place of a noun or of another pronoun : *I, you, him, this, who*; *ego, tū, eum, hoc, qui*.

b. The noun (or pronoun) for which a pronoun stands is called its *antecedent* (from *antecēdere*, to go before). Thus, in the sentence *John goes to school, but he does not study*, the

noun *John* is the antecedent of *he*. The antecedent is especially common with a relative pronoun (*ii, d*). Neither in Latin nor in English does the antecedent necessarily stand in advance of its pronoun: *What he says, he believes, quod dicit, id crēdit.*

c. A *personal pronoun* shows by its form whether it stands (1) for the speaker: *I, we; ego, nōs*, that is, the *first person*; (2) for the person spoken to: *thou, you; tū, vōs*, that is, the *second person*; or (3) for the person or thing spoken of: *he, she, it, they; is, ea, id, eī*, that is, the *third person*.

d. A *relative pronoun* connects a subordinate clause, in which it stands, with the antecedent: *The book that you have is mine, liber quem habēs meus est*. The relative pronouns in English are *who, which, that, and as*; in Latin the relative is *qui*.

e. An *interrogative pronoun* is used to ask a question: *Who is walking in the garden? Quis in hortō ambulat?* The interrogative pronouns in English are *who, which, and what*; in Latin, *quis* and *uter*.

f. A *demonstrative pronoun* points out an object definitely: *this, that, these, those; hic, ille, hī, illi*.

g. An *indefinite pronoun* refers to an object indefinitely: *some, some one, any, any one; aliquis, quis*.

h. A *reflexive pronoun* refers back to the subject: *He blamed himself, sē culpāvit.*

### ADJECTIVES

III. a. An *adjective* is a word used to qualify or limit a noun or a pronoun: *good book, beautiful moon, five girls; liber bonus, lūna pulchra, quīnque puellae.*

b. *A, an, and the*, really limiting adjectives, are sometimes called *articles*. *The* is the *definite article*, *a* or *an* the *indefinite article*. These articles are not used in Latin.

c. *Numeral adjectives* denote how many persons or things are under consideration. They are either *cardinal*, denoting how many: *one, two, three, four*; *ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor*; or *ordinal*, denoting which in order: *first, second, third, fourth*; *prīmus, secundus, tertius, quārtus*.

d. *Possessive adjectives* denote ownership: *my friend, our house*; *meus amīcus, nostra domus*. Possessive adjectives are frequently used as possessive pronouns.

e. The demonstrative pronouns, the indefinite pronouns, and the interrogative pronouns *which* and *what* may be used as adjectives, and are then called respectively *demonstrative adjectives*: *this book, that house; hic liber, illa domus*; *indefinite adjectives*: *some boys, aliquī puerī*; and *interrogative adjectives*: *Which way shall we go? Quā viā ibimus?*

f. Adjectives are often used as nouns: "The land of the free," *patria liberōrum*.

### VERBS

IV. a. A *verb* is a word which can declare or assert something about a person, a place, or a thing: *The man laughs, vir ridet; the town is captured, oppidum captum est; the leaf falls, folium cadit.*

b. A verb which has an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *transitive*, or to be *used transitively*: *The girl has a rose, puella rosam habet.*

c. A verb which does not have an object (xiv, a) to complete its meaning is said to be *intransitive*, or to be *used intransitively*: *Birds fly, avēs volant; I walk, ambulō.*

NOTE. Thus certain verbs may at one time be transitive and at another intransitive: *The wind blew the snow into our faces; the wind blew furiously.*

*d.* Verbs are classified as *regular* or *irregular*. This distinction is made merely for convenience. A *regular verb* in English forms its imperfect (past) tense (xxxiii, *a*) and past participle (xxxiv, *b*) by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *love*; past, *loved*; past participle, *loved*. For Latin regular verbs see 658–662.

*e.* An *irregular verb* in English does not form its imperfect (past) tense by the addition of *d* or *ed* to the present: present, *give*; past, *gave*; past participle, *given*. For Latin irregular verbs see 663–668.

*f.* An *auxiliary verb* is used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I am loved, he has given*. In Latin the verb *esse, to be* (663), is so used: *missus est, he has been sent*.

## ADVERBS

V. *a.* An *adverb* is used to modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb: *He walks swiftly, celeriter ambulat*.

*b.* An *adverb of place* answers the question *where?* — *here, there, hence; hic, illic, hinc*.

*c.* An *adverb of time* answers the question *when?* — *then, now, often; tum, nunc, saepe*.

*d.* An *adverb of manner* answers the question *how?* — *so, well, ill; sic, bene, male*.

*e.* An *adverb of degree* answers the question *how much?* — *little, almost, enough; paulō, paene, satis*.

*f.* A *modal adverb* expresses affirmation or negation, or the degree of confidence with which a statement is made: *yes, no, certainly, perhaps; certē, forsitan*.

## PREPOSITIONS

VI. A preposition is used before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. Usually the relation shown is position, direction, or time : *He sent a legion against the enemy, in hostēs legiōnem misit.* In Latin certain phrases which would be introduced in English by a preposition are expressed by the use of one of the cases (xxiv, b) without a preposition : *At dawn he sent a legion, primā lūce legiōnem misit.*

## CONJUNCTIONS

VII. a. A *conjunction* connects words, phrases (xvi), clauses (xx), and sentences (xviii) : *boys and girls, puerī et puellae; they fought bravely but were conquered, fortiter pugnāvērunt sed victi sunt.*

b. A *coördinate conjunction* connects words, phrases, clauses, and sentences of equal order or rank. The conjunctions in the examples in VII, a are coördinate.

c. A *subordinate conjunction* connects a subordinate clause (xx, a) with a principal clause (xx, a) : *The boy was praised because he was industrious, puer laudātus est quod impiger erat.*

## INTERJECTIONS

VIII. An *interjection* is used to express strong feeling. It is not grammatically related to any other word in the sentence : *oh! ah! alas! hurrah! ēheu! ecce!*

NOTE. The following couplets have often proved useful to young persons in identifying the parts of speech :

Three little words we often see  
Are Articles, *a, an, and the.*

A Noun's the name of anything;  
As *school or garden, hoop or swing.*

Adjectives tell the kind of noun ;  
As *great, small, pretty, white, or brown.*

Instead of nouns the Pronouns stand ;  
*I come, you go, as they command.*

Verbs tell of something being done ;  
As *read, write, spell, sing, jump, or run.*

How things are done the Adverbs tell ;  
As *slowly, quickly, ill, or well.*

They also tell us where and when ;  
As *here and there and now and then.*

A Preposition stands before  
A noun ; as *in or through* a door.

Conjunctions join the words together ;  
As rain *and* sunshine, wind *or* weather.

Conjunctions sentences unite ;  
As kittens scratch *and* puppies bite.

An Interjection shows surprise ;  
As *Oh ! how pretty ! Ah ! how wise !*

### THE SENTENCE

IX. A *sentence* is a word or a group of words expressing a thought : *Stars shine ; he walks ; stellae lūcent ; ambulat.*

X. a. A *declarative sentence* declares or asserts something : *The farmers are plowing the fields, agricolae agrōs arant.*

b. An *interrogative sentence* asks a question : *Why are the farmers plowing the fields ? Cūr agricolae agrōs arant ?*

c. An *imperative sentence* expresses a command, a request, or an entreaty : *Plow the fields to-day, hodiē agrōs arāte.*

d. An *exclamatory sentence* expresses strong feeling or emotion : *Would that he had remained ! Utinam mānsisset !*

XI. *a.* A sentence is made up of two parts, one called the *subject* and the other the *predicate*.

*b.* The *subject* represents the person, place, or thing about which something is declared or asserted: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

*c.* The *predicate* declares or asserts something about the person, place, or thing which the subject represents: *Birds sing, avēs cantant.*

NOTE. In English and in Latin either the subject or the predicate, or both, may be enlarged to any extent by the addition of qualifying words and expressions called modifiers: *My sister's small birds | sing sweetly in the morning.*

XII. The *simple subject* is the noun or pronoun which signifies the person, place, or thing about which the assertion is made. The *simple predicate* is the verb that makes the assertion. *Birds* is the simple subject, and *sing* the simple predicate, in the note under XI, *c.*

XIII. The *complete subject* is the simple subject with all its modifiers. The *complete predicate* is the simple predicate with all its modifiers. Thus, in the example in the note under XI, *c* the complete subject is all that precedes the vertical line, and the complete predicate all that follows it.

XIV. *a.* The *object* of a verb is a word or an expression that completes the meaning of the verb, and signifies that which is affected by the action: *He sent messengers, nūntiōs mīsit; he wished me to go to Italy, mē in Italiam īre voluit.*

*b.* The *direct object* represents that which is immediately affected by the action of the verb; the *indirect object* that to or for which the action is performed. Thus, in *He gave me a book, mihi librum dedit*, *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect.

XV. *a.* A *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective* is used after certain intransitive or passive verbs to complete their meaning, and to describe or define the subject: *Marcus is a sailor*; *the sailor is brave*; *Mārcus nauta est*; *nauta fortis est*.

*b.* The predicate noun or adjective is called the *complement* of the verb. Intransitive verbs that require a complement are called *copulative verbs*. The verb *be* (Latin *esse*) in its various forms (*am, was, has been, etc.*) is often called the *copula*.

*c.* The predicate noun or adjective has the same case as the subject; hence the term *predicate nominative*.

XVI. *a.* A *phrase* is a combination of words (not subject and predicate) used as a single part of speech.

*b.* An *adjective phrase* modifies a noun: *A man of great valor, vir magnae virtūtis*.

*c.* An *adverbial phrase* modifies a verb: *They work with great diligence, magnā cum diligentiā labōrant*. In Latin certain cases of nouns are used to express what in English would be prepositional phrases of an adverbial nature (vi).

XVII. A *simple sentence* contains but one statement, that is, one subject and one predicate: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, Caesar aciem instrūxit*.

XVIII. A *compound sentence* contains two or more independent statements: *Cæsar drew up a line of battle, but the enemy fled, Caesar aciem instrūxit, sed hostēs fūgērunt*.

NOTE. An independent statement is one that can stand alone; it does not depend on (qualify or limit) another statement.

XIX. A *complex sentence* contains one independent (principal) statement and one or more dependent (subordinate)

statements : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

NOTE. A dependent, or subordinate, statement is one that qualifies or limits another in some way ; thus, the dependent statement *when the messenger had replied* limits the verb *spoke*, telling when the lieutenant spoke.

XX. *a.* The separate statements in a compound or a complex sentence are called *clauses*, and, as has already been seen, they may be either *independent (principal)* or *dependent (subordinate)*.

*b.* When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify nouns or pronouns they are called *adjective clauses* : *The girls whom we praised were good, puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant.*

*c.* When dependent (subordinate) clauses modify verbs they are called *adverbial clauses* : *When the messenger had replied, the lieutenant spoke as follows, cum nūntius respondisset, lēgātus haec dixit.*

*d.* When dependent (subordinate) clauses are used as nouns they are called *substantive clauses* : *That you are here pleases us, quod ades nōs dēlectat.*

*e.* Dependent (subordinate) clauses introduced by *when* (Latin *cum*, *ubi*, etc.) are called *temporal clauses* ; introduced by *because* (Latin *quod* etc.), they are called *causal clauses* ; introduced by *if* (Latin *sī*), they are called *conditional clauses* ; introduced by *although* (Latin *cum*, *etsī*, etc.), they are called *concessive clauses* ; introduced by a relative pronoun (Latin *qui*), they are called *relative clauses*.

*f.* The independent clause of a complex sentence is called the *principal clause*. Connected clauses that are of the same rank, both independent or both dependent, are said to be *coördinate*.

## INFLECTION

XXI. *Inflection* is a change in the form of a word to indicate a change in its meaning or use: *man, men, boy, boy's, love, loved; vir, viri, puer, pueri, amant, amabant.*

## DECLENSION

XXII. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called its *declension*. Nouns and pronouns in English are declined to show number and case, and a few nouns to show gender. In Latin the nouns and pronouns are declined; adjectives also are declined in gender, number, and case to agree with the nouns which they modify.

*Number*

XXIII. A noun or pronoun is in the *singular number* when it means one person, place, or thing: *town, city, I; oppidum, urbs, ego*; in the *plural number* when it means more than one person, place, or thing: *towns, cities, we; oppida, urbēs, nōs.*

*Case*

XXIV. a. The several forms taken by words that are declined are called *cases*. In English there are the following cases, to indicate the uses of nouns and pronouns:

1. The *nominative*, primarily used as the subject of a sentence: *He throws the ball.*
2. The *possessive* (genitive), used to denote possession or ownership: *John throws his ball; see the queen's crown.*
3. The *objective* (accusative), used as the object of a transitive verb or of a preposition: *John throws the ball to him.*
4. The *dative*, used to express the indirect object of the verb: *John throws him the ball.* Only personal pronouns and the pronoun *who* have separate forms for these cases in English.

Nouns have the nominative, objective, and dative alike, with a separate form for the possessive.

b. In Latin there are seven cases: *nominative, genitive, dative; accusative, ablative, vocative, and locative*; but a single form sometimes does duty for several cases (cf. *agricola*, 63). The nominative, genitive, and accusative cases are used much like the same cases in English. The dative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *to* or *for*: *to the farmer, for the man*. The ablative expresses in general that relation of words to other words which is expressed in English by prepositional phrases beginning with *from, with, by, in*: *with a spear, by a story*.

c. The direct object of a verb in Latin is in the accusative case, but sometimes the direct object in English is expressed in Latin by the dative (425, 433).

### *Gender*

XXV. a. The gender of English nouns is what is called *natural gender*, and hence has very little to do with grammar. Thus, a noun denoting a male is in the *masculine gender*: *man, boy, father*; a noun denoting a female is in the *feminine gender*: *woman, girl, mother*; one denoting either male or female is in the *common gender*: *cat, dog, parent*; one denoting a sexless object is in the *neuter gender*: *river, wind, mountain*.

b. In Latin only nouns that denote persons and some animals have natural gender: *nauta, sailor* (masc.); *māter, mother* (fem.). All others have an arbitrary gender, called *grammatical gender*, determined chiefly by the ending: *flūmen, river* (neut.); *ventus, wind* (masc.); *nūbēs, cloud* (fem.).

## COMPARISON

XXVI. *a.* English adjectives and adverbs are inflected to show degree. This is called *comparison*. There are three degrees of comparison, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*: positive *wise*, comparative *wiser*, superlative *wisest*; positive *good*, comparative *better*, superlative *best*; positive *often*, comparative *oftener*, superlative *oftenest*.

*b.* Adjectives and adverbs are also compared in English by prefixing the adverbs *more* and *most*: *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

*c.* Comparison in Latin is indicated exactly as in English: *sapiēns*, *sapientior*, *sapientissimus*; *bonus*, *melior*, *optimus*; *idōneus*, *magis idōneus*, *maximē idōneus*; *saepe*, *saepius*, *saepissimē*.

## CONJUGATION

XXVII. *a.* The inflection of a verb is called *conjugation*. Verbs are conjugated to show voice, mood, and tense, and the number and person of the subject.

*b.* The English verb has but few changes of form. Thus the verb *love* has in common use only the forms *love*, *loves*, *loving*, and *loved*. Most of the conjugation of the verb is made up of verb phrases formed by the use of auxiliaries (IV, f): *I am loved*, *I shall love*, *I shall have been loved*, etc.

*c.* The Latin verb has many changes in form to show voice, mood, tense, number, and person: *amor*, *I am loved*; *amābō*, *I shall love*; *amātus erō*, *I shall have been loved*.

## Voice

XXVIII. A verb is in the *active voice* when it represents the subject as acting (or being): *The man praised the boy*, *vir puerum laudāvit*. A verb is in the *passive voice* when it represents the subject as acted on: *The boy was praised by the man*, *puer ā virō laudātus est*.

*Mood*

XXIX. A verb is in the *indicative mood* when it is used in stating a fact or in asking a question: *The citizens are assembling, cīvēs conveniunt; why do they carry arms? cūr arma portant?*

XXX. a. In English a verb is in the *subjunctive mood* when it asserts something doubtfully or conditionally. It is used in subordinate clauses, and is usually introduced by *if*, *though*, and the like: *If he were here, I should be glad; Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him.*"

NOTE. The subjunctive is very little used in modern English, its place being taken by the indicative.

b. In Latin the subjunctive has a great variety of uses, in independent as well as in dependent clauses (344, 358, 373, etc.).

XXXI. a. A verb is in the *imperative mood* when it expresses command, request, or entreaty: *Fortify the city, urbem mūnite.*

b. Unless emphatic the subject of the imperative (*thou* or *you*) is not expressed either in English or in Latin.

*The Infinitive*

XXXII. a. The *infinitive* in English (*to love, to have loved, etc.*) is a verbal noun. It has neither person nor number. Like a noun it may be the subject or the object or the complement of a verb: *To see is to believe; he wishes to go home.* Like a verb it may have a subject, an object, and adverbial modifiers: *We wish you to begin your work early.*

b. The Latin infinitive is used in the same way that the English infinitive is used. It differs, however, from the English infinitive in not being used in prose in expressions of purpose (*They came to see me*), and in being used constantly for the verb of a statement that is given indirectly: *He said that he would come, dixit se ventūrum esse.*

c. The verbal noun in *-ing* is sometimes called an infinitive : *Seeing is believing = to see is to believe.* This verbal noun has its counterpart in the Latin gerund (459).

### *Tense*

XXXIII. a. A verb is in the *present, past (imperfect), or future* tense according as it represents an action as taking place in present, past, or future time : *I love, I loved (was loving), I shall love ; amō, amābam, amābō.*

b. The *present perfect (perfect)* tense represents an action completed in the present : *I have loved, amāvī*; the *past perfect (pluperfect)* an action completed in the past before some other past action or state : *I had loved, amāveram*; and the *future perfect* an action completed in the future before some other future action or state : *I shall have loved, amāverō.*

### *The Participle*

XXXIV. a. The *participle* is a verbal adjective. Like an adjective it may qualify a noun : *struggling soldiers, militēs labōrantes.* Like a verb it may have an object and adverbial modifiers : *Fearing danger they remained in the camp, periculum veritī in castrīs mānsērunt.*

b. There are in English three participles in the active voice : present, *loving*; past, *loved*; perfect, *having loved*; and three in the passive voice : present, (*being*) *loved*; past, *loved*; perfect, *having been loved*. In Latin the past and perfect active and the present passive participles are wanting, but there is a future participle.

c. The participle in *-ing* is used with the auxiliary *be* to make the progressive form of the verb : *you are loving, he was loving, they will be loving.* Latin has no special tenses for the progressive forms.

## TO THE BEGINNER IN LATIN

**What Latin is.** Latin is the language that was used by the ancient Romans. It gets its name from the *Lati'ni*, a little tribe living in western Italy more than twenty-five hundred years ago. The Latini, and their successors, the Romans, slowly extended their lands and their power until they gained control of all Italy, and finally of all the civilized world of those days. Their dominions reached from the Atlantic Ocean to Persia and from the Baltic Sea to the deserts of Africa, and their language was spoken wherever they ruled. For about six hundred years the Romans were the most powerful nation on the earth. Their history covers in all a period of twelve centuries ; no nation has had a longer history.

**Why Latin is studied.** And now why is it that it is worth your while to study a language that is so many centuries old ?

First, a knowledge of Latin helps you to use English more correctly. As more than half the words in the English language are of Latin origin, you yourself in a sense speak Latin to-day. There are the words of your everyday talk, like *animal* ; there are the learned words, like *emancipate* ; there are the terms of law, of medicine, and of the sciences, like *mandamus*, *delirium*, and *antennae* ; and there are the words which are newly come into use, like *tractor*. If you study Latin, you will be helped to know the meaning of many of these words, how to spell them, and how to use them correctly ; all of which is quite worth your while, particularly if you are intending to enter one of the professions.

Again, the study of Latin will train your mind. Latin is somewhat unlike English in the form of its words and much

unlike English in the order of the words in its sentences. You will therefore be obliged to look carefully, and to think carefully, and to speak carefully whenever you try to read and to translate anything written in Latin. But this close attention will do good to your mind : it will train your powers of observation, of clear thinking, and of clear expression ; in fact, no other subject that you study in school can do as much for you as can Latin toward developing these desirable powers.

Furthermore, the reading of Latin will add to your information. If you are to be a well-informed person, you will need to know something about Rome and the Romans, and what they have meant in the history of the world ; and in no other way can you better come to know and to appreciate the literature, the life, the customs, and the civilization of the Romans than by the faithful study of their language and of the things written in that language.

**How to study Latin.** 1. Never allow yourself to think that Latin is not worth your best efforts or that it is too hard for you. Industry and confidence will bring you success in this study.

2. Have a fixed hour each day for the study of your Latin. If possible, prepare your lesson for to-morrow immediately after reciting the lesson of to-day. Your interest will then be greater and your mind better fitted to grasp the subject.

3. Learn each day's lesson with thoroughness. Neglect no part of the lesson even if it seems to you unimportant.

4. Before beginning a new lesson recall what you have already learned about the subject to be taught in the new lesson. For example, if you are about to study a new use of one of the cases, recall all the uses of that case which you have previously learned.

5. Review the vocabularies regularly. A knowledge of the meanings of the words will be a great saving of time to you, as well as a constant encouragement. Aim to know every word

you have met, and to this end keep lists of words about the meaning of which you are doubtful.

6. Recite the declensions and the conjugations by yourself aloud. It will help you to remember them, and you will make better recitations. Read the Latin sentences aloud each day.

7. Go over the new lesson slowly, and thus avoid mistakes in the spelling of words, in their endings, and in the explanation of Latin constructions.

8. Recall your English grammar when you are learning Latin constructions; most of the Latin usages that you will learn in your first year are like English usages.

9. Study the lessons as a whole. Then go back to special difficulties. Go over the lesson again just before the recitation and consider the troublesome parts.





## INTRODUCTION

### ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet has no *j* or *w*. Otherwise it is the same as the English.
2. The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants.
3. The letter **i** is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Before a vowel in the same syllable it has the force of a consonant and is called *i-consonant*. Thus in *iaciō*, *I throw*, the first **i** is a consonant, and the second a vowel.

### SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS<sup>1</sup>

4. The vowels are either long or short. In this book the long vowels are marked (-); unmarked vowels are to be regarded as short. The vowels are sounded as follows:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| ā like the last <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i> | ă like the first <i>a</i> in <i>aha'</i> |
| ē like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i>          | ĕ like <i>e</i> in <i>met</i>            |
| ī like <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>       | ĭ like <i>i</i> in <i>pin</i>            |
| ō like <i>o</i> in <i>note</i>          | ŏ like <i>o</i> in <i>obey</i>           |
| ū like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i>         | ŭ like <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i>          |

5. The diphthongs are sounded as follows:

|                                   |                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| æ like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i>  | ✓ eu like <i>eu</i> in <i>feud</i> |
| au like <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i>   | oe like <i>oi</i> in <i>boil</i>   |
| ei like <i>ei</i> in <i>eight</i> | ui like <i>we</i>                  |

<sup>1</sup> Latin is pronounced to-day substantially as it was pronounced by the Romans at the beginning of the Christian era.

6.. The consonants generally have the same sound as the corresponding consonants in English. But there are the following exceptions :

c is like c in *come*

g is like g in *get*

i-consonant is like y in *yet*

s is like s in *sun*

t is like t in *time*

v is like w in *wine*

x is like x in *extra*

*a sent*  
bs and bt are like ps and pt

ch is like k in *kite*

gu, qu, and sometimes su before a vowel are like gw, qw, and sw (*u* is not counted as a vowel)

ph is like p

th is like t

When a consonant is doubled (as ll), it should be pronounced twice.

#### EXERCISE IN PRONUNCIATION

7. 1. sum, tum. 2. cum, dum. 3. ad, id. 4. in, an. 5. at, et, ut. 6. hic, hic, hāc. 7. hōc, hūc. 8. hoc, num. 9. is, bis, īs. 10. dīc, dūc. 11. fac, fer. 12. aut, hae. 13. ē, ā, ī. 14. ex, ab, ob. 15. dō, dā, dē. 16. pāx, dux. 17. nox, vōx. 18. pars, sōl. 19. trēs, mōs. 20. quō, quā. 21. iūs, qui. 22. quae, quīn. 23. quis, sē. 24. mē, tē. 25. gēns, sīc. 26. vel, vir, iam.

#### SYLLABLES

8. A syllable consists of a vowel or a diphthong with or without one or more consonants. Hence a word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs : *ō-ce'-a-nus*, *ocean*.

9. When a word is divided into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels is joined with the vowel following : *lā-ti-tū'-dō*, *width*.

10. If there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first is pronounced with the preceding vowel : *im-mor-tā'-lis*, *immortal*.

But a consonant followed by *l* or *r* is pronounced with the *l* or *r*, except in *ll* and *rr*: *pū'-bli-cus*, *public*; when *ll* or *rr* occurs, one *l* or one *r* is joined to the preceding syllable, and the other to the following syllable: *ter'-ra*, *land*.

Compound words are divided in such a way as to show the component parts: *ab'-est* (*ab*, *away*, + *est*, *he is*), *he is away*.

11. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the one next to the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*.

12. A vowel is generally short before another vowel or *h*: *pō-ē'-ma*, *poem*; *nī'-hil*, *nothing*.

13. A vowel is generally short before *nt* or *nd*, and before final *m* or final *t*: *vō'-cānt*, *they call*; *vo-cā'-bām*, *I was calling*.

14. A vowel is long before *nf* or *ns*: *a'-māns*, *loving*. *m*

15. A vowel resulting from the contraction of two vowels is long: *cō'-gō* (*co-agō*), *I bring together*.

16. The quantity of vowels other than those mentioned in the preceding sections must be learned by observation.

#### QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

17. A syllable is *long by nature* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: *vic-tō'-ri-a*, *victory*; *prae'-mi-um*, *reward*.

18. A syllable is *short by nature* when it does not contain a long vowel or a diphthong: *o-pi'-ni-ō*, *opinion*.

19. A syllable is *long by position* when it has a short vowel followed by *x* or *z*, or by two or more consonants, unless these two consonants are *p*, *b*, *t*, *d*, *c*, *g*, followed by *l* or *r*; but the short vowel is still pronounced short: *dē-trī-men'-tum*, *loss*. *v*

## ACCENT

20. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first syllable: *pa'-ter*, *father*.

21. Words of more than two syllables have the accent on the penult when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult: *dē-mōn-strā'-re*, *to point out*; *ce-le'-ri-tās*, *swiftness*; *ē-ven'-tus*, *outcome* (cf. 19).

22. Several words, of which the commonest are *-ne*, the sign of a question, and *-que*, *and*, are appended to other words. The words so appended are known as enclitics. The words to which they are appended are accented on the syllable preceding the enclitic, whether that syllable is long or short: *a-mat'-ne?* *does he love?* *ar-mă'-que*, *and arms*.

## EXERCISE IN ACCENT AND PRONUNCIATION

23. Divide the following words into syllables, state the rule for the accent, and then pronounce:

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. dīvidunt, appellāre     | 6. causīs, praecēdō       |
| 2. īstitūtis, differēbāmūs | 7. finis, prohibitus      |
| 3. hūmānitātē, prōvinciā   | 8. initiō, persuāserāmus  |
| 4. longus, animōs          | 9. tempora, magistrātūm   |
| 5. importābunt, bellum     | 10. frāternus, conloquium |

24. The following Latin version of "Twinkle, Twinkle, Little Star" may be used for practice in pronunciation, and for illustration of the preceding statements about syllables, accent, etc.:

MICĀ, MICĀ

Micā, micā, parva stella !  
 Mīror quaenam sis, tam bella !  
 Splendēns ēminus in illō,  
 Alba velut gemma, caelō.

Quandō fervēns Sōl discessit,  
 Nec calōre prāta pāscit,  
 Mox ostendis lūmen pūrum,  
 Micāns, micāns per obscūrum.

Tibi noctū quī vagātur  
 Ob scintillulam grātātur ;  
 Nī micārēs tū, nōn scīret  
 Quās per viās errāns īret.

Meum saepe thalamum lūce  
 Speculāris cūriōsā ;  
 Neque carpseris sopōrem  
 Dōnec vēnit Sōl per auram.



THE ARCH OF TITUS, SHOWING A ROMAN INSCRIPTION

## LESSON I

### THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL OF NOUNS AND VERBS THE NOMINATIVE CASE USED AS SUBJECT

#### 25. The Singular and Plural of Nouns and Verbs.

##### NOUN

*Nom. Sing.* agricola, farmer  
*Nom. Plur.* agricolae, farmers

##### VERB

*3d Pers. Sing.* labōrat, works,  
is working, does work  
*3d Pers. Plur.* labōrant, work,  
are working, do work

a. Observe that the distinction between the singular and the plural is shown by the final letters of the noun and of the verb. These final letters of a noun are called *case endings*; the final letters of a verb are called *personal endings*.

b. Form the nominative plural of the nouns in the vocabulary, and the third person plural of the verbs.

#### 26.

##### VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer (*agriculture*)

appropin'quat, approaches, draws

Cornē'lia, Cornelia

near (*propinquity*)

Iū'lia, Julia

can'tat, sings (*incantation*)

nau'ta, sailor (*nautical*)

labō'rat, works, labors, suffers

puel'la, girl

(*laboratory*)

et, conj., and

na'tat, swims (*natatorium*)

-ne, enclitic, sign of a question

quis, interrog. pron., who?

am'bulat, walks (*perambulate*)

quid, interrog. pron., what?

#### 27. The Nominative Case used as Subject.

1. Puella cantat, the girl sings (is singing, does sing).
2. Puellae cantant, the girls sing (are singing, do sing).
3. Cantatne puella, does the girl sing (is the girl singing) ?
4. Cantantne puellae, do the girls sing (are the girls singing) ?

a. In Latin there is no article (III, b): *puella* may be translated *girl*, *a girl*, or *the girl*; and *puellae*, *girls* or *the girls*.

b. What is the subject (xi, b) of each of the model sentences, and what is the predicate (xi, c)? In what case is the subject of a Latin verb (xxiv)?

c. Observe that the verbs agree with their subjects in number.

d. Observe that *-ne* is not separately translated. Usually it is attached to the emphatic word in the sentence, and the emphasized word is placed first. When an interrogative word is used, *-ne* is omitted: see sentence 11 below. In English *-ne* is represented on the printed page by the question mark, and in oral translation by the inflection of the voice.

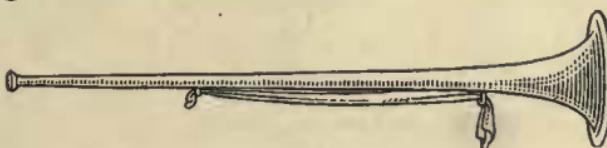
**28. Rule for the Nominative Case as Subject.** *The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.*

**29. Rule for the Agreement of the Verb with its Subject.** *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

#### EXERCISES

30. 1. *Nauta cantat.* 2. *Nautae cantant.* 3. *Agricola labōrat.* 4. *Agricolae labōrant.* 5. *Puella natat.* 6. *Puellae natant.* 7. *Cornēlia appropinquat.* 8. *Puellaene appropinquant?* 9. *Cornēlia et puellae cantant.* 10. *Iūlia labōrat et cantat.* 11. *Quid appropinquat?* 12. *Labōrantne nautae?* 13. *Quis ambulat?*

31. 1. The sailor is swimming. 2. The girls are singing. 3. Who approaches? 4. Are the sailors approaching? 5. Does Cornelius sing? 6. Cornelius and Julia are walking and singing. 7. The girl sings, and the farmer works. 8. Sailors and farmers are working.



TUBA

## LESSON II

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE USED AS THE DIRECT OBJECT

#### 32. The Accusative Case used as the Direct Object.

1. *Nauta puellam vocat, the sailor calls the girl.*
2. *Nautae puellās vocant, the sailors call the girls.*

a. Observe that *puellam* is the object (xiv, a) of *vocat*, and *puellās* of *vocant*; and that when a Latin noun is used as the object, the case ending is not the same as when it is the subject and so in the nominative. The case of the object in Latin is called *accusative* (xxiv) and not objective, as in English.

b. Form the accusative singular and plural of the nouns in sections 26 and 34.

33. *Rule for the Accusative as the Direct Object. The object of a verb is in the accusative case.*

#### 34.

#### VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>a'qua</i> , water ( <i>aquatic</i> )   | <i>con'vocat</i> , calls together ( <i>convvoke</i> ) |
| <i>Gal'ba</i> , Galba   | <i>ha'bet</i> , has, holds ( <i>habit</i> )           |
| <i>lit'tera</i> , letter (of the alphabet);<br><i>plur.</i> , a letter, epistle ( <i>literary</i> ) | <i>lau'dat</i> , praises ( <i>laud</i> )              |
| <i>ter'ra</i> , land ( <i>terrace</i> )   | <i>vi'det</i> , sees ( <i>provide</i> )               |
| <i>tu'ba</i> , trumpet ( <i>tuba</i> )  | <i>quem</i> , acc. of <i>quis</i> , whom?             |
| <i>a'mat</i> , loves, likes ( <i>amateur</i> )  | <i>quid</i> , acc. of <i>quid</i> , what?             |
|   | <i>nunc</i> , adv., now                               |

35. *Order of Words.* Observe that in the model sentences (32) the order of Latin words is unlike the order of the words in the English sentences. The normal position of the subject of a Latin sentence is at the beginning; that of the verb is at the end. Variations from this order put emphasis on the word moved toward the beginning of the sentence; thus, *puellam nauta vocat* means that the sailor calls *a girl*. In translating Latin sentences put the emphasis where it belongs.

## EXERCISES

36. 1. Galba tubām habet. 2. Tubāsne habet Galba? 3. Pueri lae Cornēliam et Iūliam laudant. 4. Litterās nauta videt. 5. Nautās Galba convocat. 6. Quis Galbam videt? 7. Quem videt Galba? 8. Agricola puerās nunc convocat. 9. Videntne nautae terram? 10. Cornēliam pueriae amant.

37. 1. Who is approaching? 2. The sailor and Galba are approaching. 3. What has the farmer? 4. The farmer has land. 5. Does Galba praise the farmers? 6. The girl sees the water and the land. 7. The sailors call together the farmers. 8. Julia now has the letter.



A SCENE IN A ROMAN STREET

## LESSON III

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

**38. The Four Conjugations.** Regular verbs in Latin are divided into four classes, or conjugations (xxvii), distinguished from one another by the stem vowel before the ending -re of the present infinitive active.

| PRESENT<br>INFINITIVE       | PRESENT<br>STEM | DISTINGUISHING<br>VOWEL |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|
| <i>First Conj.</i> amā're   | amā-            | ā                       |
| <i>Second Conj.</i> monē're | monē-           | ē                       |
| <i>Third Conj.</i> re'gere  | rege-           | ĕ                       |
| <i>Fourth Conj.</i> audi're | audi-           | i                       |

### 39. The Present Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.

| SINGULAR  | PERSONAL ENDINGS       |
|---|------------------------|
| <i>1st Pers.</i> a'mō, <i>I love, am loving, do love</i>              | -ō, <i>I</i>           |
| <i>2d Pers.</i> a'mās, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>           | -s, <i>you</i>         |
| <i>3d Pers.</i> a'mat, <i>he, she, it loves, is loving, does love</i> | -t, <i>he, she, it</i> |
| PLURAL  |                        |
| <i>1st Pers.</i> amā'mus, <i>we love, are loving, do love</i>         | -mus, <i>we</i>        |
| <i>2d Pers.</i> amā'tis, <i>you love, are loving, do love</i>         | -tis, <i>you</i>       |
| <i>3d Pers.</i> a'mant, <i>they love, are loving, do love</i>         | -nt, <i>they</i>       |

a. Observe that in *amō* the final a of the stem disappears, giving *amō* instead of *amaō*. In what forms is this a of the stem not long (13)?

b. When the subject of a verb is a personal pronoun, it is seldom expressed in Latin unless emphatic. Why is the omission of the subject possible? Translate *puellās convocātis* and *nautam vident*.

c. Inflect like *amō* the present indicative active of *ambulō*, *appro-pinquō*, *cantō*, *convocō*, *labōrō*, *laudō*, and *natō*.

## 40.

## VOCABULARY

|   |  |
|---|--|
| dō, pres. stem dă- ( <i>the a of dō is regularly short, but long in dās</i> ), give ( <i>dative</i> ) | sae'pe, adv., often<br>sed, conj., but<br>spec'tō, pres. stem spectā-, look at<br>( <i>spectator</i> ) |
| in'cola, inhabitant   |  |

## EXERCISES

41. 1. Ambulat, convocat, cantat. 2. Convocantne? cantantne? laudantne? 3. Natās, labōrās, ambulās. 4. Amāmus, appropinquāmus, ambulāmus. 5. Convocātis, cantātis, amātis. 6. Amant, dat, laudāmus. 7. Quem spectās? 8. Incolās laudō. 9. Iūliam saepe laudātis. 10. Sed litterās laudāmus. 11. Quid nunc datis?

42. 1. I swim, he swims, I am swimming. 2. Are you working? we sing, does she praise? 3. They are approaching, they give, you walk. 4. You are praising, they swim, he does labor. 5. We call together the inhabitants, but you call together the sailors. 6. The girls are now looking at the water.



RUINS OF A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

## LESSON IV

### THE GENITIVE CASE USED TO DENOTE POSSESSION

#### 43. The Genitive Case used to denote Possession.

1. *Filiae Galbae cantant, the daughters of Galba sing, or Galba's daughters sing.*
2. *Filiās nautārum laudāmus, we praise the daughters of the sailors, or we praise the sailors' daughters.*

a. Observe that **Galbae** modifies **filiae** and tells whose daughters are singing. In the same way **nautārum** modifies **filiās** and tells whose daughters we are praising. This usage of **Galbae** and of **nautārum** is like that of the English possessive case (xxiv, a, 2). In Latin the case thus used is called the *genitive* (xxiv, b), and this usage of that case is called the *Genitive of Possession*.

b. Observe the case endings of the genitive. Form the genitive singular and the genitive plural of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 45.

c. Note the translations given to the genitives in the model sentences. Translate **filia agricolae** and **filiāe agricolārum**.

d. The genitive normally stands after the word it modifies.

#### 44. Rule for the Genitive of Possession. *The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case.*

#### 45.

#### VOCABULARY

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>fē'mina</b> , woman ( <i>feminine</i> )  | <b>exspec'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem exspectā-</i> , wait,                         |
| <b>fi'lia</b> , daughter ( <i>filial</i> )  | wait for ( <i>expect</i> )   |
| <b>fortū'na</b> , fortune ( <i>fortunate</i> )  | <b>fu'gō</b> , <i>pres. stem fugā-</i> , put to flight,                        |
| <b>poē'ta</b> , poet ( <i>poetic</i> )  | rout   |
| <b>rēgī'na</b> , queen  | <b>lī'berō</b> , <i>pres. stem liberā-</i> , set free,                         |
| <b>cu'ius</b> , gen. of <i>quis</i> and of <i>quid</i> , of<br>whom? whose? of what?    | free ( <i>liberate</i> )   |
| <b>dēlec'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem dēlectā-</i> , delight,<br>please ( <i>delectable</i> ) | <b>por'tō</b> , <i>pres. stem portā-</i> , carry,<br>bring ( <i>portable</i> ) |
|   | <b>et'iam</b> , <i>adv.</i> , even   |

## EXERCISES

46. 1. Dēlectat, fugāmus, liberās. 2. Exspectāmus, portant, dēlectās. 3. Dēlectāmus, fugātis, liberant. 4. Liberatne? liberō, portāmus. 5. Filiās incolārum liberant. 6. Poētae fortūna rēgīnam dēlectat. 7. Spectāmus filiās fēminaē. 8. Filiane Galbae litterās exspectat? 9. Etiam tubae nautārum incolās fugant. 10. Cuius litterās portās?

47. 1. I am calling together the sailors of the queen. 2. The poets' daughters love the land. 3. Whose daughter are you setting free? 4. Do they praise Galba's daughters? 5. We are now waiting for the farmers. 6. Whom does the fortune of the farmers delight?



A STREET IN POMPEII TO-DAY

## LESSON V

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION · CAUSAL CLAUSE WITH QUOD

#### 48. The Present Indicative Active of the Second Conjugation.

##### SINGULAR

1<sup>st</sup> Pers. mo'neō, *I advise, am advising, do advise*

2<sup>d</sup> Pers. mo'nēs, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3<sup>d</sup> Pers. mo'ne t, *he, she, it advises, is advising, does advise*

##### PLURAL

1<sup>st</sup> Pers. monē'mus, *we advise, are advising, do advise*

2<sup>d</sup> Pers. monē'tis, *you advise, are advising, do advise*

3<sup>d</sup> Pers. mo'ne nt, *they advise, are advising, do advise*

a. What verbs belong to the second conjugation (38)?

b. Observe that to the stem **monē-** the same personal endings are added to inflect **moneō** that were added to the stem **amā-** to inflect **amō**. Observe the three forms in which the present tense has the e of the stem not marked long. Compare the forms of the present tense of **amō** (39).

c. To the stems **docē-**, **habē-**, **terrē-**, and **vidē-** add the personal endings and thus inflect their present indicative active.

#### 49.

##### VOCABULARY

pecū'nia, money (*pecuniary*)

mo'neō, monēre, advise, warn (*ad-*

pīrā'ta, pirate (*piratical*)

monition)

prae'da, booty, plunder (*predatory*)

ter'reō, terrēre, scare, frighten

cūr, *adv.*, why?

(*terror*)

do'ceō, docēre, teach, show (*docile*)

vi'deō, vidēre, see (*improvident*)

ha'beō, habēre, have, hold (*habit*)

quod, *conj.*, because

a. The infinitive will hereafter be given with each verb in the vocabulary. Of what help will this be to you (38)?

**50. Causal Clause.** For the kinds of clauses in a complex sentence see XIX, XX.

Incolās monet quod pīrātae appropinquant, *he warns the inhabitants because the pirates are approaching.*

a. Observe that **quod** introduces a dependent clause, which tells the reason, or cause, of what is stated in the independent part of the sentence. Such a **quod** clause is called a *causal clause*.

**51. Rule for a Causal Clause with Quod.** *The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by quod.*

#### EXERCISES

**52.** 1. Pecūniam habēs. 2. Iūliam doceō. 3. Incolās saepe monēs. 4. Puellāsne terrent? 5. Quem vident? 6. Monēmus et docēmus. 7. Quid habēmus? 8. Praedam nunc videō. 9. Tubam vidētis. 10. Agricolāsne monētis? 11. Litterās habent. 12. Iūlia filiās poētae docet. 13. Etiam pecūniam agricolārum habent pīrātae. 14. Filiārum fortūna fēminam dēlectat. 15. Cūr Iūliam et Cornēliam monet? 16. Quem docēs et monēs? 17. Fēminae puellās laudant quod labōrant.

**53.** 1. They are advising. 2. They have. 3. I am warning. 4. You frighten. 5. We see. 6. Does he teach the girls? 7. Do Cornelia and Julia look at the pirate? 8. Why do the pirates frighten the inhabitants? 9. They have the money and the booty. 10. We praise the woman because she teaches the girls. 11. What do you see? What are you looking at?



A ROMAN COIN

## LESSON VI

### THE DATIVE CASE USED AS THE INDIRECT OBJECT · THE ABLATIVE USED IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES TO SHOW PLACE WHERE

54. **The Dative and Ablative Cases.** Besides the three cases that you have already studied, there are in Latin in common use two other cases, the *dative* and the *ablative*. For the general character of these cases see xxiv, *a*, 4; *b*.

#### 55.

#### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| do'mina, lady, mistress (of slaves)<br>(dominant)                  | ha'bitō, habitāre, dwell, live ( <i>in-habitant</i> ) |
| fā'bulā, story ( <i>fable</i> )                                    | ma'neō, manēre, remain ( <i>mansion</i> )             |
| īn'sula, island ( <i>peninsula</i> )                               | nā'rō, nārrāre, tell, relate ( <i>narrator</i> )      |
| vī'a, way, road, street ( <i>viaduct</i> )                         | cui, dat. of quis and of quid, to                     |
| in, prep. with abl., in, on  | whom? for whom? to what?                              |
| dēmōn'strō, dēmōnstrāre, point<br>out, show ( <i>demonstrate</i> ) | for what?   |

#### 56. The Dative used as Indirect Object.

Cornēliae et puellīs fābulam nārrō, *I am telling a story to Cornelia and the girls*, or *I am telling Cornelia and the girls a story*.

*a.* Observe that what is being told is a story, *fābulam*, the direct object; and that the persons to whom the story is told are *Cornelia* and the *girls*. *Cornēliae* and *puellīs*, therefore, are in the dative case, as this is the case which expresses the relation of *to* or *for* (xxiv, *b*). This usage, which is like the English (xxiv, *a*, 4), is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*.

*b.* The case endings of the dative are -ae, singular, and -is, plural. Form the dative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

**57. Rule for the Dative of the Indirect Object.** *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case.*

**58. The Ablative used in Prepositional Phrases to show Place Where.**

In *terrā* et in *īnsulīs* *habitant*, *they live on the land and on the islands.*

a. Observe that the phrases (*xvi, a*) *on the land*, *in terrā*, and *on the islands*, *in īnsulīs*, show *place where*. *Terrā* and *īnsulīs* are in the ablative case (*xxiv, b*).

b. The case endings of the ablative are *-ā*, singular, and *-īs*, plural.

c. Form the ablative, singular and plural, of the nouns in sections 26, 34, and 55.

**59. Rule for the Ablative of Place Where.** *Place where is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually *in*, with the ablative case.*

**60. Order of Words.** The indirect object normally stands before the direct object. An ablative normally stands before the direct object. Variations from this order give emphasis to the word removed from its normal position.

#### EXERCISES

**61.** 1. *Agricola dominae viam dēmōnstrat.* 2. *Puellis etiam Cornēlia fābulam nārrat.* 3. *In īnsulā habitāmus.* 4. *Quis poētis insulam dēmōnstrat?* 5. *Cūr pirātae in aquā manent?* 6. *Cui pecūniām dās?* 7. *Nautae agricolis praedam dēmōnstrant.* 8. *Incolae in viīs appropinquant et rēgīnam spectant.* 9. *Dōminām amant quod fābulās nārrat.*

**62.** 1. To whom are you pointing out the lady? 2. I am pointing out the letter to Julia. 3. They are telling stories to the queen. 4. Galba's daughter gives money to the sailors. 5. Do the pirates live on the island? 6. Whose daughters are approaching in the street?

## LESSON VII

### THE FIRST DECLENSION · GENDER

**63. The First Declension.** There are five declensions (xxii) of Latin nouns. Those nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative singular and in *-ae* in the genitive singular are said to belong to the *first declension*. Learn the complete inflection of the noun **agricola**:

| SINGULAR               | CASE ENDINGS |
|------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> agri'cola  | -a           |
| <i>Gen.</i> agri'colae | -ae          |
| <i>Dat.</i> agri'colae | -ae          |
| <i>Acc.</i> agri'colam | -am          |
| <i>Abl.</i> agri'colā  | -ā           |

| PLURAL                   |       |
|--------------------------|-------|
| <i>Nom.</i> agri'colae   | -ae   |
| <i>Gen.</i> agricolā'rūm | -ārum |
| <i>Dat.</i> agri'colis   | -is   |
| <i>Acc.</i> agri'colās   | -ās   |
| <i>Abl.</i> agri'colis   | -is   |

a. Observe that the inflection of a noun consists merely in adding the case endings to an unchangeable part of the word. This unchangeable part is called the *base*. Decline like **agricola** the nouns in section 55.

**64. Gender.** Latin nouns are masculine, feminine, or neuter in gender (xxv, *a*, *b*).

*a.* Nouns of the first declension are feminine unless they denote males. **Nauta**, **agricola**, **Galba**, **poēta**, and **pīrāta** are the masculine nouns you have learned. Hereafter the gender of nouns will be shown in the vocabularies by the letters *m.*, *f.*, or *n.*

65.

## VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| dīligen'tia, -ae, f., diligence ( <i>diligent</i> ) | por'ta, -ae, f., gate ( <i>portal</i> )             |
| fu'ga, -ae, f., flight, rout ( <i>refugee</i> )     | prōvin'cia, -ae, f., province ( <i>provincial</i> ) |
| Germā'nia, -ae, f., Germany ( <i>Germanic</i> )     | pug'na, -ae, f., fight ( <i>pugnacious</i> )        |
| Grae'cia, -ae, f., Greece ( <i>Grecian</i> )        | sil'vea, -ae, f., woods, forest ( <i>silvan</i> )   |
| Ita'lia, -ae, f., Italy ( <i>Italian</i> )          | victō'ria, -ae, f., victory ( <i>victorious</i> )   |

a. The ending **-ae** of the genitive singular is placed after the nouns in the vocabulary to indicate that these nouns belong to the first declension.

## EXERCISES

66. 1. Cūr poētae in silvīs manent? 2. Cui victōriam rēgīnae nārrās? 3. In portā Iūliam et Cornēliam videō. 4. In Germāniā et in Graeciā saepe agricolās convocant. 5. Habitantne in prōvinciā? 6. Victōria nautārum agricolās terret. 7. Diligentia puellārum fēminam dēlectat. 8. In pugnā pīrātās Italiae fugāmus. 9. Galba fugam pīrātārum nārrat.

67. 1. I am living in a province of Greece. 2. The forests of the provinces delight the poets. 3. He gives money to Julia's daughter. 4. To whom do you give water? 5. Whose diligence do you praise? 6. They are waiting in the road and looking at the woods.



A WALL DRAWING. PROBABLY THE WORK OF A ROMAN SCHOOLBOY

## FIRST REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS I-VII

**68.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|             |          |         |           |          |
|-------------|----------|---------|-----------|----------|
| agricola    | dō       | habitō  | -ne       | quis     |
| ambulō      | doceō    | in      | nunc      | quod     |
| amō         | domina   | incola  | pecūnia   | rēgīna   |
| appropinquō | et       | īnsula  | pīrāta    | saepe    |
| aqua        | etiam    | lābōrō  | poēta     | sed      |
| cantō       | exspectō | laudō   | porta     | silva    |
| convocō     | fābula   | liberō  | portō     | spectō   |
| cui         | fēmina   | littera | praeda    | terra    |
| cuius       | filia    | maneō   | prōvincia | terreō   |
| cūr         | fortūna  | moneō   | puella    | tuba     |
| dēlectō     | fuga     | nārrō   | pugna     | via      |
| dēmōnstrō   | fugō     | natō    | quem      | victōria |
| dīlgentia   | habeō    | nauta   | quid      | videō    |

**69.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                        |                 |                     |
|------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| often                  | sing            | approach, draw near |
| to whom? to what?      | walk            | give                |
| labor, work, suffer    | farmer          | booty, plunder      |
| whom?                  | call together   | island              |
| wait, wait for, expect | flight, rout    | poet                |
| put to flight, rout    | land            | trumpet             |
| love, like             | forest, woods   | teach, show         |
| girl                   | diligence       | lady, mistress      |
| gate                   | delight, please | remain              |
| and                    | who?            | way, road, street   |
| water                  | but             | inhabitant          |
| have, hold             | in, on          | advise, warn        |
| dwell, live            | look at         | sailor              |
| story                  | because         | province            |

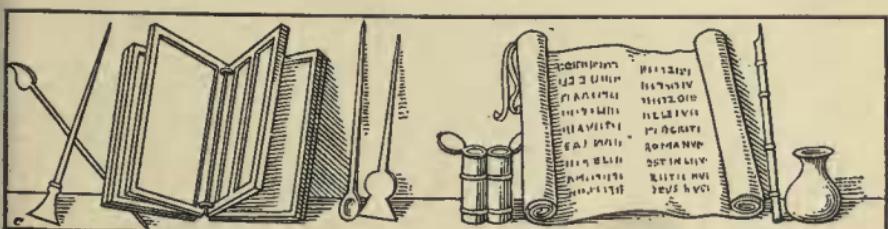
|                          |              |                       |
|--------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| point out, show          | fight        | tell, relate, narrate |
| daughter                 | victory      | letter                |
| set free, free, liberate | see          | praise                |
| queen                    | fortune      | what?                 |
| why?                     | carry, bring | scare, frighten       |
| money                    | woman        | whose?                |
| even                     | pirate       | swim                  |
| now                      |              |                       |

70. Decline the nouns and conjugate the verbs in 68. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and in the plural. Give the third person, singular and plural, of the present indicative of each verb in 68.

71. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 68. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

72. Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a brief sentence in Latin:

1. Nominative as the subject
2. Agreement of the verb with its subject
3. Accusative as the object
4. Genitive of possession
5. Causal clause with *quod*
6. Dative of the indirect object
7. Ablative of place where
8. Questions



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

## LESSON VIII

### THE SECOND DECLENSION

**73. The Second Declension.** Most nouns of the second declension end in **-us** or **-um**. Those ending in **-us** are generally masculine; those in **-um** are neuter. *Hortus*, *garden*, and *dōnum*, *gift*, are inflected as follows:

| SINGULAR     |                  |              |                 |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|-----------------|
| CASE ENDINGS |                  | CASE ENDINGS |                 |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | <i>hor'tus</i>   | <b>-us</b>   | <i>dō'num</i>   |
| <i>'Gen.</i> | <i>hor'tī</i>    | <b>-ī</b>    | <i>dō'nī</i>    |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | <i>hor'tō</i>    | <b>-ō</b>    | <i>dō'nō</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | <i>hor'tum</i>   | <b>-um</b>   | <i>dō'num</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | <i>hor'tō</i>    | <b>-ō</b>    | <i>dō'nō</i>    |
| PLURAL       |                  |              |                 |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | <i>hor'tī</i>    | <b>-ī</b>    | <i>dō'na</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | <i>hortō'rum</i> | <b>-ōrum</b> | <i>dōnō'rūm</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | <i>hor'tīs</i>   | <b>-īs</b>   | <i>dō'nīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | <i>hor'tōs</i>   | <b>-ōs</b>   | <i>dō'na</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | <i>hor'tīs</i>   | <b>-īs</b>   | <i>dō'nīs</i>   |

a. Learn the case endings first. Then learn the inflection by adding the case endings to the base of each noun. Then practice the inflection of the nouns in section 74.

b. What do you notice about the dative and the ablative plural of the first and second declensions? What cases are alike in the second declension?

### 74.

### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>amī'cus, -ī, m.</i> , friend ( <i>amicable</i> )    | <i>hor'tus, -ī, m.</i> , garden ( <i>horticulture</i> ) |
| <i>do'minus, -ī, m.</i> , master (of slaves)           |   |
| ( <i>domineer</i> ).                                   |   |
| <i>dō'num, -ī, n.</i> , gift, present ( <i>donor</i> ) | <i>Mār'cus, -ī, m.</i> , Marcus                         |
| <i>e'quus, -ī, m.</i> , horse ( <i>equine</i> )        | <i>op'pidum, -ī, n.</i> , town                          |
| <i>frūmen'tum, -ī, n.</i> , grain                      | <i>ser'ves, -ī, m.</i> , slave ( <i>servile</i> )       |
|  | <i>tribū'nus, -ī, m.</i> , tribune ( <i>tribunal</i> )  |

## EXÉRCISES

75. 1. Oppidum videō. 2. Oppida vidēmus. 3. Dominusne servum monet? 4. Equum tribūnus spectat. 5. Equī domi-nōrum seryōs dēlectant. 6. Mārcus amicō fābulam nārrat. 7. Domini amicis praedam dant. 8. In oppidis amicōs saepe convocāmus. 9. Servi appropinquant et frūmentum et aquam portant.

76. 1. Who has the tribune's horse? 2. The servants now have the gifts of the masters. 3. Have you friends in the gar-den? 4. A servant carries the grain of the tribune. 5. Whose gift are they showing to Marcus? 6. We see the town and the gardens of the town.



RUINS OF AN AMPHITHEATER

## LESSON IX

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

**77. Adjectives in Latin.** Latin adjectives, unlike English adjectives, are declined (xxii). There are two declensions of adjectives.

**78. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions.** One class of adjectives has in its masculine and neuter forms the case endings of the second declension, and in its feminine forms the case endings of the first declension : as, **bonus** (masc.), **bona** (fem.), **bonum** (neut.), *good*. Learn the full declension of **bonus** (643).

**79. Rule for the Agreement of Adjectives.** *Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.*

| MASCULINE                | FEMININE      | NEUTER      |
|--------------------------|---------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> hortus bonus | puella bona   | dōnum bonum |
| <i>Gen.</i> hortī bonī   | puellae bonae | dōnī bonī   |
| <i>Dat.</i> hortō bonō   | puellae bonae | dōnō bonō   |
| etc.                     | etc.          | etc.        |

*a.* Complete the declension of the expressions given above. Decline together **amicus bonus**, *good friend*; **fābula grāta**, *pleasing story*; **oppidum magnum**, *large town*.

**80.** The rule given in 79 does not mean that adjectives must have the same case endings as the nouns they modify. An adjective modifying a masculine noun of the first declension will not have the same case endings as the noun. Thus,

| SINGULAR                | PLURAL           |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> nauta bonus | nautae boni      |
| <i>Gen.</i> nautae boni | nautārum bonōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> nautae bonō | nautis bonis     |
| etc.                    | etc.             |

a. Complete the declension of *nauta bonus*. Decline *poēta grātus*, *pleasing poet*.

**81. Order of Words.** An adjective normally follows the noun which it modifies.

## 82.

## VOCABULARY

car'*r*us, -*i*, *m.*, wagon, cart (*car*)  
 ci'*b*us, -*i*, *m.*, food  
 pi'*l*um, -*i*, *n.*, javelin  
 rē'mus, -*i*, *m.*, oar (*trireme*)  
 ven'tus, -*i*, *m.*, wind (*ventilate*)  
 pro'bō, probāre, approve, approve  
     of (*approbation*)  
 bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, good, kind  
     (*bonus*)

grā'tus, grā'ta, grā'tum, pleasing,  
     welcome (*gratitude*)  
 mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num, great,  
     large (*magnitude*)  
 va'lidus, va'lida, va'lidum, strong,  
     robust (*valid*)  
 at'que, conj., and also  
 nōn, *adv.*, not (*nonexistent*)  
 ubi, *adv.*, where? (*ubiquitous*)

## EXERCISES

**83.** 1. Equōs magnōs spectāmus atque probāmus. 2. Tribū-nus amicō bonō pilum dat. 3. Dōnum grātum nautae Iūliam dēlectat. 4. Nauta validus rēmōs validōs habet. 5. Servōs bonōs videt puella. 6. Nautās ventī magnī nōn terrent. 7. Ubi frūmentum agricolārum validōrum vidētis? 8. In carrō magnō frūmentum portant. 9. Pirātae agricolās terrent quod pīla habent.

**84.** 1. I have a large wagon. 2. The good master has a good slave. 3. And he also gives the good slave a welcome gift. 4. Does the slave approve of the gift? 5. They do not live in a large town of Greece. 6. He is not calling together the good sailors. 7. Where do you see a large forest?



## LESSON X

### THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF SUM · PREDICATE NOUN AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

85. The Present Indicative of *Sum*. The irregular verb *sum*, *I am*, is conjugated in the present indicative as follows:

|           | SINGULAR                           | PLURAL                         |
|-----------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1st Pers. | <i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i>           | <i>su'mus</i> , <i>we are</i>  |
| 2d Pers.  | <i>es</i> , <i>you are</i>         | <i>es'tis</i> , <i>you are</i> |
| 3d Pers.  | <i>est</i> , <i>he, she, it is</i> | <i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i>  |

86. Predicate Noun and Predicate Adjective. For the definition of a predicate noun and of a predicate adjective, see xv.

1. *Mārcus est agricola*, *Marcus is a farmer*.
2. *Nautae sunt amīci*, *the sailors are friends*.
3. *Hortus est magnus*, *the garden is large*.
4. *Puellae sunt grātae*, *the girls are welcome*.

a. Observe the case of *agricola*, *amīci*, *magnus*, and *grātae* (xv, c).

87. *Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Noun*. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb.

88. *Rule for the Agreement of a Predicate Adjective*. A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb.

89. Order of Words. The verb *sum* generally has no emphasis (unless it begins the sentence), and it is placed in the sentence where it sounds best or where it adds clearness.

In Latin phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition, adjective, and noun the order of words is often adjective, preposition, noun: as, *magnō* in *oppidō*, *in the large town*.



WITHIN A ROMAN HOUSE

ccccccccc  
cccccccccccc  
cccccccccccc  
cccccccccccc

cccccccccccc  
cccccccccccc  
cccccccccccc  
cccccccccccc

## 90.

## VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>bel'lum, -i, n.</i> , war ( <i>belligerent</i> )               | <i>lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum</i> , long<br>( <i>longitude</i> )      |
| <i>Britan'nia, -ae, f.</i> , Britain ( <i>Britanic</i> )          | <i>me'us, me'a, me'um</i> , my, mine                                |
| <i>de'a, -ae, f.</i> , goddess ( <i>deity</i> )                   | <i>no'vus, no'va, no'vum</i> , new ( <i>novelty</i> )               |
| <i>de'us, -i, m.</i> , god ( <i>deify</i> )                       | <i>par'vus, par'va, par'vum</i> , small,<br>little                  |
| <i>Eurō'pa, -ae, f.</i> , Europe ( <i>European</i> )              | <i>tu'us, tu'a, tu'um</i> , your, yours<br>(referring to one owner) |
| <i>Rō'ma, -ae, f.</i> , Rome                                      | <i>e'rat</i> , he, she, it was                                      |
| <i>Rōmā'nus, -i, m.</i> , a Roman<br>( <i>Roman</i> )             | <i>e'rant</i> , they were   |
| <i>Ves'ta, -ae, f.</i> , Vesta ( <i>vestal</i> )                  |   |
| <i>lā'tus, lā'ta, lā'tum</i> , wide, broad<br>( <i>latitude</i> ) |   |

## EXERCISES

91. 1. Galba agricola est. 2. Galba est validus. 3. Iūlia et Cornēlia sunt filiae meae. 4. Filia mea est parva. 5. Estne oppidum tuum magnum? 6. Britannia est insula Eurōpae. 7. Vesta erat dea Rōmae. 8. Carrī Rōmānōrum bonī et validi erant. 9. Nōn grātum est bellum. 10. Bella nōn grāta sunt. 11. Graecia est terra parva Eurōpae. 12. Sumus amīci tribūnī. 13. Magnō in oppidō viās lātās vidēmus.

92. 1. The streets of the town are long. 2. The streets of Rome were not broad. 3. The roads of Britain are broad and long. 4. Where are you? 5. The new gifts of the tribune are pleasing. 6. We praise the gods because they give gifts. 7. We are Romans, but we are living in Britain.



PUERI PUELLAEQUE

## LESSON XI

### APPOSITION

#### 93. Apposition.

1. Galba, tribūnus, pīlum habet, *Galba, the tribune, has a javelin.*
2. Mārcum amīcum amō, *I love (my) friend Marcus.*

a. Observe that **tribūnus** denotes the same person as **Galba**, and is joined to **Galba** as a descriptive or explanatory noun; and that **amīcum** is related in the same way to **Mārcum**. Such words are called *appositives*.

**94. Rule for Apposition.** *An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains.*

#### 95.

### VOCABULARY

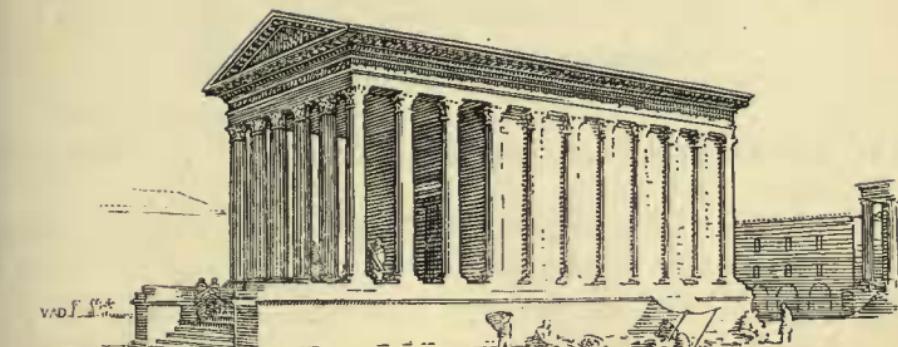
|   |  |
|---|--|
| clā'rūs, -a, -um, famous, clear<br>(clarify)      | pa'rō, parāre, prepare, get ready<br>(prepare)         |
| dē, prep. with abl., from, concerning<br>(depend) | pa'triā, -ae, f., native land, country<br>(patriotism) |
| ōce'anus, -ī, m., ocean (oceanic)                 | tem'plūm, -ī, n., temple                               |

### CORNELIA ET IULIA

**96.** Cornēlia et Iūlia puellae parvae sunt. Ubi habitant? Nōn in Graeciā, sed clārō in oppidō Italiae habitant. Incolae Rōmae sunt. Italia patria Rōmānōrum est. Rōma viās lātās et templā magna habet. Rōmānī bella amant et probant.

Poētae filia est Cornēlia. Poēta lātīs in hortīs saepe ambulat. Atque dē bellō longō et fugā incolārum Germāniae cantat, quod victōriam Rōmānōrum probat.

Iūlia filia agricolae validī est. Agricola equōs et carrōs novōs habet. Cibum et frūmentum equī agricultae portant.



TEMPLUM

Servī agricolae equīs aquam dant. Iūlia equōs amat et servōs laudat. Bonus dominus est agricola.

Mārcus et Galba, tribūnī, amīci puellārum sunt. Mārcus poētae amīcus est et fābulās grātās Cornēliae nārrat. Galba Iūliae silvās et īsulās ōceanī dēmōnstrat.

Fēmina bona puellās docet. Diligentia Cornēliae fēminam dēlectat. In hōrtō poētae puellās convocat et fābulās nārrat. Fābulae dē bellō puellās parvās terrent.

Saepe Vestae dōna parant. Quis est Vesta? Vesta dea Rōmānōrum est et templum habet. Saepe in viis Rōmae puellae ambulant et praedam Germāniae et Britanniae spectant.

## LESSON XII

### THE SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS IN *-ER*, *-IR*, *-IUS*, AND *-IUM*

**97.** Nouns of the Second Declension in *-er* and *-ir*. Some nouns of the second declension end in *-er* and *-ir*. They are slightly different from *hortus* in their inflection:

#### SINGULAR

|             |                |               |               |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>pu'er</i>   | <i>a'ger</i>  | <i>vir</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>pu'erī</i>  | <i>a'grī</i>  | <i>vi'rī</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>pu'erō</i>  | <i>a'grō</i>  | <i>vi'rō</i>  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>pu'erum</i> | <i>a'grum</i> | <i>vi'rum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>pu'erō</i>  | <i>a'grō</i>  | <i>vi'rō</i>  |

#### PLURAL

|             |                   |                 |                 |
|-------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>pu'erī</i>     | <i>a'grī</i>    | <i>vi'rī</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>pu'erō'rum</i> | <i>agrō'rum</i> | <i>virō'rum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>pu'erīs</i>    | <i>a'grīs</i>   | <i>vi'rīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>pu'erōs</i>    | <i>a'grōs</i>   | <i>vi'rōs</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>pu'erīs</i>    | <i>a'grīs</i>   | <i>vi'rīs</i>   |

*a.* Observe that these nouns are declined in the same way as *hortus* except that they lack the ending *-us* in the nominative singular. *Ager* is like *puer* except that *e* before *r* occurs only in the nominative singular.

**98.** Nouns of the Second Declension in *-ius* and *-ium*. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-ius* and *-ium* contract the genitive ending *-ii* to *-i*. The accent remains on the same syllable as in the nominative: *auxi'lium*, gen. *auxi'lī*. Learn the declension of *filius* and *proelium* (637).

**99.** Gender of Nouns of the Second Declension. Nouns of the second declension ending in *-um* are neuter; most others are masculine.

## 100.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| a'ger, agrī, m., field ( <i>agriculture</i> ) <sup>1</sup> | prae'mium, praemī, n., reward<br>( <i>premium</i> )      |
| auxi'lium, auxi'lī, n., aid, help<br>( <i>auxiliary</i> )  | proe'lium, proelī, n., battle                            |
| fi'llius, fili, m., son ( <i>filial</i> )                  | pu'er, puerī, m., boy ( <i>puerile</i> )                 |
| gla'dius, glādī, m., sword ( <i>gladiator</i> )            | so'cius, soci, m., comrade, ally<br>( <i>associate</i> ) |
| nūn'tius, nūntī, m., messenger<br>( <i>pronunciation</i> ) | vir, virī, m., man ( <i>virile</i> )                     |

## EXERCISES

101. 1. Filiī virōrum in Britanniā sunt. 2. Virī erant sociī. 3. Nūntius sociōrum sum. 4. Puerōs parvōs, filiōs tribūnī, exspectāmus. 5. Puerī gladium et pilum Mārcī habent. 6. Quis virō viam dēmōnstrat? 7. Proelium est longum et sociī auxiliū exspectant. 8. In agrō labōrant vir et filii nūntī. 9. Cūr virīs praemia nunc datis?

102. 1. The son of the messenger is a small boy. 2. We see your sword, but we have not your javelin. 3. They frighten the little boys and the woman. 4. The men are putting the allies to flight. 5. Where do the messengers live? 6. I have my son's sword. 7. Wars and battles delight the Romans.

<sup>1</sup> The spelling of the English derivatives *agriculture*, *puerile*, and *virile* will help you to recall the spelling of the genitives of *ager*, *puer*, and *vir*.



## LESSON XIII

### ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS ENDING IN -ER

**103.** Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in *-er*.  
Some adjectives of the first and second declensions end in *-er* in the nominative singular masculine. Their inflection resembles that of *puer* and of *ager*.

- a. Learn the declension of *liber* and *noster* (643).
- b. Observe that *liber* retains the *e* in all forms, as *puer* does, while *noster*, like *ager*, has no *e* after the nominative.
- c. Decline *miser*, *wretched*, like *liber*. The other adjectives in this book that end in *-er* are declined like *noster*.
- d. Decline together *vir liber*, *free man*; *fēmina misera*, *poor woman*; *bellum miserum*, *wretched war*; *poēta liber*, *free poet*; *amicus noster*, *our friend*.

### 104.

### VOCABULARY

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>lī'ber</i> , <i>lī'bera</i> , <i>lī'berum</i> , free ( <i>liberal</i> )                      | <i>nos'ter</i> , <i>nos'tra</i> , <i>nos'trum</i> , our ( <i>nostrum</i> )                   |
| <i>mi'ser</i> , <i>mi'sera</i> , <i>mi'serum</i> , poor, unhappy, wretched ( <i>miserable</i> ) | <i>su'perō</i> , <i>superāre</i> , surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer ( <i>insuperable</i> ) |
| <i>mul'tus</i> , <i>mul'ta</i> , <i>mul'tum</i> , much ( <i>multitude</i> )                     | <i>ves'ter</i> , <i>ves'tra</i> , <i>ves'trum</i> , your (of more than one owner)            |
| <i>mul'tī</i> , <i>mul'tae</i> , <i>mul'ta</i> , many   | <i>vo'cō</i> , <i>vocāre</i> , call ( <i>vocation</i> )                                      |

### EXERCISES

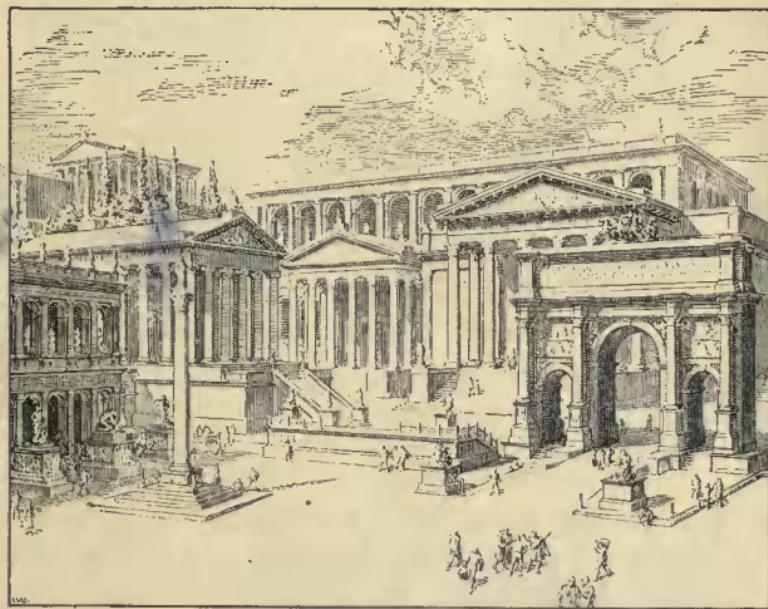
- 105.** 1. Equōs in agrō Mārcī amīcī videō. 2. Nūntius miser fābulam miseram dē fugā sociōrum nārrat. 3. Vestris amīcīs praemia dant. 4. Pecūnia, dōnum Cornēliae, filium nostrum dēlectat. 5. Sumus virī liberī in oppidō liberō. 6. Deae Graeiae multae erant. 7. Socius noster est miser, quod gladium

nōn habet. 8. Rōmānōs in proeliō superant. 9. Vocatne filius tuus? 10. Dominō servus miser cibum parat.

- 106.** 1. Our friends, Mārcus and Galba, are wretched.  
 2. There are many carts in the streets of our town. 3. She calls together the unhappy sons of the messengers. 4. Where do you see your horse? 5. The winds do not frighten the sailors. 6. We are sons of free men. 7. I have a javelin, the gift of a friend.

#### DE GRAECIA

**107.** Graecia, terra parva, prōvincia Rōmānōrum erat. Athēnae, Sparta, Thēbae, Corinthus clāra oppida Graeciae erant. In oppidis erant templa multa deōrum et deārum. In viis oppidōrum statuae (*statues*) multae virōrum clārōrum erant. Incolae nōn erant miserī. Quis incolās Graeciae nōn laudat?



A RESTORATION OF THE ROMAN FORUM

## LESSON XIV

### THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM · THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

**108. The Imperfect Indicative of *Sum*.** The imperfect indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. *e'ram*, *I was*
2. *e'rās*, *you were*
3. *e'rat*, *he, she, it was*

#### PLURAL

- erā'mus*, *we were*
- erā'tis*, *you were*
- e'rānt*, *they were*

**109. The Future Indicative of *Sum*.** The future indicative of *sum* is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. *e'rō*, *I shall be*
2. *e'ris*, *you will be*
3. *e'rit*, *he, she, it will be*

#### PLURAL

- e'rimus*, *we shall be*
- e'ritis*, *you will be*
- e'runt*, *they will be*

### 110. The Dative with Adjectives.

*Dōnum puerō erit grātum*, *the gift will be pleasing to the boy*.

a. Observe that *puerō* is translated with the adjective *grātum*, *pleasing to the boy*. Certain Latin adjectives, particularly those meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, are thus followed by the case expressing *to* or *for*, exactly as they are followed in English by a phrase beginning with *to* or *for*: as, *fit for war*, *unfriendly to us*. This usage is known as the *Dative with Adjectives*.

**111. Rule for the Dative with Adjectives.** Certain adjectives meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed.

## 112.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>amī'cus, -a, -um</i> , friendly                                     | <i>in'terim</i> , <i>adv.</i> , meanwhile ( <i>in-terim</i> )                |
| <i>cer'tē</i> , <i>adv.</i> , certainly                                |  |
| <i>fini'timus, -a, -um</i> , neighboring,<br>near ( <i>affinity</i> )  | <i>li'ber, librī</i> , <i>m.</i> , book ( <i>library</i> )                   |
| <i>idō'neus, -a, -um</i> , fit, suitable                               | <i>propin'quus, -a, -um</i> , near ( <i>pro-pinquity</i> )                   |
| <i>inimī'cus, -a, -um</i> , unfriendly,<br>hostile ( <i>inimical</i> ) | <i>pro'ximus, -a, -um</i> , nearest, next,<br>very near ( <i>proximity</i> ) |
| <i>iniū'ria, -ae, f.</i> , injustice, wrong<br>( <i>injury</i> )       |  |

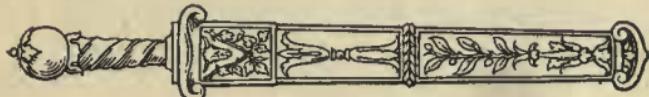
## EXERCISES

113. 1. *Est, erat, erit.* 2. *Sunt, erant, erunt.* 3. *Sumus, erāmus, erimus.* 4. *Sum, eram, erō.* 5. *Es, erās, eris.* 6. *Estis, erātis, eritis.* 7. *Certē erāmuş inimīci Mārcō, vestrō filiō.* 8. *Proximī oppidō erant multī agrī.* 9. *Iniūriae sociōrum multae erunt.* 10. *Īnsulam terrae propinquam videō.* 11. *Venti nautis nōn erunt grāti.* 12. *Agricolae bellō longō idōnei nōn erant.* 13. *Interim vestrīs filiīs erimus amīci.* 14. *Gladii atque pīla proeliō idōnea<sup>1</sup> sunt.*

114. 1. I am, we are. 2. Where were we? I was in the town. 3. I shall be, we shall be. 4. Is he a tribune? They are allies. 5. Meanwhile you will be a free man. 6. Our towns are near Greece. 7. In our towns the men are unfriendly to Rome. 8. There will be<sup>2</sup> a great battle in Britain. 9. The books will certainly be welcome to my friend Marcus.

<sup>1</sup> The predicate adjective *idōnea* is neuter because the two subjects are things without life.

<sup>2</sup> Express *there will be* by *erit*, and place *erit* at the beginning of the sentence. How do you say *there are?* *there is?* *there were?*



GLADIUS

## SECOND REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS VIII-XIV

115. Give the English meanings of the following words :

|                     |           |         |            |          |
|---------------------|-----------|---------|------------|----------|
| ager                | deus      | interim | nūntius    | rēmūs    |
| amicus, <i>noun</i> | dominus   | lātus   | ōceanus    | servus   |
| amicus, <i>adj.</i> | dōnum     | liber   | oppidum    | socius   |
| atque               | equus     | liber   | parō       | superō   |
| auxilium            | filius    | longus  | parvus     | templum  |
| bellum              | finitimus | magnus  | patria     | tribūnus |
| bonus               | frūmentum | meus    | pīlum      | tuus     |
| carrus              | gladius   | miser   | praemium   | ubi      |
| certē               | grātus    | multus  | probō      | validus  |
| cibus               | hortus    | multī   | proelium   | ventus   |
| clārus              | idōneus   | nōn     | propinquus | vester   |
| dē                  | inimicus  | noster  | proximus   | vir      |
| dea                 | iniūria   | novus   | puer       | vocō     |

116. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                     |                  |                       |
|---------------------|------------------|-----------------------|
| garden              | from, concerning | strong, robust        |
| many                | where?           | native land, country  |
| oar                 | son              | great, large          |
| man                 | war              | your ( <i>sing.</i> ) |
| call                | comrade, ally    | slave                 |
| god                 | meanwhile        | aid, help             |
| long                | horse            | near                  |
| sword               | wind             | nearest, next         |
| goddess             | boy              | javelin               |
| food                | good, kind       | unfriendly            |
| much                | not              | new                   |
| grain               | messenger        | battle                |
| approve, approve of | famous           | get ready             |
| injustice, wrong    | friendly         | certainly             |

|                       |                                    |               |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|
| friend                | field                              | book          |
| tribune               | small, little                      | fit, suitable |
| your ( <i>plur.</i> ) | gift                               | free          |
| temple                | pleasing, welcome                  | our           |
| my, mine              | surpass, defeat, overcome, conquer | town          |
| master                | wide, broad                        | reward        |
| cart                  | neighboring, near                  | ocean         |
| and also              | poor, unhappy, wretched            |               |

117. Decline each noun and adjective in 115. Conjugate each verb in the present indicative active. Give the genitive singular of each noun; give the other cases, in the singular and the plural. Conjugate **sum** in the imperfect and future indicative.

118. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 115. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

119. Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |                            |                           |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Agreement of adjectives | 4. Apposition             |
| 2. Predicate noun          | 5. Dative with adjectives |
| 3. Predicate adjective     |                           |



A ROMAN BOY

A ROMAN GIRL

## LESSON XV

### THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

**120.** The Imperfect Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The imperfect indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. amā'bam, *I was loving*
2. amā'bās, *you were loving*
3. amā'bat, *he was loving*

#### PLURAL

- amābā'mus, *we were loving*
- amābā'tis, *you were loving*
- amā'ba nt, *they were loving*

#### SINGULAR

1. monē'bam, *I was advising*
2. monē'bās, *you were advising*
3. monē'bat, *he was advising*

#### PLURAL

- monēbā'mus, *we were advising*
- monēbā'tis, *you were advising*
- monē'ba nt, *they were advising*

a. Observe that in this tense the personal ending of the first person singular is **-m**, not **-ō**.

b. Observe that **amābam** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bā-**, and to that tense sign the personal endings : **amā-ba-m** etc. Divide **monēbam** into three parts in the same way.

c. Inflect the imperfect of the verbs in 68 and 115.

d. The imperfect tense expresses action going on in past time.

### **121. The Ablative of Means.**

**Rōmānī gladiīs et pīlīs pugnābant,** *the Romans were fighting with swords and javelins.*

a. Observe that **gladiīs** and **pīlīs** are in the ablative, since they express the relations of *with* and *by*. They answer the questions *with what?* *by means of what?* The ablative so used is called the *Ablative of Means*. It is limited to nouns that denote things, and is translated by a phrase beginning with *by*, *with*, or *by means of*.

**122. Rule for the Ablative of Means.** *The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (xxiv, b).*

**123.****VOCABULARY**

ar'mō, armāre, arm, equip (*armor*)  
 com'pleō, complēre, fill (*complēte*)  
 dēfes'sus, -a, -um, tired out, weary  
 Helvē'tiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, Helvetians

lēgā'tus, -ī, *m.*, lieutenant, ambassador (*legation*)  
 pug'nō, pugnāre, fight (*pugilist*)  
 scū'tum, -ī, *n.*, shield (*escutcheon*)  
 vī'cus, -ī, *m.*, village (*vicinity*)

**EXERCISES**

**124.** 1. Dēmōnstrābant, parābat, complēbātis. 2. Nārrābam, vidēbās, habitābāmus. 3. Superābās, habēbātis, probābat. 4. Cantābās, liberābam, manēbātis. 5. Terrēbam, vocābat, dēlectabātis. 6. Lēgātōs convocābam. 7. Agricolae frūmentum et cibum carris parvīs portābant. 8. Interim gladiīs in silvīs pugnābant. 9. Scūtis amīcōs nostrōs armābāmus. 10. Lēgātūm, amīcum meum, vocābam. 11. Pilīs tribūnum et lēgātūm in pugnā superābant. 12. Deīs dōna vestra erunt grāta. 13. Vīcus proximus oceānō erat.

**125.** 1. I was walking, but you (*sing.*) were waiting in the field. 2. We were arming, they were remaining. 3. You (*plur.*) were approaching, and they were fighting. 4. He was working in the village. 5. We were teaching by means of stories and books. 6. With your swords you were liberating your friends. 7. Food was welcome to the tired Helvetians. 8. The men were fighting with long javelins. 9. The lieutenant was filling the village with food and grain.

## LESSON XVI

### THE FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS · THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

**126.** The Future Indicative Active, First and Second Conjugations. The future indicative active of the first and second conjugations is inflected as follows :

#### SINGULAR

1. *amā'bō, I shall love*
2. *amā'bis, you will love*
3. *amā'bit, he will love*

#### PLURAL

- amā'bimus, we shall love*  
*amā'bitis, you will love*  
*amā'bunt, they will love*

#### SINGULAR

1. *monē'bō, I shall advise*
2. *monē'bis, you will advise*
3. *monē'bit, he will advise*

#### PLURAL

- monē'bimus, we shall advise*  
*monē'bitis, you will advise*  
*monē'bunt, they will advise*

a. Observe that the future of **amō** is formed by adding to the stem **amā-** the tense sign **-bi-**, and to the tense sign the personal endings ; but the **i** is dropped in the first person, and in the third person plural is changed to **u**.

i. How is the future of **moneō** formed ?

b. Inflect the future of the verbs in 68 and 115.

## 127.

## VOCABULARY

**aedi'ficō, aedificāre, build** (*edifice*)  
**ae'ger, ae'gra, ae'grum, sick**  
**cum, prep. with abl., with**  
**cū'ra, -ae, f., care, anxiety** (*curator*)  
**in, prep. with acc., into, to**

**nāvi'gium, nāvi'gī, n., boat**  
**pro'perō, properāre, hasten**  
**quō, adv., whither?**  
**stu'dium, studī, n., zeal, eagerness** (*study*)  
**te'neō, tenēre, hold, keep** (*tenant*)

## 128. The Ablative of Manner.

1. Mārcus cum studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with zeal (zealously).*
2. Mārcus magnō cum studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with great zeal.*
3. Mārcus magnō studiō labōrat, *Marcus works with great zeal.*

a. Observe that *manner* is expressed in these sentences by the use of the ablative case. Observe that 2 and 3 are translated in the same way, and that **cum** may be omitted when there is an adjective in the phrase. The ablative thus used answers the questions *how?* *in what way?* *in what manner?* and is called the *Ablative of Manner*. The ablative of manner may often be translated by an adverb: *cum studiō, zealously.*

129. Rule for the Ablative of Manner. *The ablative with cum is used with abstract nouns (1, f) to denote the manner of an action; but cum may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase.*

## EXERCISES

130. 1. Vocābunt, complēbunt, properābunt. 2. Armābitne? superābit, tenēbimus. 3. Manēbuntne? dēmōnstrābimus, terrēbō. 4. Labōrābis, docēbitis, habēbō. 5. Quō properābit agricola validus? 6. In agrōs properābunt agricola et puerī. 7. In agrīs labōrābunt magnō cum studiō. 8. Cum cūrā frūmentum in vicum portābunt. 9. Magnā diligentiā nāvigium aedificābitis. 10. Servī aegrī parvō studiō labōrant.

131. 1. You (*sing.*) will build. 2. He will hasten. 3. Who will not remain? 4. You (*plur.*) will hold. 5. We shall carry the sick men with great care. 6. Whither will the lieutenant hasten? 7. He will hasten into Greece and also will arm the inhabitants. 8. Where will our friends fight zealously? 9. The men were diligently filling the boats.

## LESSON XVII

### PRINCIPAL PARTS · THE PERFECT STEM · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST CONJUGATION

**132. Principal Parts.** The principal parts of the verb *amō* are as follows:

|                 |                 |                 |                   |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| PRES. IND. ACT. | PRES. INF. ACT. | PERF. IND. ACT. | PERF. PASS. PART. |
| <i>amō</i>      | <i>amāre</i>    | <i>amāvī</i>    | <i>amātus</i>     |

a. The principal parts of the verb are so called because all forms of the verb can be made from them, or from the three stems shown in the principal parts. These three stems are as follows:

1. Present stem: *amā-*, found by dropping the *-re* of the present infinitive active.
2. Perfect stem: *amāv-*, found by dropping the personal ending *-i* of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active.
3. Participial stem: *amāt-*, found by dropping the nominative ending *-us* of the perfect passive participle.

**133. The Perfect Stem.** By the use of the present stem you have conjugated the present, imperfect, and future tenses. By the use of the perfect stem *amāv-* the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses are conjugated.

**134. The Perfect Indicative Active of the First Conjugation.** The perfect indicative active of *amō* is inflected as follows:

| SINGULAR                                    | PERSONAL ENDINGS OF<br>PERFECT TENSE |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>amā'vī, I have loved, I loved</i>     | -i                                   |
| 2. <i>amāvis'ti, you have loved, etc.</i>   | -istī                                |
| 3. <i>amā'vit, he has loved, etc.</i>       | -it                                  |
| PLURAL                                      |                                      |
| 1. <i>amā'vimus, we have loved, etc.</i>    | -imus                                |
| 2. <i>amāvis'tis, you have loved, etc.</i>  | -istis                               |
| 3. <i>amāvē'runt, they have loved, etc.</i> | -ērunt                               |

a. Observe that the perfect tense has two meanings : *I have loved* and *I loved*. Both express completed action. *I have loved* indicates that the action is completed at the present time ; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect definite*. *I loved* indicates merely that the action was completed at some indefinite time in the past ; and the perfect tense so used is known as the *perfect indefinite*. The imperfect tense, in contrast with the perfect, expresses an action going on in the past (120, d).

b. Give the principal parts of each verb of the first conjugation in 68 and 115 ; they are formed in the same way as those of *amō* (except *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*). Inflect the perfect tense of each.

#### EXERCISES

135. 1. *Vocāvitne?* *convocāvit*, *superāvit*. 2. *Pugnāvērunt*, *exspectāvērunt*, *labōrāvērunt*. 3. *Properāvimus*, *aedificāvimus*, *armāvimus*. 4. *Laudāvīne?* *vocāvistī*, *properāvistis*. 5. *Portāvit*, *dēlectāvit*, *dedit*.

136. 1. You have praised, you showed, you related. 2. I have given, I brought, I set free. 3. They approved, they have sung, they swam. 4. We gave, we dwelt, we showed.

#### 137.

#### VOCABULARY

*ar'ma, -ōrum, n. plur.*, arms

*Rō'mulus, -ī, m.*, Romulus

*di'ū, adv.*, for a long time, long

*Sabī'nī, -ōrum, m. plur.*, the Sabines

*prō, prep. with abl.*, before, for,  
in defense of (*proceed*)

*vul'nerō, vulnerārē, vulnerāvī, vul-*  
*nerātus*, wound (*vulnerable*)

#### DE SABINIS

138. *Rōmulus Rōmam, clārum oppidum Italiae, aedificāvit*. Validī virī erant Rōmānī et patriam amābant. Saepe prō patriā pugnābant et saepe Sabinōs armis in bellō superābant. Sabinī bona arma habēbant et magnō cum studiō pilis longīs diū pugnāvērunt. Sed Rōmānī Sabinōs fugāvērunt et multōs virōs gladiīs vulnerāvērunt.

## LESSON XVIII

### THE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE, SECOND CONJUGATION THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

**139.** Principal Parts of Verbs of the Second Conjugation.  
The principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation are not so regular as those of the first conjugation. You have already had some verbs of the second conjugation. Their principal parts are as follows :

| PRES. IND. | PRES. INF. | PERF. IND. | PERF. PART. |
|------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| compleō    | complēre   | complēvī   | complētus   |
| doceō      | docēre     | docui      | doctus      |
| habeō      | habēre     | habui      | habitū      |
| maneō      | manēre     | mānsi      | mānsūrus    |
| moneō      | monēre     | monuī      | monitus     |
| teneō      | tenēre     | tenuī      | —           |
| terrēō     | terrēre    | terrui     | territus    |
| videō      | vidēre     | vīdī       | vīsus       |

- a. Learn the principal parts of these verbs. What is the perfect stem of each?
- b. Learn the inflection of the perfect tense of **moneō** (659), and practice the inflection of the perfect tense of the other verbs.

### EXERCISES

**140.** 1. Monuit, monuērunt, docuit. 2. Docuērunt, habuit, habuērunt. 3. Terruistī, terruistis, tenuistīne? 4. Vīdī? vīdēruntne? mānsimus. 5. Tenuit, tenuērunt, terruērunt.

**141.** 1. I have filled, you have seen, we have held. 2. He frightened, it had, they have filled. 3. She has remained, I have taught, you (*plur.*) have warned.

## 142. The Ablative of Accompaniment.

Cum filiō meō ambulābat, *he was walking with my son.*

a. Observe that the phrase *cum filiō* answers the questions *with whom?* *in whose company?* This use of the ablative with the preposition **cum** is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

143. Rule for the Ablative of Accompaniment. *The ablative with cum is used to show accompaniment.*

## 144.

## VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| captī'vus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , captive ( <i>captivate</i> ) | lo'cus, -ī, <i>m.</i> ( <i>plur. loca, n.</i> ), place<br>( <i>location</i> ) |
| cau'sa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cause, reason                  |   |
| hi'emō, hiemāre; hiemāvī, hiemā-                        | peri'culum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , peril, danger                                     |
| tūrus, <sup>1</sup> spend the winter                    | ( <i>peril</i> )  |

## EXERCISES

145. 1. Puerī carrum nostrum frūmentō complēvērunt.  
 2. Cum cūrā puellam aegram certē portāvērunt. 3. Scūta et gladiōs captivōrum prō portis vīdī. 4. Locus proeliō idōneus nōn erat. 5. Lēgātus cum multīs virīs in Germāniā prope-rāvit. 6. Causam bellī dēmōnstrābit. 7. In Graeciā cum amicīs vestrīs hiemāvī. 8. Magnō cum periculō mānsērunt.

146. 1. The swords and the javelins frightened the captives. 2. They fought with the tribune in the long war. 3. The women were spending the winter in Italy. 4. Who will tell the lieutenant the cause of the war? 5. They have filled the place with arms. 6. The Romans have fought with the allies in defense of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Future active participle (441, a). This form, if it occurs, is given in the principal parts where the perfect passive participle is not in use.

## LESSON XIX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS* · THE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

**147. The Demonstrative *Is*.** The demonstrative *is*, *this*, *that*, plur. *these*, *those*, is declined as follows :

| SINGULAR          |       |       | PLURAL     |            |            |
|-------------------|-------|-------|------------|------------|------------|
| MASC.             | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.      | FEM.       | NEUT.      |
| <i>Nom.</i> is    | e'a   | id    | iī (e'i)   | e'ae       | e'a        |
| <i>Gen.</i> e'ius | e'ius | e'ius | eō'rum     | eā'rum     | eō'rum     |
| <i>Dat.</i> e'i   | e'i   | e'i   | iīs (e'is) | iīs (e'is) | iīs (e'is) |
| <i>Acc.</i> e'um  | e'am  | id    | e'os       | e'as       | e'a        |
| <i>Abl.</i> e'ō   | e'ā   | e'ō   | iīs (e'is) | iīs (e'is) | iīs (e'is) |

a. *Ii* and *iīs* are pronounced as monosyllables, *i* and *īs*.

**148. The Uses of *Is*.** There is no word in English like *is*. Although it is a demonstrative pronoun (*ii, f*) and means *this* and *that*, it does not point emphatically to what is near, as does *hic*, or to what is remote, as does *ille* (228). Generally it refers to somebody or to something that has just been mentioned. Sometimes it approaches in meaning the English definite article *the*. It is translated by *this* or *that* as the meaning of the sentence may require.

1. *Is agricolās convocāvit, this (or that) man called the farmers together.*

2. *Is servus cum diligentiā labōrat, this (or that) slave works diligently.*

a. Observe that *is* is used in the first sentence as a pronoun, and in the second sentence as an adjective (III, *e*). *Is*, when an adjective, usually precedes its noun.

b. Decline together *id dōnum*; *is nūntius*; *ea patria*.

**149. The Perfect Indicative of *Sum*.** The perfect indicative of *sum* is conjugated as follows:

## SINGULAR

1. *fu'ī*, *I have been, was*
2. *fu is'tī*, *you have been, were*
3. *fu'it*, *he has been, was*

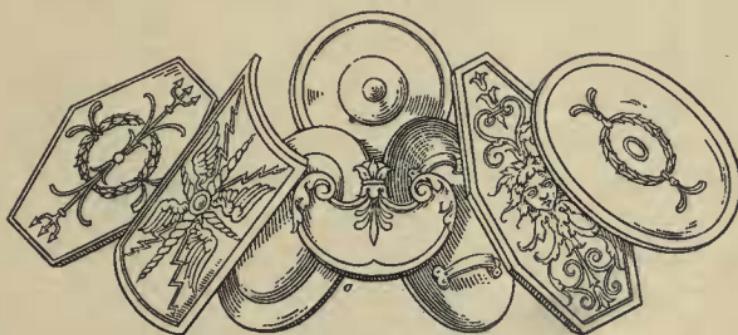
## PLURAL

- fu'imus*, *we have been, were*
- fui'stis*, *you have been, were*
- fuē'runt*, *they have been, were*

## EXERCISES

**150.** 1. Id scūtum vidi. 2. Is gladius est meus. 3. Ea pugna erit longa. 4. Eō gladiō pugnābō. 5. Ei captivō cibum dedit. 6. Id erat tuum. 7. Periculum eōrum lēgātōrum dēmōnstrābat. 8. In Germāniā et in terrā Helvētiōrum fuimus. 9. Fuitne tua filia aegra? 10. Dominus eius servī fuit dēfessus. 11. Ea victōria Rōmānōs dēlectāvit. 12. Cum eō amīcō in Britanniam properābam. 13. Ubi fuistis?

**151.** 1. By means of these arms we shall overcome the pirates on the ocean. 2. That help is pleasing to the Romans. 3. I have often been in those woods. 4. I have taught the sons of these farmers. 5. You have seen and praised these allies because they fought with zeal. 6. Whither were you hastening with this boy? 7. The causes of this war have been many.



SCUTA

## LESSON XX

### THE INTERROGATIVE *QUIS*

**152. The Uses of the Interrogative *Quis*.** The interrogative *quis* (*qui*), *who?* *which?* *what?* may be used as a pronoun or as an adjective (II, *e*; III, *e*): *quis vocat?* *who calls?* *quod dōnum habēs?* *what gift have you?*

**153. The Declension of the Interrogative Pronoun.** The interrogative pronoun *quis* is declined as follows:

| SINGULAR       |               | PLURAL        |                |                |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| MASC. AND FEM. | NEUT.         | MASC.         | FEM.           | NEUT.          |
| <i>Nom.</i>    | <i>quis</i>   | <i>quid</i>   | <i>qui</i>     | <i>quae</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i>    | <i>cu'ius</i> | <i>cu'ius</i> | <i>quō'rūm</i> | <i>quō'rūm</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i>    | <i>cui</i>    | <i>cui</i>    | <i>qui'būs</i> | <i>qui'būs</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i>    | <i>quem</i>   | <i>quid</i>   | <i>quōs</i>    | <i>quās</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i>    | <i>quō</i>    | <i>quō</i>    | <i>qui'būs</i> | <i>qui'būs</i> |

a. Which forms have you already learned?

**154. The Declension of the Interrogative Adjective.** The interrogative adjective *qui* is declined as follows in the singular (the plural is the same as that of *quis*):

| SINGULAR                  |               |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| MASC.                     | FEM.          | NEUT.         |
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>qui</i>    | <i>quae</i>   | <i>quod</i>   |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>cu'ius</i> | <i>cu'ius</i> | <i>cu'ius</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>cui</i>    | <i>cui</i>    | <i>cui</i>    |
| <i>Acc.</i> <i>quem</i>   | <i>quam</i>   | <i>quod</i>   |
| <i>Abl.</i> <i>quō</i>    | <i>quā</i>    | <i>quō</i>    |

a. Decline together *qui captīvus*; *quae causa*; *quod perīculum*.

## EXERCISES

155. 1. *Quī id templum aedificāvērunt?* 2. *Qui lēgātī eōs virōs armāvērunt?* 3. *Quid in eō agrō est?* 4. *Cui dat Mārcus id praemium?* 5. *Quibus terris est Britannia proxima?* 6. *Quem laudātis?* 7. *Quem librum laudāvit Cornēlia?* 8. *Quō gladiō captīvum vulnerāvērunt?* 9. *Quod periculum nārrās?*

156. 1. Who was the messenger of the gods? 2. What gift did he give to this boy? 3. Whose shield did that slave have? 4. To whom have they shown the causes of this war? 5. Whom have you overcome? 6. With what arms have they overcome the Helvetians? 7. In which village did they live?

## 157.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus,</i>              | <i>imperium, impe'riū, n.,</i> command,<br>pray to, worship ( <i>adoration</i> ) |
| <i>animus; -ī, m.,</i> feeling, mind ( <i>animus</i> ) | <i>power (<i>imperial</i>)</i>   |
|  | <i>i'taque, conj.,</i> and so, therefore   |

## DE DEIS RÖMANORUM

158. Mars, prōavus (*the ancestor*) Rōmānōrum, arma et proelia et bella amābat. Rōmulus et Remus, filii dei armōrum, Rōmam aedificāvērunt. Itaque proelia et bella animōs Rōmānōrum dēlectāvērunt. Mercurium et Neptūnum et Vestam Rōmānī adōrābant. Mercurius, nūntius deōrum, imperia deōrum incolis terrārum (*the earth*) nārrābat. Neptūnum, deum aquārum et ūceanī, nautae adōrābant. Fēminaē Vestam, deam focī (*hearth*), adōrābant et ei deae multa dōna parābant.



MARS

## LESSON XXI

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, FUTURE, AND PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

159. The Present, Imperfect, Future, and Perfect Indicative Active of the Third Conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of the verb *regō* (660). What are the present and perfect stems?

a. Observe that the personal endings, except in the first person singular of the future, are the same as in the first and second conjugations.

b. Observe that the differences between this conjugation and the first and second conjugations are in the present and future tenses.

c. Observe that in the present tense the *e* of the present stem *rege-* disappears before *ō* in the first person, just as happened in *ama-ō*; and that it becomes *u* in the third person plural, while in the other persons it is *i*. The inflection is like that of *erō*, future of *sum*.

d. Observe that the future does not use *-bi-* as a tense sign, but has *-a-* in the first person singular, and *-e-* in the other persons.

e. Give heed to the quantities and the accents. Inflect like *regō* the verbs in the following vocabulary.

### 160.

### VOCABULARY

*bene*, *adv.*, well (*benevolent*)

*emō*, *emere*, *ēmī*, *ēmptus*, buy  
(*preēmption*)

*hodiē*, *adv.*, to-day

*mittō*, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missus*, send  
(*remit*)

*ōlim*, *adv.*, once, formerly

*dūcō*, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*, lead  
(*conduct*)      *rēxī*, *rēctus*, rule,  
                        manage (*regent*)

*tum*, *adv.*, then

*dūcēbat*, *dūcēre*, *dūcēbat*, lead

### EXERCISES

161. 1. *Regit*, *regēbat*, *reget*. 2. *Emō*, *emēbam*, *emam*.
3. *Dūcunt*, *dūcent*, *dūcēbat*. 4. *Rēxit*, *rēxērunt*, *dūxit*. 5. *Dūxērunt*, *ēmīstī*, *ēmīstis*. 6. *Mīsī*, *mīsimus*, *mīsit*. 7. *Mittimus*,

mittunt, mittent. 8. Is agricola multōs agrōs habet. 9. Frūmentum in oppidum magnum nāvigiis mittet. 10. Frūmentum in vīcum equīs validīs mittet. 11. Quis eōs equōs in viā dūcet? 12. Filiī agricolae, Mārcus et Galba, equōs dūxērunt et hodiē dūcent. 13. Tum arma nova ement. 14. Ōlim Rōmānī Italiam bene rēxērunt.

162. 1. They rule, they were ruling, they will rule. 2. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 3. I have bought, we bought, they bought. 4. I am sending, I shall send, I have sent. 5. You send, you will send, you have sent. 6. The Romans once had many lands. 7. Often they did not rule these lands well. 8. Then the allies sent assistance. 9. What girls spent the winter in Italy? 10. I shall send a lieutenant with these captives into Italy.



GLADIATORS ENTERING THE ARENA

## THIRD REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XV-XXI

**163.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|          |          |          |           |         |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|---------|
| adōrō    | causa    | hiemō    | mittō     | regō    |
| aedificō | compleō  | hodiē    | nāvigium  | scūtum  |
| aeger    | cum      | imperium | ōlim      | studium |
| animus   | cūra     | in       | periculum | teneō   |
| arma     | dēfessus | is       | prō       | tum     |
| armō     | diū      | itaque   | properō   | vīcus   |
| bene     | dūcō     | lēgātus  | pugnō     | vulnerō |
| captivus | emō      | locus    | quō       |         |

**164.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                            |                   |                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| lead                       | rule              | zeal, eagerness   |
| once, formerly             | place             | care, anxiety     |
| peril                      | equip, arm        | arms              |
| with                       | sick              | pray to, worship  |
| before, for, in defense of | shield            | hold, keep        |
| then                       | spend the winter  | hasten            |
| whither?                   | this, that        | captive           |
| village                    | into, to          | to-day            |
| tired out, weary           | send              | cause, reason     |
| feeling, mind              | well              | buy               |
| fight                      | lieutenant, envoy | command, power    |
| wound                      | fill              | and so, therefore |
| for a long time, long      | build             | boat              |

**165.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 163. Conjugate each verb in the present, imperfect, and future indicative active. Give the principal parts of each verb in 68, 115, and 163. Conjugate each verb in 163 in the perfect indicative active. Decline *is* and *quis*.

**166.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 163. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**167.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Ablative of means                            3. Ablative of accompaniment
2. Ablative of manner



A RACE IN THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS

## LESSON XXII

### READING LESSON

168.

#### VOCABULARY

- āla, -ae, *f.*, wing
- cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax
- Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete
- Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, Dædalus, father  
of Icarus
- iam, *adv.*, now, already
- īcarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus
- que, *conj.*, enclitic (22), and
- quoque, *adv.*, also, too
- aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit,  
fit to, adjust (*adapt*)
- cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī,

- cōfirmātus, strengthen, en-  
courage (*confirmation*)
- dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, —, fall  
off, fall down (*deciduous*)
- fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, fash-  
ion, devise (*fiction*)
- postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, pos-  
tulātus, demand (*postulate*)
- solvō, solvere, solvī, salūtus, loose  
(*solve*)
- volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, fly  
(*volatile*)

169.

#### DE ICARO

MĀRCUS. Fābulam bonam amīcus meus hodiē nārrāvit.

IŪLIA. Dē quō nārrāvit amīcus tuus?

MĀRCUS. Dē īcarō, Daedalī fīliō, puerō miserō.

IŪLIA. Ubi habitābat īcarus? In Britanniā?

MĀRCUS. Nōn in Britanniā habitābat, sed in Crētā, īnsulā  
magnā et clārā. Daedalus fīliō ālās fīnxit et parāvit. Eās  
ālās īcarō magnā cum cūrā cērā aptāvit. Ālāe īcarō grātiae  
erant. Tum Daedalus puerum volāre (*to fly*) docuit, sed altius  
(*too high*) volāvit īcarus. Itaque sōl (*the sun*) cēram solvit,  
et ālāe dēcidērunt.

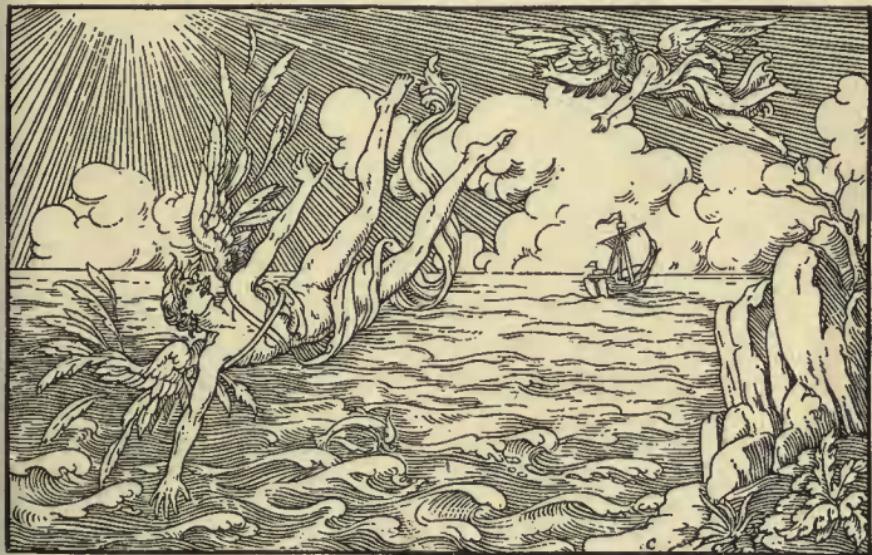
IŪLIA. Sed quid dē īcarō?

MĀRCUS. īcarus quoque dēcidit in oēceanum.

IŪLIA. Ēheu (*alas*), miserum īcarum!

## ROMANI PRO SOCIIS PUGNANT

170. Quod iniūriae multae fuērunt, sociī nostrī auxilium postulant. Itaque Rōmānī lēgātum cum virīs in terram Helvētiōrum mittent. Is lēgātus iam virōs convocāvit in oppidum. Cibum et carrōs ēmit et virōs gladiis scūtisque armāvit. Sociī interim frūmentum parāvērunt. Hodie lēgātus animōs virōrum cōfirmābit. Tum in agrōs finitimōs virōs dūcet et proelium exspectābit. Locus eius proeli propinquus Helvētiis est. Nostrī virī magnō cum studiō prō sociis pugnābunt et Helvētiōs superābunt. Multōs captivōs in oppidum dūcent. Ei captivī in vīcis nostrīs hiemābunt.



ICARUS IN OCEANUM DECIDIT

## LESSON XXIII

### THE THIRD DECLENSION

**171. The Third Declension.** Nouns of the third declension end variously in the nominative singular. They are of masculine, feminine, or neuter gender. Their inflection is illustrated by the following words :

| rēx, m.       | miles, m.  | virtūs, f.  | caput, n.  | CASE ENDINGS     |
|---------------|------------|-------------|------------|------------------|
| king          | soldier    | valor       | head       | M. AND F. N.     |
| SINGULAR      |            |             |            |                  |
| Nom. rēx      | mī'les     | vir'tūs     | ca'put     | -s or — —        |
| Gen. rē'gis   | mī'lītis   | virtū'tis   | ca'pit is  | -is      -is     |
| Dat. rē'gī    | mī'lītī    | virtū'tī    | ca'pitī    | -ī      -ī       |
| Acc. rē'gem   | mī'lītem   | virtū'tem   | ca'put     | -em      —       |
| Abl. rē'ge    | mī'līte    | virtū'te    | ca'pite    | -e      -e       |
| PLURAL        |            |             |            |                  |
| Nom. rē'gēs   | mī'lītēs   | virtū'tēs   | ca'pita    | -ēs      -a      |
| Gen. rē'gum   | mī'lītum   | virtū'tum   | ca'pitum   | -um      -um     |
| Dat. rē'gibus | mī'lītibus | virtū'tibus | capi'tibus | -ibus      -ibus |
| Acc. rē'gēs   | mī'lītēs   | virtū'tēs   | ca'pita    | -ēs      -a      |
| Abl. rē'gibus | mī'lītibus | virtū'tibus | capi'tibus | -ibus      -ibus |

a. To decline a noun of the third declension it is necessary to know the gender, and the spelling of the nominative and the genitive singular. These things, therefore, must be learned about every noun of this declension. Often an English derivative will suggest the spelling of the genitive singular : as, *capital*, *capitis*; *military*, *militis*.

b. No adequate rule for the gender of nouns of the third declension can be given. But

Nouns ending in -tor are masculine.

Nouns ending in -tās, -tūs, or -tūdō, and most nouns ending in -i- are feminine.

Nouns ending in -e, -al, or -ar are neuter.

c. Learn the case endings. Then practice the declension of the nouns above and of those in the vocabulary. Observe that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

d. Decline together *miles bonus*, *good soldier*; *virtūs nostra*, *our valor*; and *caput parvum*, *small head*.

## 172.

## VOCABULARY

*caput, capitīs, n.*, head (*capital*)

*dux, ducīs, m.*, leader, general  
(*conductor*)

*eques, equitīs, m.*, horseman (*eques-*  
*trian*)

*et . . . et, conj.*, both . . . and

*fortiter, adv.*, bravely

*lapis, lapidīs, m.*, stone (*dilapidate*)

*miles, militīs, m.*, soldier (*military*)

*pedes, peditīs, m.*, foot soldier  
(*pedestrian*)

*rēx, rēgis, m.*, king (*regal*)

*virtūs, virtūtīs, f.*, valor, courage  
(*virtue*)

## EXERCISES

173. 1. Rēgem et ducem hodiē vīdī. 2. Capita multōrum peditum vīdimus. 3. Et rēgēs et ducēs militēs nostrōs dūxērunt. 4. Etiam equitēs prō rēge et duce fortiter pugnābant. 5. Virtūte et studiō<sup>1</sup> sociōs superāvērunt. 6. Lapidibus et pilis multōs agricolās vulnerāvērunt. 7. Virtūs equitum atque studium peditum lēgātum certē dēlectābit.<sup>2</sup> 8. Quiṣ iīs equitibus scūta emet? 9. Nostrōs militēs in silvās quoque mīsimus.

174. 1. The commands of the king have been many. 2. We shall approve of the commands of the kings. 3. By the valor of these soldiers we shall overcome the Helvetians. 4. I shall spend the winter with the general. 5. In a town I saw a king. 6. This king was a good general and ruled well. 7. He bought food for the wretched foot soldiers. 8. He sent both arms and grain into that town.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the ablative of an abstract noun may express means.

<sup>2</sup> Observe that a singular verb may be used with two subjects, if the subjects are abstract nouns and considered as a single whole.

## LESSON XXIV

THE THIRD CONJUGATION: VERBS IN *-IO* · THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH · THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

175. The Third Conjugation: Verbs in *-io*. Certain verbs of the third conjugation differ in inflection from the regular verbs of that conjugation. Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of *capiō*, *take* (661).

a. Wherein does the inflection of *capiō* differ from that of *regō* in the present? in the imperfect? in the future?

b. Verbs in *-io*, with the infinitive in *-ere*, are conjugated like *capiō*. Like *capiō* inflect in the same tenses *fugiō* and *iaciō* (176).

### 176.

### VOCABULARY

**ā (ab)**, *prep. with abl.*, away from,  
from, by. (*avert*)

**ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward  
(*adhere*)

**conloquium**, *conlo'qui*, *n.*, confer-  
ence, interview (*colloquial*)

**ē (ex)**, *prep. with abl.*, out of,  
from (*exit*)

**mūrus**, *-i*, *m.*, wall (*mural*)

**pēs**, *pedis*, *m.*, foot (*pedal*)  
**capiō**, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captus*, take  
capture, receive (*captive*)

**dīmittō**, *dīmittere*, *dīmisi*, *dīmis-*  
sus, send away (*dismiss*)

**fugiō**, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*, flee,  
run away (*fugitive*)

**iaciō**, *iacere*, *iēcī*, *iactus*, throw,  
hurl, cast, fling (*reject*)

a. *Ab* and *ex* are used instead of *ā* and *ē* before words beginning with a vowel or *h*; before consonants either *ā* or *ab*, *ē* or *ex* may be used.

### 177. The Ablative of Place from Which.

1. *Militēs ab vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening away from the village.*

2. *Militēs ex vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening out of the village.*

3. *Militēs dē vīcō properant*, *the soldiers are hastening from (down from) the village.*

a. Observe that the phrases *ab vicō*, *ex vicō*, and *dē vicō* denote the place from which the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Place from Which*. *Ab vicō* (1) indicates that the soldiers started from the vicinity of the village; while *ex vicō* (2) indicates that they started from some point or place *within* the village.

**178. Rule for the Ablative of Place from Which.** Place from which is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*).

### 179. The Accusative of Place to Which.

1. *Lēgātōs in oppidum mīsērunt*, they sent ambassadors into the town.
2. *Lēgātōs ad oppidum mīsērunt*, they sent ambassadors to the town.

a. Observe that the phrases *in oppidum* and *ad oppidum* denote the place to which the motion is directed. This usage is known as the *Accusative of Place to Which*.

**180. Rule for the Accusative of Place to Which.** Place to which is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*.

### EXERCISES

1. Capiet, capit, capiunt.
2. Iaciō, iaciam, iaciēbam.
3. Cēpērunt, iēcīt, iēcīmus.
4. Fūgimus, fugimus, dīmisimus.
5. Ex conloquiō fugiunt.
6. Ab vicō in agrōs fugient.
7. Dē oppidō ad ōceanum fūgit.
8. Qui litterās ad rēgem mīsērunt?
9. Dē mūris eius oppidi pīla iēcērunt.
10. Dēfessōs militēs ex proeliō dimisit.
11. Cūr ab eō locō fugis?
12. Carrōs nostrōs capient.

1. He will hurl, they will hurl, they hurl.
2. You throw, you will throw, you have thrown.
3. They wounded the feet of the horsemen.
4. I shall hasten from Italy into the province.
5. Both women and girls were fleeing from the fields.
6. They have hastened from Germany into Italy.
7. He led the tribune to the conference.

## LESSON XXV

### THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE · PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES EXPRESSING CAUSE

183.

#### VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis, *m.*, centurion  
corpus, corporis, *n.*, body (*cor-*  
*poral*)<sup>1</sup>  
doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus,  
grieve (*doleful*)  
explōrātor, explōrātōris, *m.*, scout  
(*explore*)  
homō, hominis, *m.*, man (*homicide*)

inopia, -ae, *f.*, want, lack  
ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of  
pater, patris, *m.*, father (*paternal*)  
propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account  
of  
soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister (*sorority*)  
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound (*vul-*  
*nerable*)

a. Decline centuriō miser, corpus magnum, homō dēfessus, id vulnus.

#### 184. The Ablative of Cause.

1. Lēgātus militem virtūte laudāvit, *the lieutenant praised the soldier for (because of, on account of) his valor.*
2. Peditēs viā longā sunt dēfessī, *the foot soldiers are tired out with (from, because of) the long march.*

a. Observe that the ablatives **virtūte** and **viā** denote *cause* or *reason*. Observe the various prepositions used in translating these ablatives: *for, with, from, because of, on account of*. This ablative answers the question *why?* and is known as the *Ablative of Cause*.

#### 185. Rule for the Ablative of Cause. *The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause.*

186. Prepositional Phrases expressing Cause. Cause may also be expressed by a prepositional phrase consisting of *ob* or *propter* with the accusative, or of *dē* or *ex* with the ablative:

<sup>1</sup> See 171, *a.*

1. **Lēgātus mīlitem ob (propter) virtūtem laudāvit,** *the lieutenant praised the soldier on account of his courage.*
  2. **Multīs dē causīs in Italiam properābunt,** *for many reasons they will hurry into Italy.*
- a. Observe the translation of **dē** in the phrase **dē causīs**.

## EXERCISES

- 187.** 1. **Multīs dē causīs Rōmānī auxiliū nōn mīsērunt.**  
 2. **Lapidibūs pīlisque eōs hominēs vulnerāvērunt.** 3. **Multa vulnera in capitibūs et in corporibūs habent.**  
 4. **Hodiē patrēs vulneribūs filiōrum dolēbunt.** 5. **Dux nōster magnā victōriā centuriōnēs laudābit.** 6. **Periculum explōrātōrum militēs terruit.** 7. **Tum in mūrōs oppidi ob iniūriās nōn fugiēbātis.** 8. **Propter inopiam cibī<sup>1</sup> magnō in periculō fuimus.**  
 9. **Lēgātus equitēs et peditēs ad conloquium dūxit.**

- 188.** 1. We have often been tired because of wounds. 2. I shall praise our soldiers because of their courage and zeal. 3. Our fathers will fight for a long time and will capture much booty. 4. Which centurion was throwing javelins down from the wall? 5. On account of a lack of food and water Marcus and Galba, the centurions, did not fight with courage. 6. My sister is now grieving because the women of Britain are wretched. 7. In the meantime the scouts related the commands of the general.



CENTURIO

<sup>1</sup> This is a new usage of the genitive case. As used here, the genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made. It is called the *Genitive of Material*.

## LESSON XXVI

### THE THIRD DECLENSION: *I*-STEMS

**189. The Third Declension: *i*-Stems.** Certain nouns of the third declension have *i*-stems. These include :

1. Nouns which end in **-is** or **-ēs** in the nominative singular and have no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative.
2. Neuters ending in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**.
3. Nouns ending in **-ns** or **-rs**.
4. Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x**, with a consonant preceding the **-s** or **-x**.

These nouns show the following peculiarities of declension :

1. The genitive plural ends in **-ium**.
2. The accusative plural of masculines and of feminines ends in **-is** or **-ēs**.
3. The nominative and the accusative plural of neuters end in **-ia**.
4. The ablative singular of neuters and of a few other words ends in **-i**.

The declension of nouns having *i*-stems is illustrated by the following paradigms :

| <i>hostis</i> , m., <i>enemy</i> | <i>mare</i> , n., <i>sea</i> | <i>cohors</i> , f., <i>cohort</i> | <i>mōns</i> , m., <i>mountain</i> |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| STEM <i>hosti-</i>               | STEM <i>marī-</i>            | STEM <i>cohorti-</i>              | STEM <i>monti-</i>                |
| <b>SINGULAR</b>                  |                              |                                   |                                   |
| <i>Nom.</i> hos'tis              | ma're                        | co'hors                           | mōns                              |
| <i>Gen.</i> hos'tis              | ma'ris                       | cohor'tis                         | mon'tis                           |
| <i>Dat.</i> hos'ti               | ma'rī                        | cohor'tī                          | mon'tī                            |
| <i>Acc.</i> hos'tem              | ma're                        | cohor'tem                         | mon'tem                           |
| <i>Abl.</i> hos'te               | ma'rī                        | cohor'te                          | mon'te                            |

## ·PLURAL

|             |               |          |                 |               |
|-------------|---------------|----------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hos'tēs       | ma'ria   | cohor'tēs       | mon'tēs       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hos'tium      | ma'rīum  | cohor'tīum      | mon'tīum      |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hos'tibus     | ma'rībus | cohor'tībus     | mon'tībus     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hos'tīs (-ēs) | ma'ria   | cohor'tīs (-ēs) | mon'tīs (-ēs) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hos'tibus     | ma'rībus | cohor'tībus     | mon'tībus     |

a. For the guidance of the learner, in the succeeding vocabularies nouns having i-stems will be followed by the stem.

b. Decline each noun in 190.

## 190.

## VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis (cīvi-), *m.*, citizen (*civil*)  
 cohōrs, cohōrtis (cohōrti-), *f.*, cohort  
 collis, collis (colli-), *m.*, hill  
 fīnis, fīnis (fini-), *m.*, end; *plur.*,  
 territories (*finish*)  
 hostis, hostis (hosti-), *m.*, enemy  
 (*hostile*)  
 ignis, ignis (igni-), *m.*, fire (*ignite*)

mare, maris (mari-), *n.*, sea (*mari-*  
*time*)  
 mōns, montis (monti-), *m.*, mountain (*mount*)  
 nāvis, nāvis (nāvi-), *f.*, ship (*navi-*  
*gate*)  
 urbs, urbīs (urbi-), *f.*, city (*urban*)

## EXERCISES

191. 1. Victōria hostium cīvis urbīs Rōmae terruit. 2. Collīs et montīs Italiae nōn vīdī. 3. Explōrātōrēs et centuriōnēs ex fīnībus Sabinōrum fūgērunt. 4. Rōmānī multās nāvīs et nāvīgia in marī habuērunt. 5. Magnō periculō cīvēs cībūm frūmentumque in urbēm portant. 6. Cohortēs quoque mittēmus et hostis superābimus. 7. Propinquū montī erat oppidū. 8. Virtūs cīvīum grāta duci fuit.

192. 1. Have we many ships to-day? 2. Formerly they lived on the hills and mountains. 3. The territories of the Romans were wide. 4. These citizens are not fit for war. 5. Our soldiers have captured many cities of Greece. 6. Who are throwing javelins down from the walls of the cities? 7. Boys see great fires in the city.

## LESSON XXVII

### THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS

**193. Prepositions with the Accusative.** The following prepositions are used with the accusative:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| ad, to, toward, against ( <i>adverse</i> )      | among (of more than two objects) ( <i>intervene</i> ) |
| ante, before, in front of ( <i>antecedent</i> ) | ob, on account of, because of                         |
| apud, near, with, among                         | per, through ( <i>perennial</i> )                     |
| contrā, against ( <i>contradict</i> )           | post, after, behind ( <i>postpone</i> )               |
| in, into, against ( <i>inspire</i> )            | propter, on account of, because of                    |
| inter, between (of two objects),                | trāns, across ( <i>transatlantic</i> )                |

**194. Prepositions with the Ablative.** The following prepositions are used with the ablative:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| ā, ab, away from, from, by ( <i>ablative</i> ) | in, in, at, on ( <i>insist</i> )                  |
| cum, with ( <i>compete</i> )                   | prō, in front of, in behalf of ( <i>protect</i> ) |
| dē, down from, concerning ( <i>depose</i> )    | sine, without ( <i>sinecure</i> )                 |
| ē, ex, out of, from ( <i>expose</i> )          |   |

a. Which preposition is used with both cases? With what difference in meaning?

b. Learn the meanings of all these prepositions.

**195. Methods of saying "to," "on account of," "because of," and "with" in Latin:**

a. *To*: If the phrase expresses the *indirect object*, use the dative. If the phrase occurs with a verb of *motion* (as *mittō*), use *ad* or *in* with the accusative.

b. *On account of, because of*: Use either *ob* or *propter* with the accusative, or use the ablative.

Remember that the preposition **dē** or **ex** is used in certain phrases (as, **multis dē causis**, *for many reasons*).

c. *With*: If the phrase expresses *means*, use the ablative.

If the phrase expresses *manner*, use the ablative with **cum**; omit **cum**, if you wish, when there is an adjective in the phrase.

If the phrase expresses *accompaniment*, use the ablative with **cum**.

If the phrase expresses *cause*, use either **ob** or **propter** with the accusative, or use the ablative of cause.



EQUES ROMANUS

### 196. Adjectives used as Nouns.

Adjectives are often used as nouns (III, f); as, **amicus**, -ī, m., *a friend*, from **amicus**, a, -um, *friendly*; **multa**, -ōrum, n., *many things*, from **multī**, -ae, -a, *many*. So also **finitimī**, *neighbors*, and **nostrī**, *our men*.

### EXERCISES

197. 1. **Nostrī centuriōnem** inter captivōs vīdērunt. 2. **Finitimī** propter eam victoriā Rōmānōrum dolent. 3. Cūr cohortēs per silvās ad oppidum fugiēbant? 4. Cum cūrā vestrās filiās librīs docuistis. 5. Equitēs et peditēs ante portam sunt. 6. Sine periculō in urbe manēbimus. 7. Atque multa ex eā urbe portāvērunt. 8. Trāns agrum lātum explorātōrēs dūcit. 9. In prōvinciā cum multis militib⁹ fuit.

198. 1. After this battle he will send our men into Germany. 2. They captured the town without help. 3. The neighbors were fighting bravely against the enemy. 4. In front of the town was a hill. 5. Near the lieutenant a messenger was waiting. 6. We shall hurry through Italy and shall spend the winter among those mountains.

## LESSON XXVIII

### READING LESSON

**199.**

#### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| exemplum, -i, <i>n.</i> , example                                    | tergum, -i, <i>n.</i> , back; <i>ā</i> <i>tergō</i> , in<br>the rear              |
| factum, -i, <i>n.</i> , act, deed ( <i>fact</i> )                    | terror, <i>terrōris</i> , <i>m.</i> , terror, fear                                |
| Horātius, Horāti, <i>m.</i> , Horatius, a<br>Roman                   | Tiberis, -is ( <i>acc. -im</i> ), <i>m.</i> , Tiber, a<br>river                   |
| nam, <i>conj.</i> , for  | timidus, -a, -um, fearful ( <i>timid</i> )  |
| paucī, -ae, -a, <i>plur.</i> , few, only a<br>few ( <i>paucity</i> ) | dēfendō; dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēn-<br>sus, defend ( <i>defense</i> )             |
| pōns, pontis (ponti-), <i>m.</i> , bridge<br>( <i>pontoon</i> )      | obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obseßus,<br>besiege                                    |
| Porsena, -ae, <i>m.</i> , Porsena, a king<br>of Etruria              | servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus,<br>save, protect ( <i>preserve</i> )           |
| Sublicius, -a, -um, Sublician (rest-<br>ing on piles)                | sustineō, sustinēre, sustinūi, sus-<br>tentus, hold up, sustain, hold<br>in check |
| tandem, <i>adv.</i> , at last, finally                               |   |

#### HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

**200.** Porſena, Rōmānōrum hostis, rēx fuit clārus. Ōlim urbem  
Rōmam obſidēbat. Magnus erat terror Rōmānōrum, quod Por-  
ſena multōs militēs habēbat. Timidae fēminaē in templis deōs  
adōrābant. Sed virtūs validi virī Rōmam dēfendit. Nām paucis  
cum sociis prō ponte Subliciō Horātius hostis sustinuit. Cīvēs  
interim *ā* *tergō* pontem solvunt et rescindunt (*break down*).  
Tum sociōs Horātius dimittit et pontem contrā hostis dēfendit.  
Tandem dēcidit pōns, et inter pila hostium Horātius in Tiberim  
dēſilit (*jumps down*) et ad sociōs natat. Id exemplum virtūtis  
Rōmam servāvit. Hodī facta Horāti laudāmus.

## 201.

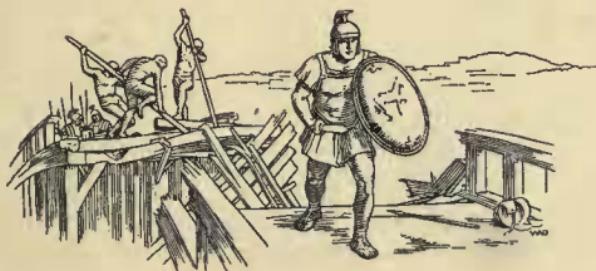
## VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| contendō, contendere, contendī, con-                   | incolō, incolere, incoluī, ——, dwell                  |
| tentus, struggle ( <i>contend</i> )                    | in, inhabit   |
| cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily                             | magnopere, <i>adv.</i> , greatly                      |
| ferē, <i>adv.</i> , almost                             | nātiō, nātiōnis, <i>f.</i> , race, people,            |
| Gallia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Gaul ( <i>Gallic</i> )        | tribe ( <i>national</i> )                             |
| Gallus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , a Gaul (inhabitant<br>of Gaul) | nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not<br>only . . . but also |
| Germāni, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , Germans              | Rhēnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Rhine ( <i>Rhenish</i> )      |
| Hispāni, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , Spaniards            | timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, fear,                       |
| Hispānia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Spain                       | dread   |

## DE NATIONIBUS EUROPAE

202. Hispānia et Gallia et Germānia erant nātiōnēs Eurōpae. Proxima ōceanō erat Hispānia. Galli inter Hispāniām et Germāniām, Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolēbant. Germānī paucōs vīcōs etiam in Galliā habēbant. Quod eae nātiōnēs hostēs erant, Rōmānī cum Hispānīs et Gallis et Germānīs saepe pugnāvērunt.

Inter Galliā et mare erat nova prōvincia Rōmae. Incolae eius prōvinciae iniūriās Gallōrum diū sustinuērunt. Tandem ab Rōmānīs auxilium postulāvērunt; nam Helvētiōs finitimōs magnopere timēbant. Helvētiī nōn sōlum prōvinciae sed etiam Germānīs inimīci erant et cum Germānīs cotidiānīs ferē proeliīs contendēbant.



HORATIUS PONTEM DEFENDIT

## FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXII-XXVIII

**203.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|            |             |           |                 |          |
|------------|-------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|
| ā, ab      | dēcidō      | homō      | nāvis           | rēx      |
| ad         | dēfendō     | hostis    | nōn sōlum . . . | servō    |
| ante       | dīmittō     | iaciō     | sed etiam       | sine     |
| apud       | dolō        | iam       | ob              | solvō    |
| capiō      | dux         | ignis     | obsideō         | soror    |
| caput      | ē, ex       | incolō    | pater           | sustineō |
| centuriō   | eques       | inopia    | paucī           | tandem   |
| cīvis      | et . . . et | inter     | pedes           | tergum   |
| cohors     | exemplum    | lapis     | per             | terror   |
| collis     | explōrātor  | magnopere | pēs             | timeō    |
| cōfirmō    | factum      | mare      | pōns            | timidus  |
| conlōquium | ferē        | mīles     | post            | trāns    |
| contendō   | fingō       | mōns      | postulō         | urbs     |
| contrā     | fīnis       | mūrus     | propter         | virtūs   |
| corpus     | fortiter    | nam       | -que            | volō     |
| cotīdiānus | fugiō       | nātiō     | quoque          | vulnus   |

**204.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                 |          |           |                           |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|---------------------------|
| sister          | back     | after     | on account of, because of |
| few, only a few | wall     | and       | near, with, among         |
| fly             | without  | father    | conference, interview     |
| both . . . and  | bridge   | head      | to, toward, against       |
| across          | enemy    | daily     | from, away from           |
| hill            | now      | defend    | not only . . . but also   |
| foot soldier    | horseman | stone     | throw, hurl, cast         |
| ship            | at last  | before    | valor, courage            |
| grieve          | soldier  | centurion | leader, general           |
| fear, dread     | bravely  | for       | fashion, devise           |
| mountain        | citizen  | fall down | dwell in, inhabit         |
| city            | terror   | loose     | between, among            |

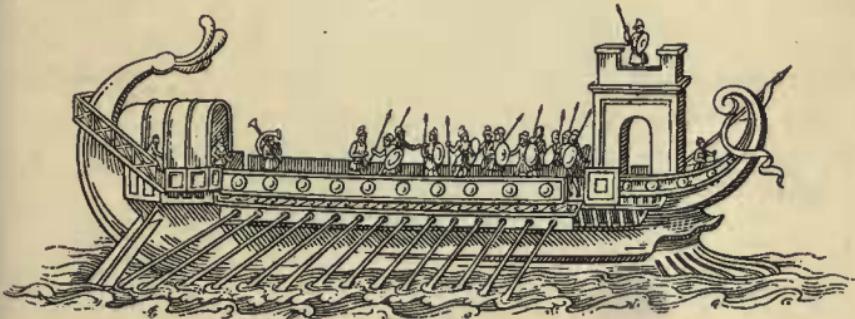
|               |            |         |                                 |
|---------------|------------|---------|---------------------------------|
| take, capture | king       | sea     | race, people, tribe             |
| fire          | greatly    | foot    | end, territories                |
| struggle      | scout      | flee    | strengthen, encourage           |
| man           | against    | body    | hold up, sustain, hold in check |
| wound         | lack, want | besiege | act, deed                       |
| send away     | demand     | cohort  | example                         |
| out of, from  | through    | almost  | save, protect                   |
| fearful       |            |         |                                 |

**205.** Decline each noun in 203. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the third conjugation in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Use each preposition in a Latin phrase. Which nouns have i-stems?

**206.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 203. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**207.** Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Ablative of place from which           | 5. Prepositions with the accusative |
| 2. Accusative of place to which           |                                     |
| 3. Ablative of cause                      | 6. Prepositions with the ablative   |
| 4. Prepositional phrases expressing cause | 7. Adjectives used as nouns         |



NAVIS

## LESSON XXIX

### ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

208. **Adjectives of the Third Declension.** Besides the adjectives of the first and second declensions there are also adjectives of the third declension. They use the endings of the third declension of nouns.

a. Some of these adjectives have the same form for the nominative singular of all three genders: as, **audāx**, *bold*. Others have the same form for the masculine and feminine nominative singular, but a different form for the neuter nominative singular: as, **brevis**,  *breve, short*. Still others have a different form in the nominative singular for each gender: as, **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen, eager*.

b. Learn the declension of **audāx**, **brevis**, and **ācer** (644).

c. Observe that the adjectives having two or three endings in the nominative singular have only -ī in the ablative singular. Adjectives of one ending more often have -ī than -e in the ablative. Compare the endings of these adjectives with the endings of nouns having i-stems (189). What differences are there?

d. Decline **proelium ācre**, *keen battle*; **corpus breve**, *short body*; **hostis audāx**, *bold enemy*; **vir ācer**, *bold man*.

### 209.

### VOCABULARY

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *keen, eager, sharp  
(acrid)*  
**audāx**, **audācis**, *bold (audacious)*  
**brevis**, -e, *short, brief (brevity)*  
**Caesar**, **Caesaris**, *m., Cæsar*  
**commūnis**, -e, *common (community)*

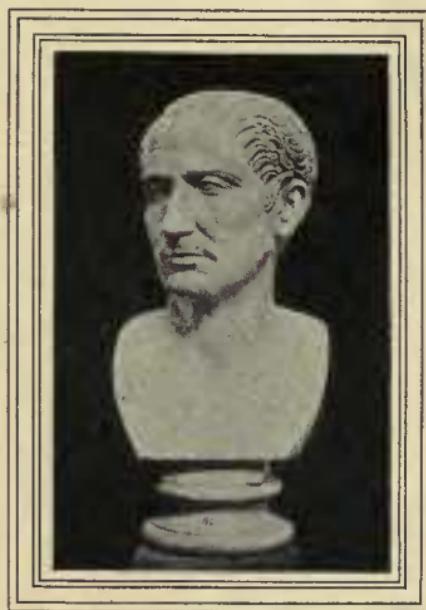
**fortis**, -e, *brave, strong (fortitude)*  
**gravis**, -e, *heavy, severe (gravity)*  
**labor**, **labōris**, *m., toil, hardship  
(laborious)*  
**omnis**, -e, *all, every, the whole  
(omnipresent)*  
**potestās**, **pōtestātis**, *f., power*

NOTE. In the vocabularies the genitive singular will be given of adjectives of one ending; but in the case of adjectives of two or of three endings all the forms of the nominative singular will be given.

## EXERCISES

210. 1. Caesar dux audāx Rōmānōrum erat. 2. Magna fuit, potestās eius ducis. 3. Omnes militēs Caesarem magnopere amābant, quod hostis saepe superāvit. 4. Labōrēs militum in bellō saepe erant gravēs. 5. Hostēs multi et acrēs erant et multa pīla contrā Rōmānōs iaciēbant. 6. Sed nostrae cohortēs propter commūne periculum nōn fūgērunt. 7. Prō Rōmā fortiter pugnāvērunt. 8. Breve erat id bellum.

211. 1. The sword of the Romans was both short and heavy. 2. The foot soldier had a bold comrade. 3. Our men were carrying many heavy things. 4. To all my friends I shall give gifts. 5. The leader of the eager horsemen was grieving because of many hardships. 6. He dismissed all the tribunes from the conference.



CÆSAR

## LESSON XXX

### THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

**212.** **The Fourth Conjugation.** Learn the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active of **audiō** (662).

*a.* Compare the inflection of **audiō** with that of **capiō**. Observe that three forms of **audiō** in the present differ in quantity from the corresponding forms of **capiō**: **audīs**, **audīmus**, **audītis**. In other respects the inflection is identical with that of **capiō**.

*b.* Inflect like **audiō** in the same tenses **reperiō**, *find*, and **veniō**, *come*.

### 213.

### VOCABULARY

**flūmen, flūminis**, *n.*, river (*fluent*)  
**nōbilis**, *-e*, noble, of high birth  
    (*nobility*)  
**audiō, audire**, **audīvī, audītus**, hear  
    (*audible*)

**oppugnō, oppugnārē, oppugnāvī**  
**oppugnātus**, attack (*impugn*)  
**reperiō, reperīrē, repperī, repertus**,  
    *find* (*repertory*)  
**veniō, venīrē, vēnī, ventūrus**, come  
    (*invent*)

### EXERCISES

**214.** 1. **Audiō**, **audiēbam**, **audiam**. 2. **Auditne?** **audiēbat**,  
**audiet**. 3. **Audiunt**, **audiēbant**, **audient**. 4. **Audīmus**, **audīvīmus**,  
**audiētis**. 5. **Audīvī**, **audīs**, **audīvērunt**. 6. **Venīs**, **venit**,  
**vēnistī**. 7. **Vēnit**, **venīmus**, **vēnimus**. 8. **Reperīsne?** **repērīstis**,  
**reperiō**. 9. **Repperī**, **reperit**, **repperit**.

**215.** 1. He has found, they have found, they came. 2. You are hearing, you did come, he heard. 3. We have heard, we were finding, we came. 4. You are coming, they were finding, we shall come. 5. I shall hear, we hear, they heard. 6. He came, he has come, they hear. 7. They will defend, they have attacked, he has defended.

216.

## CONLOQUIUM

MĀRCUS. Hodiē fābulam dē Porsenā et Horātiō audīvī.

IŪLIA. Quis fuit Porsena? Rōmānusne erat?

MĀRCUS. Porsena, rēx nōbilis, Rōmānōrum hostis olim fuit. Cum mīlitib⁹ audācib⁹ in finis Rōmānōrum vēnit, et urbem Rōmam oppugnābat.

IŪLIA. Fūgēruntne Rōmānī ob perīculum?

MĀRCUS. Magnum erat perīculum urbis et cīvium, quod hostēs erant fortēs et ācrēs, sed Rōmānī nōn fūgērunt.

IŪLIA. Cēpitne Porsena Rōmam?

MĀRCUS. Urbem nōn cēpit, quod virtūs validī virī cīvis dēfendēbat. Paucis cum sociis Horātius prō urbe fortiter pugnābat.

IŪLIA. Diūne hostēs sustinuit Horātius?

MĀRCUS. Nōn diū, quod hostēs erant multī, et multa pila iaciēbant. Tandem trāns flūmen ad socios natāvit. Rōmānī Horātium ob eam virtūtem laudāvērunt.



SOLDIERS MARCHING

## LESSON XXXI

### THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

217.

#### VOCABULARY

|   |  |
|---|--|
| aestās, aestātis, <i>f.</i> , summer                                  | secundus, -a, -um, second ( <i>secondary</i> )         |
| annus, -i, <i>m.</i> , year ( <i>annual</i> )                         | tempus, temporis, <i>n.</i> , time ( <i>temporal</i> ) |
| decem, <i>adj.</i> , indecl., ten ( <i>decimal</i> )                  | gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, manage,                   |
| hiems, hiemis, <i>f.</i> , winter                                     | carry on ( <i>vicegerent</i> )                         |
| hōra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , hour ( <i>horoscope</i> )                      | prīmā lūce, at dawn                                    |
| lūx, lūcis, <i>f.</i> , light ( <i>translucent</i> )                  | bellum gerere, carry on war, wage                      |
| nox, noctis ( <i>nocti-</i> ), <i>f.</i> , night ( <i>nocturnal</i> ) | war  |
| prīmus, -a, -um, first ( <i>primary</i> )                             |  |

### 218. The Ablative of Time.

1. Hominēs aestāte et hieme labōrant, *men toil in summer and in winter.*
2. Decem annis Caesar multa bella gessit, *within ten years Cæsar carried on many wars.*

a. Observe that these ablatives are expressions of time. They answer the questions *when?* *in* or *within what time?* This usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative of Time*. It may be translated by a phrase beginning with *in*, *at*, *within*, or *during*.

**219. Rule for the Ablative of Time.** *The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

#### EXERCISES

220. 1. Hieme venti in mari sunt gravēs. 2. Aestāte agri colae in agrīs labōrabant. 3. Prīmā lūce ad Caesarem venient. 4. Caesar bellum fortibus cum hostibus gessit. 5. Omnēs

prōvinciās paucis annis superāvit. 6. Quō tempore noctis in urbem vēnisti? 7. Secundā hōrā proelī decem explōrātōrēs capiunt. 8. Nūntius eō tempore lēgātō litterās dēmōnstrāvit.

✓ 221. 1. Welcome summer will come in a short time. 2. At the second hour of the night we heard these commands. 3. He found ten wounds on the body of the foot soldier. 4. At dawn Cæsar sent this cohort between the hill and the mountain. 5. They all fled from the province in the first year of the war. 6. Why did they not carry on war with the Romans in the winter?

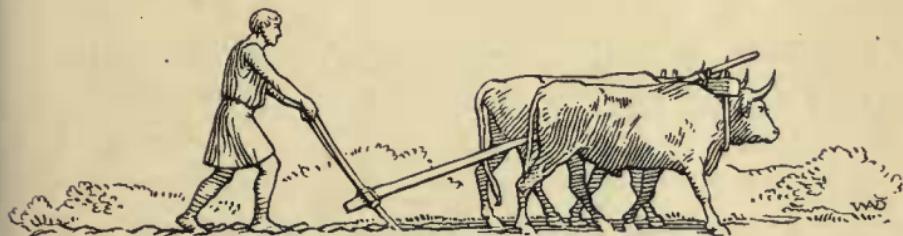
#### LACONIC SPEECHES<sup>1</sup>

222. 1. Amicus ōlim Spartānum rogāvit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs (*the very best*) habet, virtūtem incolārum fortium."

2. Rēx Spartānus ōlim dixit: "Mei cīvēs numquam rogāvērunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

3. Hostis ante pugnam Spartānō dixit: "Sōlem propter pīlōrum multitudinem et sagittārum nōn vidēbitis." "In umbrā igitur pugnābimus," respondit Spartānus.

<sup>1</sup> The meanings of words that are not given in the vocabularies of the lessons may be found in the general vocabulary.



AESTATE AGRICOLA IN AGRIS LABORAT

## LESSON XXXII

### THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

223. The Formation of the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Tenses. The pluperfect (xxxiii, b) and the future perfect (xxxiii, b) indicative active of *amō* are inflected as follows:

#### PLUPERFECT

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>amā'veram</i> , <i>I had loved</i>   | <i>amāverā'mus</i> , <i>we had loved</i>  |
| 2. <i>amā'verās</i> , <i>you had loved</i> | <i>amāverā'tis</i> , <i>you had loved</i> |
| 3. <i>amā'verat</i> , <i>he had loved</i>  | <i>amā'verant</i> , <i>they had loved</i> |

#### FUTURE PERFECT

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>amā'verō</i> , <i>I shall have loved</i>   | <i>amāve'rīmus</i> , <i>we shall have loved</i> |
| 2. <i>amā'veris</i> , <i>you will have loved</i> | <i>amāve'rītis</i> , <i>you will have loved</i> |
| 3. <i>amā'verit</i> , <i>he will have loved</i>  | <i>amā'verint</i> , <i>they will have loved</i> |

a. Observe that the pluperfect is formed by adding the imperfect of **sum** (108) to the perfect stem; and the future perfect by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem. One form, however, is not spelled as it is in the inflection of **sum**. Which form?

b. The tense sign of the pluperfect is *-erā-*; of the future perfect, *-eri-*.

c. What are the perfect stems of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**? Inflect the pluperfect and future perfect tenses of these verbs, and of the verbs in 203.

d. What auxiliary verbs (iv, f) are to be used in translating these tenses? What English tense is the same as the pluperfect?

e. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect use the perfect stem, and so belong to the perfect system of the verb. Make synopses (671) in this system of the model verbs.

## 224.

## VOCABULARY

civitās, civitātis, *f.*, state, clan  
 Labiēnus, -ī, *m.*, Labienus, a Roman officer  
 populus, -ī, *m.*, people (*populatōn*)

prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*, chief (*principal*)  
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman  
 tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon

## EXERCISES

225. 1. Ēmerint, gesseram, hiemāverātis. 2. Dēmōnstrāverant, audiveris, superāverāmus. 3. Tenuerō, complēveram, armāverās. 4. Habitāveris, vocāverat, mānserō. 5. Nārrāverātis, miserās, fūgerimus. 6. Exspectāveram, doluerō, cōnfirmanverit. 7. Sustinuerat, rēxeram, properāveris. 8. Labiēnus prīcipem virtūte laudāverat. 9. Fortis homō amicōs multōs et ācrīs habuerit. 10. Caesar bella nōn sōlum in Galliā sed etiam in Britanniā gesserat. 11. Quō tempore noctis arma cēperis? 12. Galli oppida magnā cum virtūte dēfenderant. 13. Populus Rōmānus cīvēs eius cīvitātis liberāverat.



A GALLIC CHIEFTAIN

226. 1. We shall have frightened, you (*sing.*) had come, you (*plur.*) will have dismissed. 2. He will have fought, he had captured, they had defended. 3. We had led, they will have wounded, he will have thrown. 4. You (*sing.*) will have built, we had found, they will have carried.

5. The Roman people had long held the Gauls in check. 6. The chiefs had called together all the clans. 7. Labienus will have found many weapons in that place. 8. The Gauls had waited for aid. 9. At last we had attacked that hill.

## LESSON XXXIII

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HIC* AND *ILLE* · PLACE FROM WHICH AND TO WHICH, IN NAMES OF TOWNS

227. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*. Review the declension of *is* (654), and learn the declension of *hic* and *ille* (654).

a. Decline *hic pīnceps*, *haec cīvitās*, *hoc tēlum*, *ille Gallus*, *illa nox*, and *illud tempus*.

228. The Distinction between *Is*, *Hic*, and *Ille*. *Is* is used indifferently for *this* or *that* without emphasis (148). *Hic* means *this*, and *ille* *that*, with a certain emphasis. *Hic* is applied to what is *near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Ille* is applied to what is *not near* the speaker in place, time, or thought. *Hic* and *ille*, like *is*, are used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns: as, *hoc dōnum meum*, *illud tuum est*, *this gift is mine*, *that is yours*. Demonstratives, when used as adjectives, regularly precede their nouns.

229. Place from Which and to Which, in Names of Towns. You have already learned that *place from which* is expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*) (178); and that *place to which* is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in* (180). If, however, the *place from which* or *to which* is the name of a town, the prepositions are omitted: as, *Rōmā vēnit*, *he came from Rome*; *Rōmam vēnit*, *he came to Rome*. *Domus*, *home*, also omits the preposition: *domum vēnit*, *he came home (homeward)*.

230. Complete Rules for Place from Which and to Which.  
a. *Place from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with *ā* (*ab*), *dē*, *ē* (*ex*); but with the names of towns, and with *domus*, the preposition is omitted.

b. Place to which is usually expressed by the accusative with ad or in; but with the names of towns, and with domus, the preposition is omitted.

## 231.

## VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Athēnae, -ārum, f. plur., Athens        | frāter, frātris, m., brother ( <i>fraternal</i> ) |
| Capua, -ae, f., Capua                   | hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. or adj., this          |
| Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage           | ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. or adj., that       |
| Corinthus, -ī, f., Corinth <sup>1</sup> |   |
| Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur., Delphi         |   |
| domum, acc., home, homeward             |   |
| domō, abl., from home                   |   |

## EXERCISES

232. 1. Dux illōs equitēs peditēsque Capuam misit. 2. Tandem ex Italiā Carthāginem propter commūne periculum properāvit. 3. Hī militēs Athēnīs vēnerant et in Galliā pugnābant. 4. Secundā illius noctis hōrā nūntium Corinthum misit. 5. Illi lēgātī praedam Rōmam portāverant. 6. Populus audāx in hāc insulā habitāverat. 7. Huic centuriōnī amīcus fueram. 8. Ex hīs finibus omnēs principēs Delphōs fūgerant, quod illō tempore hostēs bellum parābant.

233. 1. From Delphi they had come to Athens. 2. From home my brother hastened to Corinth. 3. Cæsar had sent messengers through those states. 4. In these years the Gauls had been friendly to the Roman people. 5. These enemies will have fought with Cæsar with great courage. 6. This is a javelin, that is a sword.

<sup>1</sup> Most names of towns are feminine.

## LESSON XXXIV

### READING LESSON

#### VICTORIA CAESARIS

**234.** In Galliā multae et fortēs civitātēs erant. Prīncipēs hārum civitātum potestātem imperiaque Rōmānōrum timuērunt. Multōs mīlītēs igitur convocāverant et inter montis et collis Rōmānōs exspectābant.

Prīmō annō belli populus Rōmānus Caesarem contrā Gallōs mīsit. Is dux, cum Labiēnō et peditib⁹ et paucis equitibus,



MILITES ROMANI

ex Italiā aestāte properāvit et sine periculō in finīs Gallōrum vēnit. Hīs in locīs explōrātōrēs Caesaris hostēs repperērunt.

Prīmā lūce mīlītēs Rōmānī Gallōs oppugnāvērunt. Ācre erat proelium. Gallī lapidibus et tēlīs gravibus locum dēfendēbant. Nostrī pīla iaciēbant et gladiīs hostīs sustinēbant. Tandem Gallī dēfessi ob inopiam tēlōrum et vulnera trāns flūmen fūgērunt.

Decem annīs Caesar multa bella in Galliā gessit et multōs captīvōs Rōmam mīsit.

## 235.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Britannī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> , the Britons | nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvīgātūs, sail ( <i>navigation</i> )                  |
| Cassivellaunus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Cassivellaunus | occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātūs, seize, take possession of ( <i>occupy</i> ) |
| obses, obsidis, <i>m.</i> , hostage            | vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātūs, lay waste ( <i>devastate</i> )                  |
| tamen, <i>adv.</i> , yet, but, nevertheless    |  |

## DE CAESARE ET BRITANNIS

236. Quod Britannī ad Gallōs auxilium saepe miserant, Caesar in īsulam Britanniam nāvigāvit. Territi (*although frightened*) magnō numerō nāvium et virōrum, Britannī fortēs magnā cum virtūte prō patriā pugnāvērunt. Tandem tamen ab litorē fūgērunt. Post hoc proelium Rōmānī agrōs hostium vāstāvērunt et oppida occupāvērunt et multam praedam cēpērunt. Cassivellaunus, pīnceps Britannōrum, lēgātōs ad Caesarem misit. Caesar obsidēs postulāvit. Cum hīs obsidibus et captivis multis ex Britanniā in Galliam vēnit. Propter hanc victōriam magna erat potestās Rōmānōrum in Britanniā.



IN BRITANNIAM CAESAR NAVIGAT

## LESSON XXXV

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

**237. The Passive Voice.** In the active voice the subject of the verb is *acting*; in the passive voice it is *acted on* (xxviii) : as

*The general praises the soldier* (active).

*The soldier is praised by the general* (passive).

**238. The Present Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.**  
The present indicative passive of **amō** is inflected as follows :

| SINGULAR   | PERS.<br>ENDINGS | PLURAL                              | PERS.<br>ENDINGS |
|--|------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. a'mor, <i>I am loved</i> ( <i>I am</i> -r<br><i>being loved</i> ) |                  | amā'mur, <i>we are loved</i> , -mur |                  |
| 2. amā'ris, <i>you are loved</i>                                     | -ris             | amā'minī, <i>you are loved</i>      | -minī            |
| 3. amā'tur, <i>he, she, it is loved</i>                              | -tur             | ama'n'tur, <i>they are loved</i>    | -ntur            |

a. Observe that these passive forms differ from the active only in the personal endings. The endings are added to the present stem **amā-** exactly as they were in the active voice.

**239. The Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive of the First Conjugation.** Compare the imperfect and the future active and passive of **amō** (658). Observe that the passive endings are added to the tense stems **amābā-** and **amābi-**, exactly as in the active voice, except in the second person singular of the future, where **-bi-** is changed to **-be-**. Learn these tenses of **moneō** (659).

### EXERCISES

**240.** 1. Amat, amātur. 2. Amābat, amābātūr. 3. Amābit, amābitur. 4. Amant, amantur. 5. Amābant, amābantur. 6. Amābuntne? amābunturne? 7. Amāmus, amāmur. 8. Moneō

moneor. 9. Monēbam, monēbar. 10. Monēbō, monēbor.  
11. Monēbitis, monēbiminī. 12. Monētis, monēmini.

**241.** 1. You praise, you are praised. 2. They were praising, they were being praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. I teach, I am taught. 5. We teach, we are taught. 6. We shall teach, we shall be taught. 7. They teach, they are taught.

### 242. The Ablative of Agent.

1. *Labiēnus mīlitem laudat, Labienus praises the soldier.*
2. *Miles ab Labiēnō laudātur, the soldier is being praised by Labienus.*

a. Observe the changes made in turning the active sentence into the passive: (1) the object in the active becomes the subject in the passive; (2) the subject of the active is expressed in the passive by the ablative with *ab*. This ablative is known as the *Ablative of Agent*.

b. The *agent* is the person doing something. The ablative of *agent* should not be confused with the ablative of *means* (22), which has no preposition: as, *miles lapide vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a stone*; *miles ā Gallō vulnerātur, the soldier is wounded by a Gaul*.

**243. Rule for the Ablative of Agent.** *The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with ā or ab.*

### EXERCISES

**244.** 1. Hic puer ā frātre meō laudābātur. 2. Haec praeda Rōmam ā Caesare portābitur. 3. Ā quō nōn amātur potestās? 4. Fābulae multae dē Britanniā ab iīs nūntiīs nārrābuntur. 5. Oppidum ab militibus oppugnātur. 6. In hāc pugnā decem hominēs ā Gallis vulnerantur. 7. Nāvibus frūmentum portābitur.

**245.** 1. All these Gauls will be held in check by those horsemen. 2. My brothers were praised by that boy. 3. Aid is being awaited by the enemy. 4. A few cohorts were seen by the chief. 5. Rome was loved by all the Romans.

## LESSON XXXVI

### THE RELATIVE *QUI*

**246. The Relative *Qui*.** The relative *qui*, *who*, *which*, *that*, is declined as follows :

|             | SINGULAR |       |       | PLURAL |        |        |
|-------------|----------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | qui      | quae  | quod  | qui    | quae   | quae   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cuius    | cuius | cuius | quōrum | quārum | quōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cui      | cui   | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quem     | quam  | quod  | quōs   | quās   | quae   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quō      | quā   | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

a. Compare the declension of the relative *qui* with that of the interrogative *qui* (154).

**247. Agreement of the Relative with its Antecedent.**

1. *Puellae quās laudāvimus bonae erant, the girls whom we praised were good.*
2. *Praemium quod ille homō portat laudātur, the reward which that man is bringing is praised.*
3. *Homō cuius gladium habeō est nauta, the man whose sword I have is a sailor.*

a. Observe that the relative (*ii, d*) in each sentence refers to a certain word. This word is called its *antecedent* (*ii, b*). Observe that the relative has the same gender and number as its antecedent, but that its case is different. Thus, in sentences 1 and 2 it is accusative because it is the object of *laudāvimus* or of *portat*; in sentence 3 it is genitive because it indicates the possessor of *gladium*.

b. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifies its noun.

**248. Rule for the Agreement of the Relative.** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause.

249.

## VOCABULARY

cōnsilium, cōnsi'li, *n.*, advice, plan (*counsel*)

frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain (*frustrate*)  
legiō, legiōnis, *f.*, legion (*legionary*)

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother (*matri-*  
*nal*)

mercātor, mercātōris, *m.*, trader,  
merchant (*merchandise*)

qui, quae, quod, rel. *pron.*, who,  
which, that, as

turris, turris (turri-), *f.*, tower  
(*turret*)

## EXERCISES

250. 1. Illa fēmina quam vidēs est māter Cornēliae. 2. Mer-  
cātōrēs multa in Germāniam portant. 3. Hostēs ācrēs, ā quibus  
nostra patria vāstātur, sunt Rō-  
māni. 4. Iī hominēs, quōrum  
virtūte et cōsiliis urbs tenē-  
batur, domum ē bellō venient.  
5. Turrēs, quae cum cūrā aedi-  
ficābantur, ab hostibus vāstā-  
buntur. 6. Obsidēs qui ā  
Rōmānīs liberantur Athēnās  
properābunt. 7. Dux legiōnis  
quam Caesar trāns flūmen mīsit  
erat Labiēnus.

251. 1. The weapons which  
we have brought are not good.  
2. This summer you will fight  
with Caesar, who is defending  
the province. 3. I shall praise  
the plan by which that town is  
being laid waste. 4. Caesar had  
ten legions in the wars which he carried on with the Gauls.  
5. The woman to whom I showed the way is the mother of  
this unhappy hostage.



MATER CUM PUERIS

## FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXIX-XXXVI

**252.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|           |         |          |          |          |
|-----------|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| ācer      | decem   | hōra     | nox      | quī      |
| aestās    | flūmen  | ille     | obses    | reperiō  |
| annus     | fortis  | labor    | occupō   | secundus |
| audāx     | frāter  | legiō    | omnis    | tamen    |
| audiō     | frūstrā | lūx      | oppugnō  | tēlum    |
| brevis    | gerō    | māter    | populus  | tempus   |
| cīvitās   | gravis  | mercātor | potestās | turris   |
| commūnis  | hic     | nāvigō   | pīmus    | vāstō    |
| cōnsilium | hiems   | nōbilis  | prīnceps | veniō    |

**253.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|         |                        |                           |
|---------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| legion  | this                   | find                      |
| come    | brother                | toil, hardship            |
| that    | who, which, that, as   | sail                      |
| ten     | all                    | advice, plan              |
| summer  | mother                 | in vain                   |
| hostage | second                 | short, brief              |
| time    | brave, strong          | trader                    |
| year    | hour                   | power                     |
| river   | night                  | chief                     |
| winter  | bold                   | tower                     |
| first   | manage, carry on, wage | yet, nevertheless         |
| common  | state, clan            | heavy                     |
| light   | noble, of high birth   | people                    |
| weapon  | attack                 | seize, take possession of |
| hear    | keen, eager, sharp     | lay waste                 |

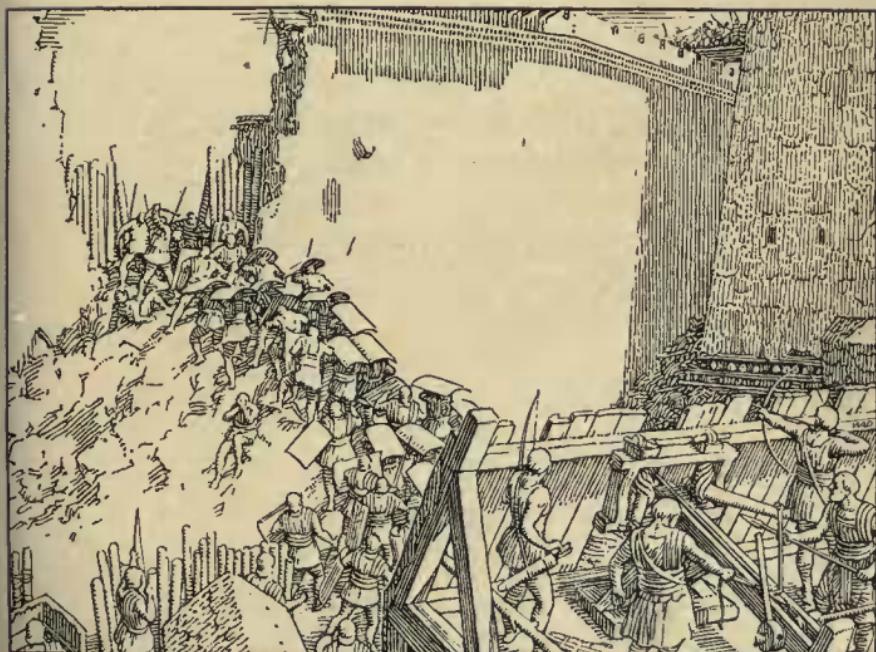
**254.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 252. Give the principal parts of each verb. Conjugate each verb of the fourth

conjugation throughout the indicative mood. Make synopses (671) of each verb in the third person singular and plural. Decline **hic**, **ille**, and **qui**.

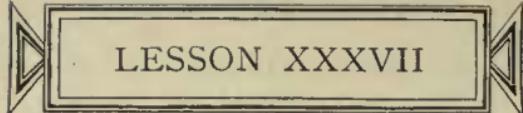
**255.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 252. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**256.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

1. Ablative of time
- 2: Place from which, in names of towns
3. Place to which, in names of towns
4. Ablative of agent
5. Agreement of the relative



HOSTES CONTRA ROMANOS OPPIDUM DEFENDUNT



## LESSON XXXVII

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *REGO* AND *CPIO*

**257.** The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Regō* and *Cpiō*. Review the present, imperfect, and future indicative active of *regō* and *cpiō*, and learn the passive of the same tenses (660, 661).

*a.* Observe that to form the passive you have only to substitute the passive personal endings for the active, except in one form. Which one is that, and what is the change?

*b.* Like *regō* inflect in both voices the same tenses of *dūcō*, *mittō*, and *gerō*; inflect *iaciō* and *recipiō* like *cpiō*.

#### EXERCISES

**258.** 1. Regit, regitur. 2. Regēbat, regēbātur. 3. Reget, regētur. 4. Regunt, reguntur. 5. Regent, regentur. 6. Regis, regeris. 7. Regēbās, regēbāris. 8. Regēs, regēris. 9. Regimus, regimur. 10. Regitis, regimini. 11. Regam, regar. 12. Capiunt, cōpiuntur. 13. Capiēbat, capiēbātur. 14. Capiet, capiētur. 15. Capient, capientur. 16. Capiēs, capiēris. 17. Capis, caperis. 18. Capiēbās, capiēbāris.

**259.** 1. He leads, he is led. 2. They will lead, they will be led. 3. They lead, they are led. 4. You lead, you are led. 5. We shall lead, we shall be led. 6. We send, we are sent. 7. Is he sent? are they sent? 8. He will send; he will be sent. 9. You are sent, you will be sent. 10. They were waging, I was waging. 11. We wage, we shall wage. 12. We throw, we are thrown. 13. We threw, we were being thrown. 14. Who receives? who was being received?

260.

## VOCABULARY

castra, -ōrum, n. plur., camp  
(*Lancaster*)

cōsul, cōsulis, m., consul (*con-*  
*sular*)

nōn iam, adv., no longer

pāx, pācis, f., peace (*pacify*)

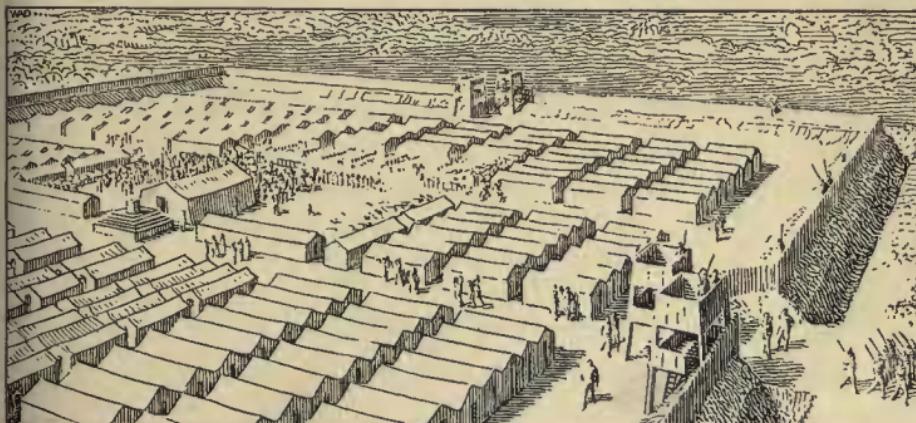
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptus,  
receive, welcome (*recipient*)

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, defeat,  
conquer (*invincible*)

## EXERCISES

261. 1. Lēgātī dē pāce in castra cōsulis vēnērunt. 2. Iam ad cōsulem dūcuntur hī lēgātī. 3. Bene ā cōsule recipientur. 4. Nōn iam urbs hostium dēfenditur. 5. Tēla quae dē mūris iaciēbantur multōs vulnerābant. 6. Militēs cōsulis nōn saepe ā Gallis vincuntur. 7. Pāx populō Rōmānō grāta erit.

262. 1. Labienus with only a few cohorts will be sent from Rome into Gaul. ✓ 2. Those towns of Gaul will be defended bravely. 3. The legion is being led out of the camp. 4. Many states of Gaul are being conquered to-day. 5. The new plans of our allies were being announced to the neighbors. 6. They will be received by Cæsar, who has conquered the Helvetians.



CASTRA ROMANA

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THE PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

**263. The Personal Pronouns.** The personal pronouns (ii, 2) are *ego*, *I*; *tū*, *you*; *is*, *he*; *ea*, *she*; *id*, *it*.

In reality there is no pronoun of the third person in Latin. The demonstrative *is* (148, 228) is so often used as a personal pronoun that it may be classed as the pronoun of the third person. Sometimes the demonstratives *hic* and *ille* are similarly used. Learn the declension of the personal pronouns (652).

**264. The Personal Pronouns as Subjects of Verbs.** The personal pronouns are expressed as subjects only for emphasis, especially the emphasis of contrast: as, *ego tē laudō*, *tū mē nōn laudās*, *I praise you, you do not praise me*.

**265. The Reflexive Pronouns.** A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of its clause (ii, h). Learn the declension of the reflexive pronouns (653).

**266. The Use of the Reflexive Pronouns.** The use of the reflexive pronouns is illustrated by the following sentences :

1. *Tū tē amās, you love yourself.*
2. *Omnēs hominēs sē amant, all men love themselves.*

a. Observe that *tē* and *sē* refer to the subjects of their sentences.

b. Remember that *is*, *he*; *ea*, *she*; and *id*, *it*, are used as personal pronouns, but not as reflexive pronouns; and that *sui* is always a reflexive pronoun, and not a personal pronoun.

**267. Relative Clauses referring to Personal Pronouns.**

*Tū, qui venis, es amīcus meus, you, who are coming, are my friend.*

a. Observe that the verb of the relative clause is in the same person as the antecedent.

## 268.

## VOCABULARY

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily  
 ego, *pers. pron.*, I (*egotistic*)  
 interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, in-  
 terfectus, kill  
 is, ea, id, *pers. pron.*, he, she, it  
 reliquus, -a, -um, rest of, remain-  
 ing (*relic*)

reliquī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the rest  
 suī, *reflex. pron.*, of himself, her-  
 self, itself, themselves  
 tempestās, tempestātis, *f.*, weather,  
 storm (*tempest*)  
 tū, *pers. pron.*, you

## EXERCISES

✓ 269. 1. Scūtum eius erat grave. 2. Amicī eōrum fuerant  
 militēs. 3. Studium eārum laudātur. 4. Vōbiscum<sup>1</sup> propter  
 tempestātem manēbō. 5. Contrā eōs bellum geritur. 6. Estne  
 Mārcus tēcum? 7. Cum eā ambulābat. 8. Sine vōbis Athēnās  
 properābunt. 9. Nōs sumus miserī, vōs aegrī et dēfessī estis.  
 10. Omnia vestra cōnsilia nōbīs sunt grāta. 11. Pater et māter  
 eius ab vōbis bene recipiēbantur. 12. Reliquī prīncipēs, quī  
 sē armābant, ad conloquium nōn vēnērunt. 13. Itaque ad sē  
 centuriōnem vocat et eī cōnsilium nārrat. 14. Cotidiē Caesar  
 peditēs ē castrīs dūcēbat.

270. 1. His mother and my father saw you. 2. They are  
 now with me. 3. To him, to her, to them I shall give rewards.  
 4. Their camp is being attacked. 5. I shall hurry into town  
 with you. 6. We shall free ourselves with severe hardship.  
 7. She has wounded herself with her father's sword. 8. The  
 rest will kill themselves. 9. Their towns are being laid waste  
 by the Gauls this summer.

<sup>1</sup> The preposition *cum* is appended to the ablative of personal and reflexive  
 pronouns in the manner of an enclitic (22); so usually to relative and inter-  
 rogative pronouns.

## LESSON XXXIX

### THE PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

271. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative Passive of *Audiō*. Review the active voice of *audiō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and learn the passive of the same tenses (662)

a. Like *audiō* inflect *impediō*, *hinder*, and *reperiō*, *find*, in the present, imperfect, and future tenses.

#### EXERCISES

272. 1. Audit, auditur. 2. Audiēbat, audiēbātur. 3. Audiet, audiētur. 4. Audīmus, audīmur. 5. Audiēmus, audiēmūr. 6. Audiam, audiar. 7. Audītis, audīminī. 8. Audiētis, audiēminī. 9. Audīs, audīris. 10. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 11. Audiunt, audiuntur. 12. Audiēbant, audiēbantur.

273. 1. I hinder, I am hindered. 2. I was hindering, I was being hindered. 3. I shall hinder, I shall be hindered. 4. They hinder, they are hindered. 5. They will hinder, they will be hindered. 6. He finds, he is found. 7. He found, he was found. 8. He will find, he will be found.

#### 274.

#### VOCABULARY

*aedificium*, *aedifi'ci*, *n.*, building  
(*edifice*)

*Coriolānus*, *-i*, *m.*, Coriolanus

*maximē*, *adv.*, greatly, very much  
(*maximum*)

*statim*, *adv.*, at once

*Veturia*, *-ae*, *f.*, Veturia

*Volsci*, *-ōrum*, *m.*, Volscians

*dicō*, *dicere*, *dixī*, *dictus*, say (*dic-tion*)

*impediō*, *impedīre*, *impedīvī*, *impedītus*, hinder (*impede*)

*incitō*, *incitāre*, *incitāvī*, *incitātus*, arouse, impel (*incite*)

*praebēō*, *praebēre*, *praebūi*, *praebūtus*, cause, furnish, show

## EXERCISES

## VETURIA, MATER CORIOLANI

275. Urbī Rōmae ūlim magnum periculum ā Volscīs, qui erant populi Rōmānī hostēs audācēs, praebebātur. Volsci ā Coriolānō, Rōmānō, incitābantur et dūcēbantur. Iam aedificia multa in agrīs ab hostibus vāstābantur. Civēs sē armābant. Urbs cibō complēbatur ā cōnsule. Frūstrā hostēs impediēbantur. Tum periculō magnō Rōmānī mātrem Coriolānī dē pāce ad eum mīserunt, quod ea ab filiō maximē amābatur. Veturia, māter Coriolānī, in castra ad filium vēnit. In castris eum repperit. Coriolānus eam vīdit et dīxit, "Mea patria mē et sociōs meōs vīcit." Statim ab urbe fūgit cum hostibus.

## 276.

## VOCABULARY

autem, *postpositive<sup>1</sup> conj.*, but, however, besides

enīm, *postpositive conj.*, for

perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī,

perturbātus, disturb, throw into confusion (*perturbation*)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put, place (*postpone*)

## DE PERSEO

277. Dē Perseō multae fābulae nārrantur ā poētīs. Perseus filius fuit Iovis (642), rēgis deōrum. Avus eius Ācrisius fuit. Ille Perseum interficere volēbat<sup>2</sup>; nam propter imperia deōrum puerum timēbat. Cēpit igitūr eum adhūc infantem, et cum mātre in arcā posuit. Tum in mare arcām iēcit. Danaē, Persei māter, maximē timēbat, tempestās enim magna mare perturbābat. Perseus autem in sinū (*in the arms*) mātris dormiēbat.

<sup>1</sup> Never the first word in the sentence or clause.

<sup>2</sup> *interficere volēbat*, wished to kill. The infinitive used in this way is called a complementary infinitive (394).

## LESSON XL

### THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

**278. The Possessive Adjectives.** The possessive adjectives are as follows :

|   |  |
|---|--|
| meus, -a, -um, <i>my</i>  | tuus, -a, -um, <i>your</i> (sing.)       |
| noster, -tra, -trum, <i>our</i>   | vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your</i> (plur.) |
| suus, -a, -um, <i>his, her, its, their</i> ( <i>own</i> ), used reflexively |  |

a. To show possession the possessive adjectives are used instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, and *sui*. They may also be used as possessive pronouns : as, *mea*, *mine*; *nostrī*, *our men*.

**279. The Distinction between *Suus* and the Possessive Genitive of *Is*.**

1. Miles scūtum eius habet, *the soldier has his shield* (i. e. somebody else's shield).
2. Miles suum scūtum habet, *the soldier has his own shield*.

a. *Eius* (sentence 1) does not refer to the subject; *suum* (sentence 2) does refer to the subject. *Suus* is always reflexive, but the genitives of *is*, *ea*, *id* are never reflexive.

**280. When Possessive Adjectives are used in Latin.** When the meaning is clear, a possessive adjective is omitted unless emphatic : as,

1. Caesar militēs in castra redūxit, *Cæsar led his soldiers back into camp*.
2. Caesar suōs militēs in castra redūxit, *Cæsar led his (own) soldiers back into camp* (but the others he left outside).

**281. The Ablative of Separation.**

1. Hic homō cibō caret, *this man lacks* (is separated from) *food*.
2. Germānī Rōmānōs ā finibus suis prohibēbant, *the Germans were keeping the Romans away from their lands*.

a. Observe that the ablative is here used to denote that from which there is freedom, removal, or separation, or that which is lacking. The ablative so used answers the questions *from what?* *of what?* and is called the *Ablative of Separation*. It is of the same nature as the ablative of *place whence*.

**282. Rule for the Ablative of Separation.** Words signifying privation, removal, or separation are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions *ā* (ab), *dē*, *ē* (ex).

### 283.

### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| posteā, <i>adv.</i> , afterwards   | interclūsus, cut off, shut off<br>(conclude)  |
| suūs, -a, -um, his (own), her (own),<br>its (own), their (own)                   | privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus,<br>keep from, deprive of ( <i>priv-<br/>ation</i> )            |
| careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, lack,<br>want ( <i>caret</i> )                  | prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibui, pro-<br>hibit, keep away (from), re-<br>strain ( <i>prohibit</i> ) |
| dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitū-<br>rus, leave off, cease ( <i>desist</i> ) |   |
| interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsi,  |   |

### EXERCISES

- 284.** 1. Caesar autem suōs militēs trāns flūmen mīsit.  
 2. Caesar eius frātrem in castrīs reperiet. 3. Ille vir aeger  
 aquā privābātur. 4. Posteā ea civitās cibō et frūmentō carēbat.  
 5. Ab aedificiis et pecūniā huius populī militēs diū prohibuit.  
 6. Ob inopiam armōrum proeliō Germānī dēstītērunt. 7. Nostri,  
 quī in castra Germānōrum properāverant, eōs tēlis privāvē-  
 runt. 8. Flūmen nostrōs viā interclūdēbat. 9. Apud flūmen  
 nāvigia ab hostibus eō tempore aedificābantur.

- 285.** 1. Our friends lacked money. 2. The enemy will de-  
 fend their own buildings. 3. You will free us from care.  
 4. Cæsar announced to his (men) his plans concerning peace.  
 5. They will afterwards deprive the Germans of all power.  
 6. The rest of the chiefs were being shut off from their towns,

## LESSON XLI

### THE PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF ALL CONJUGATIONS

#### 286. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect of All Conjugations.

a. Review the principal parts of **amō**, and notice especially the perfect passive participle. Examine the formation of the perfect indicative passive (658). Observe that it is formed by using the present tense of **sum** with the perfect passive participle **amātus**. Those tenses which are formed with the help of the perfect passive participle belong to the participial system of the verb (671).

b. Examine the pluperfect and the future perfect indicative passive. Observe that they are formed by using the imperfect and the future of **sum** with the perfect passive participle.

c. The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative passive of all verbs are formed in the same way.

d. The participle **amātus** is declined like **bonus**; and so in the nominative singular and plural it is changed to agree with the subject of the verb in number and gender. These changes are made because a participle is an adjective in its nature. Observe these changes as illustrated in 287.

e. Recall the principal parts of **moneō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō**, and inflect the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive of these verbs and of those in 252.

#### EXERCISES

287. 1. **Vir amātus est, fēmina amāta est, bellum amātum est.** 2. **Virī amātī sunt, fēminae amātæ sunt, bella amāta sunt.** 3. **Militēs monitī erant, puer monitus erit, oppidum monitum erat.** 4. **Agricola captus est, urbs rēcta est, prōvincia rēcta erat.** 5. **Captus sum, captus eram, captus erō.** 6. **Auditus es, auditū erās, auditus eris.** 7. **Auditī sumus, auditī erāmus, auditī erimus.**

288. 1. The Gaul was warned, had been warned, will have been warned. 2. The buildings have been taken, had been taken, will have been taken. 3. The territories had been ruled by the Germans. 4. The cities will have been defended. 5. And so we (*fem.*) shall have been heard.

## 289.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| concilium, conci'li, <i>n.</i> , meeting<br>(council)                            | imperātor, imperātōris, <i>m.</i> , general, commander (emperor) |
| ibi, <i>adv.</i> , there   | mora, -ae, <i>f.</i> , delay (moratorium)                        |
| impedimentum, -i, <i>n.</i> , hindrance;<br>plur., baggage ( <i>impediment</i> ) | verbum, -i, <i>n.</i> , word (verbal)                            |

## EXERCISES

290. 1. Multa in Italiā oppida ā Rōmānīs aedificāta sunt. 2. Pauci Germānī ibi tēlis nostrōrum interfectī sunt. 3. Tua verba ā mē audita erunt. 4. Eō tempore imperātor ab impedimentis carrisque interclūsus erat. 5. Bellum, quod ā Caesare gestum est, longum fuit. 6. Militēs, quī ab eō in Galliam missi sunt, frūmentō caruērunt. 7. Praeda, quae ab imperātōre nostrō capta erat, sine morā Rōmam portāta est. 8. In conciliō suis Caesar dixit, "Cōnsilia mea ab hostibus nōn impedita sunt."

## IUPPITER PERSEUM SERVAT (CONTINUED FROM 277)

291. Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit (*determined to save*). Tranquillum igitur fēcit mare, et arcā ad īsulam Seriphum dūxit. Huius īsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat.<sup>1</sup> Postquam<sup>1</sup> arca ad litus ducta est, Danaē in harēnā dormiēbat. Post breve tempus ā virō reperta est, et ad rēgem adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum bene recēpit, et eis sēdem tūtam in finibus suīs praebuit.

<sup>1</sup> Postquam introduces a subordinate clause of time (xx, e).

## LESSON XLII

### THE FOURTH DECLENSION

**292. The Fourth Declension.** Nouns of the fourth declension end in the nominative singular in **-us** or **-ū**. Those ending in **-us** are masculine, with a few exceptions; those ending in **-ū** are neuter. These nouns are inflected as follows:

|             | exercitus, m.<br>army | cornū, n.<br>horn, wing | CASE ENDINGS  |       |
|-------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-------|
|             | SINGULAR              |                         | MASC.         | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | exer'citus            | cor'nū                  | -us           | -ū    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | exer'citūs            | cor'nūs                 | -ūs           | -ūs   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | exerci'tuī (-ū)       | cor'nū                  | -ui (-ū)      | -ū    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | exer'citum            | cor'nū                  | -um           | -ū    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | exer'citū             | cor'nū                  | -ū            | -ū    |
| PLURAL      |                       |                         |               |       |
| <i>Nom.</i> | exer'citūs            | cor'nua                 | -ūs           | -ua   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | exerci'tuum           | cor'nuum                | -uum          | -uum  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | exerci'tibus          | cor'nibus               | -ibus (-ubus) | -ibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | exer'citūs            | cor'nua                 | -ūs           | -ua   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | exerci'tibus          | cor'nibus               | -ibus (-ubus) | -ibus |

*a.* A few nouns of this declension may have the dative and the ablative plural in **-ubus**; such nouns in this book are **lacus**, *lake*, and **portus**, *harbor*.

*b.* **Domus**, *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the only feminine nouns of this declension used in this book; and **cornū** is the only neuter so used. Learn the declension of **domus**, which has forms of the second declension as well as those of the fourth (642).

*c.* Decline **exercitus magnus**, **mea manus**, and **cornū longum**.

## 293.

## VOCABULARY

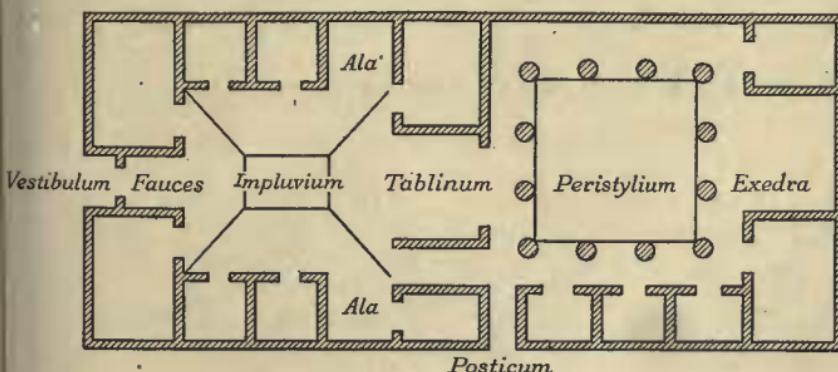
adventus, -ūs, *m.*, coming (*advent*)  
 commeātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies  
 cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (of an army) (*cornucopia*)  
 domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home (*dwelling*)  
 exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, army (*exercise*)

lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake (*lake*)  
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, handful, band (of men) (*manufacture*)  
 palūs, palūdis, *f.*, marsh, swamp  
 portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor (*port*)  
 mūniō, mūnire, mūnīvī, mūnitus, fortify (*munitions*)

## EXERCISES

✓ 294. 1. Adventus legiōnum nōs dēlectat. 2. Noster exercitus tamen Germānōs commeātibus interclūsi. 3. Inter nostrōs et hostis erat lacus. 4. Cōnsulēs erant exercituum Rōmānōrum imperātōrēs. 5. In cornibus diū et fortiter pugnāverant. 6. Castra Labiēnī palūde et lacū mūniēbantur. 7. Graeciae in portubus nāvēs multās hieme vīdimus. 8. Manūs hostium spectāvimus.

✓ 295. 1. They fight both with feet and with horns. 2. Many lakes are seen by them among the mountains. 3. We had been delighted by the coming of the traders. 4. This house is mine, that is yours. 5. However, at daybreak they carried the supplies from the camp to the harbor. 6. Rome was at once fortified by the hands of the citizens. 7. Why are you hurrying home?



PLAN OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON XLIII

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

**296.** Degrees of Comparison. Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative. But in Latin, as in English, there are certain adjectives which are not compared.

#### POSITIVE

*lātus, -a, -um, wide* (BASE *lāt-*)

*brevis, -e, short* (BASE *brev-*)

*audāx, bold* (BASE *audāc-*)

#### COMPARATIVE

*lātiōr, lātiōs, wider*

*breviōr, breviōs, shorter*

*audāciōr, audāciōs, bolder*

#### SUPERLATIVE

*lātiōssiōs, -a, -um, widest*

*breviōssiōs, -a, -um, shortest*

*audāciōssiōs, -a, -um, boldest*

a. Observe that the comparative is formed by adding to the base of the positive the endings *-iōr* for the masculine and the feminine, and *-iōs* for the neuter; the superlative by adding to the base of the positive *-iōssiōs*, *-iōssiōs*, *-iōssiōs*.

b. Compare *cārus*, *grātus*, *longus*, *fortis*, and *gravis*.

c. The comparative may be translated *wider*, *more wide*, *rather wide*, *too wide*; the superlative *widest*, *most wide*, *very wide*.

**297.** The Declension of the Comparative. The comparative is declined as follows:

#### SINGULAR

##### M. AND F.

*Nom.* *lātiōr*

*Gen.* *lātiō'ris*

*Dat.* *lātiō'rī*

*Acc.* *lātiō'rem*

*Abl.* *lātiō're*

##### N.

*lātiōs*

*lātiō'ris*

*lātiō'rī*

*lātiōs*

*lātiō're*

#### PLURAL

##### M. AND F.

##### N.

*lātiō'rēs*

*lātiō'ra*

*lātiō'rum*

*lātiō'rum*

*lātiō'ribus*

*lātiō'ribus*

*lātiō'rēs (-is)*

*lātiō'ra*

*lātiō'ribus*

*lātiō'ribus*

- a. The superlative is declined like **bonus** (643).  
 b. Decline the positive, the comparative, and the superlative of the adjectives in 296, b.

## 298.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| amicitia, -ae, f., friendship                                      | senātus, -ūs, m., senate ( <i>senator</i> )                          |
| equitātus, -ūs, m., cavalry  | faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, make ;                                  |
| impetus, -ūs, m., attack ( <i>impetuous</i> )                      | impetum facere, to make an attack; iter facere, to march, travel     |
| iter, itineris, n., way, march, journey (642) ( <i>itinerary</i> ) | peto, petere, petivī (petii), petitus, seek, ask ( <i>petition</i> ) |

## EXERCISES

✓ 299. 1. Quod iter brevius est? 2. Quod iter brevissimum est? 3. Equitātus autem iter per vīcōs propinquōs fēcerat. 4. Germānī dē senātū Rōmānō pācem petivērunt. 5. Amicitia sociōrum populō Rōmānō grātissima erit. 6. Noster exercitus impetum in (*against, upon*) hostēs faciet. 7. Hoc flūmen est lātum, sed mare lātius ést. 8. Galli in bellō certē fortissimī erant. 9. Ubi cīvis fortiōrēs vīdistī?

✓ 300. 1. Your house is very new. 2. The general sent the cavalry by a longer way. 3. The summer in Britain is not very short. 4. This javelin is too heavy. 5. Peace, however, will be sought by all the clans of Gaul. 6. They are making an attack against the turret with little zeal. 7. The army was marching through the woods and swamps.



ROMAN SHOES

## SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XXXVII-XLIII

301. Give the English meanings of the following words:

|            |              |          |           |
|------------|--------------|----------|-----------|
| adventus   | ego          | iter     | praebeō   |
| aedificium | enim         | lacus    | priūō     |
| amicitia   | equitātus    | manus    | prohibeō  |
| autem      | exercitus    | maximē   | recipiō   |
| careō      | faciō        | mora     | reliquī   |
| castra     | ibi          | mūniō    | reliquus  |
| commeātus  | impedimentum | nōn iam  | senātus   |
| concilium  | impediō      | palūs    | statim    |
| cōsul-     | imperātor    | pāx      | sui       |
| cornū      | impetus      | perturbō | suus      |
| cotidiē    | incitō       | petō     | tempestās |
| dēsistō    | interclūdō   | pōnō     | tū        |
| dīcō       | interficiō   | portus   | verbum    |
| domus      | is           | posteā   | vincō     |

302. Give the Latin meanings of the following words:

|                   |            |                                 |
|-------------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| daily             | horn, wing | but, however, besides           |
| senate            | put, place | cause, furnish, show            |
| say               | I          | seek, ask                       |
| army              | camp       | greatly, very much              |
| lack, want        | lake       | keep from, deprive of           |
| no longer         | kill       | he, she, it, they               |
| for               | hinder     | disturb, throw into confusion   |
| peace             | make       | leave off, cease                |
| hand, band        | meeting    | harbor                          |
| cut off, shut off | delay      | his (own), her (own), its (own) |
| you               | the rest   | rest of, remaining              |
| at once           | fortify    | arouse, impel                   |
| house, home       | afterwards | keep away, restrain             |

|                  |            |                              |
|------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| marsh, swamp     | word       | cavalry                      |
| weather, storm   | consul     | hindrance, baggage           |
| receive, welcome | coming     | general, commander           |
| supplies         | building   | way, march, journey          |
| there            | attack     | of himself, of herself, etc. |
| defeat, conquer  | friendship |                              |

303. Decline each noun in 301. Give the principal parts of each verb. Inflect those tenses of *dīcō*, *impediō*, *pōnō*, and *privō* which are formed from the present stem. Make synopses of each verb in 301 in the third person singular and plural. Decline *ego*, *is*, and *tū*.

304. Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 301. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

305. Give the rule, if there is one, for each of the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. A personal pronoun of each person as the object of a verb
2. A personal pronoun of each person as the subject of a verb
3. A reflexive pronoun of the third person as the object of a verb
4. Ablative of separation



MILITES CASTRA MUNIUNT

## LESSON XLIV

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -ER OR -LIS THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

**306.** **The Comparison of Adjectives in -er.** Adjectives ending in -er are compared as follows :

|  |                    |                     |
|--|--------------------|---------------------|
| miser, misera, mise-<br>rum, <i>wretched</i> | miserior, miserius | miserrimus, -a, -um |
| ācer, ācris, ācre, <i>keen</i>               | ācrior, ācrius     | ācerrimus, -a, -um  |

a. Observe that the comparative of these adjectives is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding -rimus, -rima, -rimum to the nominative masculine of the positive. Compare similarly aeger.

**307.** **The Comparison of Adjectives in -lis.** The comparative of the following adjectives ending in -lis is regular ; but the superlative is formed by adding -limus, -lima, -limum to the base of the positive. Learn their meaning and comparison.

|                               |                   |                        |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| facilis, -e, <i>easy</i>      | facilius, -ius    | facillimus, -a, -um    |
| difficilis, -e, <i>hard</i>   | difficilius, -ius | difficillimus, -a, -um |
| similis, -e, <i>like</i>      | similius, -ius    | simillimus, -a, -um    |
| dissimilis, -e, <i>unlike</i> | dissimilius, -ius | dissimillimus, -a, -um |

Most other adjectives in -lis are compared regularly : as, nōbilis, nōbiliar, nōbilissimus.

### **308. The Partitive Genitive.**

1. *Ille amīcus cōpiam pecūniae habet, that friend has plenty of money.*
2. *Multī militum vulnerātī sunt, many of the soldiers were wounded.*

a. Observe that each genitive denotes a whole, and the word on which it depends denotes a part of that whole. Such a genitive, of which a part is taken, is called a *Partitive Genitive*.

**309. Rule for the Partitive Genitive.** Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken.

a. Numerals and a few other words have the ablative with *ē* (*ex*) or *dē* instead of the partitive genitive: as, *decem ex militibus*, *ten of the soldiers*.

### 310.

### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| angustus, -a, -um, narrow ( <i>anguish</i> )                             | litus, litoris, <i>n.</i> , shore ( <i>littoral</i> )                 |
| celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick ( <i>celerity</i> )                     | pars, partis ( <i>parti-</i> ), <i>f.</i> , part ( <i>partition</i> ) |
| cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , plenty, supply; plur., troops ( <i>copious</i> ) | quīnque, <i>adj.</i> , <i>indecl.</i> , five ( <i>quinquennial</i> )  |

### EXERCISES

✓ 311. 1. Magna pars itineris est angusta sed facillima. 2. Prīmā lūce partem hostium in monte vīdimus. 3. Illa omnium urbis viārum brevissima fuit. 4. Hominēs Britanniae hominibus Italiae dissimillimī sunt. 5. Statim decem ex militibus proeliō dēsistunt. 6. In litore fēminaē dolēbant quod iter erat difficile. 7. Omnium Gallōrum ācerrimī atque celerrimī erant hostēs. 8. Difficillima saepe facillima sunt. 9. Cum cīvitātibus proximīs amīcitiam cōfirmābunt.

✓ 312. 1. Have we plenty of arms? 2. The march through the mountains will not be easy. 3. Five of my friends will be sent by me by an easier way to the shore. 4. Part of the soldiers were cut off from the rest of the army. 5. Your hand is like mine. 6. This is the easiest of all the ways through the territories of the Gauls.

## LESSON XLV

### READING LESSON

**313.**

#### VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, <i>m.</i> , young man ( <i>adolescent</i> )   | expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvi<br>expugnātus, take by storm            |
| vīta, -ae, <i>f.</i> , life ( <i>vital</i> )                            | iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus<br>capture                            |
| appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus, call, name ( <i>appeal</i> ) | iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātūrus<br>swear, take oath ( <i>abjure</i> ) |

### SCIPIO ET HANNIBAL

**314.** Scipiō et Hannibal erant clārissimī imperātōrēs. Ille (*the former*) erat Rōmānus, qui victōriās magnās reportāvit hic (*the latter*) Poenus, qui Rōmānōs multis pugnīs vicit. Hannibal puer<sup>1</sup> ad ārās ā patre adductus est. Ibi odium iūrāvit in Rōmānōs. Adulēscēns oppida multa in Hispāniā expugnāvit, tum Alpis montis superāvit<sup>3</sup> Rōmānōsque saepe vīcit in Italiā. Scipiō ad<sup>4</sup> Ticinum flūmen vītam patris virtūte servāvit posteāque ad<sup>4</sup> Cannās contrā Hannibalem sē fortē praebuit. Belum in Āfricam trānsportātum est ibique Scipiō Hannibalem ad<sup>4</sup> Zamam superāvit. Ā Rōmānīs appellātus est Āfricānus.

**315.**

#### VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| nātūra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , nature, character (natural)         | discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessūrūs, withdraw                    |
| omnīnō, <i>adv.</i> , wholly, altogether, entirely           | perveniō, pervenire, pervenī, per-ventūrus, come through, reach arrive |
| prīmū, <i>adv.</i> , first, at first                         | quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quae-sītus, seek, ask ( <i>inquire</i> )   |
| acciō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus, receive ( <i>accept</i> ) |  |

<sup>1</sup> puer, when a boy.

<sup>2</sup> in, against.

<sup>3</sup> superāvit, passed over.

<sup>4</sup> ad, near

## PERSEUS MEDUSAM QUAERIT (CONTINUED FROM 291)

**316.** Perseus adulēscēns ex īsulā Seriphō discessit, et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā eam quaerēbat, nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Mercurius et Minerva ei viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Prīnum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Hārum auxiliō tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Mercurius et Minerva ei falcem et speculum dedērunt. Tum, postquam tālāria pedibus induit,<sup>1</sup> in āera<sup>2</sup> ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum reliquis Gorgonibus incolēbat. Gorgones mōnstra erant quārum capita anguibus omnīnō contēcta<sup>3</sup> erant. Manūs autem ex aere<sup>4</sup> erant factae.

<sup>1</sup> pedibus induit, put on his feet.    <sup>2</sup> āera, acc. of āer.    <sup>3</sup> contēcta, from contegō.    <sup>4</sup> aere, from aes.



SCIPIO AND HANNIBAL

## LESSON XLVI

### IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES · THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

**317. Adjectives Compared Irregularly.** Both the comparative and the superlative of several common adjectives are irregular. Commit to memory the following:

|  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| bonus, -a, -um, <i>good</i>                      | melior, melius, <i>better</i>                 | optimus, -a, -um, <i>best</i>                       |
| magnus, -a, -um, <i>large</i>                    | maior, maius, <i>larger</i>                   | maximus, -a, -um, <i>largest</i>                    |
| malus, -a, -um, <i>bad</i>                       | peior, peius, <i>worse</i>                    | pessimus, -a, -um, <i>worst</i>                     |
| multus, -a, -um, <i>much</i>                     | —, plūs, <i>more</i>                          | plūrimus, -a, -um, <i>most</i>                      |
| multi, -ae, -a, <i>many</i>                      | plūrēs, plūra, <i>more</i>                    | plūrimī, -ae, -a, <i>most</i>                       |
| parvus, -a, -um, <i>little</i> ,<br><i>small</i> | minor, minus, <i>less</i> ,<br><i>smaller</i> | minimus, -a, -um, <i>least</i> ,<br><i>smallest</i> |

**318. The Declension of *Plūs*.** In the singular *plūs, more*, is used only as a neuter noun. Learn the declension of *plūs* (648).

**319. Other Adjectives Compared Irregularly.** There are other adjectives that are compared irregularly, some of which have no positive, but form their comparative and superlative from prepositions or adverbs, and others of which have two forms in the superlative. See 649. These should be learned as they occur in the vocabularies.

#### 320. The Ablative of Degree of Difference.

1. *Pater pede altior est quam filius, the father is a foot taller than his son.*
2. *Pax multō grātior erit quam bellum, peace will be much more welcome than war.*

a. Observe that the ablatives *pede* and *multō* answer the question (*by*) *how much?* They denote the *degree of difference* between the objects compared. This usage is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

**321.** *Rule for the Ablative of Degree of Difference.* *The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative.*

**322.****VOCABULARY**

centum, *adj., indecl.*, a hundred  
(century)

inferus, -a, -um, low, below (649)  
(inferior)

interdum, *adv.*, sometimes

malus, -a, -um, bad (*malice*)

opera, -ae, *f.*, work, activity (*opera*)

quam, *conj.*, than

sex, *adj., indecl.*, six (*sextant*)

superus, -a, -um, high, above (649)  
(superior)

**EXERCISES**

**323.** 1. In inferiōrem partem prōvinciae sex legiōnēs ā Cae-sare dūcuntur. 2. Viae urbis nostrae pedibus multīs angustiōrēs sunt. 3. Maximae manūs hostium convocātae erant et Rōmānōs itinere prohibēbant. 4. Dē locīs superiōribus plūrima tēla iēcē-runt. 5. Illa turris decēm pedibūs altior quam mūrus est. 6. Minōra castra ā centum militibūs dēfendēbantur. 7. Tua opera pars est maior quam mea. 8. Interdum amīcī nōbīs cōnsilium malum dant. 9. Summum montem<sup>1</sup> videō. 10. Italiae pars īferior propter multās Graecōrum urbēs Magna Graecia appellābātur; superior pars Itāliae, quod ibi Gallī incolēbant, Gallia Cisalpīna vel (*or*) Gallia Citerior appellābātur.

✓ **324.** 1. The best men sometimes do not have the most friends. 2. On the journey a great many men were killed; the rest fled into a very large forest. 3. Cornelia was a foot taller than Julia. 4. The Gauls had more horsemen than the Romans. 5. Part of the army was waiting in higher places. 6. A better plan was shown to the senate. 7. The largest towns sent a hundred hostages to Cæsar.

<sup>1</sup> summum montem, top of the mountain.

## LESSON XLVII.

### THE FORMATION AND THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

**325. The Formation of Adverbs.** Many adverbs are formed from adjectives. From adjectives of the first and second declensions adverbs are formed by the addition of *-ē* to the base of the positive; from adjectives of the third declension they may be formed by the addition of *-iter* to the base: as, *cārē*, *dearly*, from *cārus*, *dear*; *miserē*, *wretchedly*, from *miser*, *wretched*; *āriter*, *eagerly*, from *ācer*, *eager*; but most adjectives of one ending add *-ter* to the base: as, *audācter*, from *audāx*.

*a.* Form adverbs from *grātus*, *lātus*, *longus*, *liber*, *aeger*, *brevis*, *fortis*, *gravis*.

**326. The Irregular Formation of Adverbs.** Some adverbs are the accusative or ablative singular neuter of the adjective: as, *multum*, *much*, from *multus*; *multō*, *much*, from *multus*; *facile*, *easily*, from *facilis*.

### **327. The Comparison of Adverbs.**

| POSITIVE      | COMPARATIVE     | SUPERLATIVE      |
|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>cārē</i>   | <i>cārius</i>   | <i>cārissimē</i> |
| <i>miserē</i> | <i>miserius</i> | <i>miserrimē</i> |
| <i>āriter</i> | <i>ārius</i>    | <i>āerrimē</i>   |
| <i>facile</i> | <i>facilius</i> | <i>facillimē</i> |
| <i>bene</i>   | <i>melius</i>   | <i>optimē</i>    |
| <i>male</i>   | <i>peius</i>    | <i>pessimē</i>   |
| <i>multum</i> | <i>plūsus</i>   | <i>plūrimum</i>  |

*a.* Observe that the comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular comparative of the adjective; and that the superlative, with one exception, is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing final *-us* to *-ē*.

## 328.

## VOCABULARY

amplus, -a, -um, large, spacious  
(ample)

arbor, arboris, f., tree (arboreal)

diligenter, adv., diligently (diligent)

diū (diūtius, diūtissimē), adv., long

hinc, adv., hence, from here, from  
this place

liberī, -ōrum, m. plur., children  
(liberty)

multitūdō, -inis, f., great number  
(multitude)

subitō, adv., suddenly

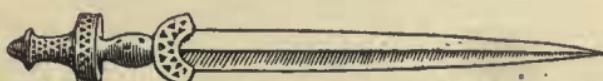
praemittō, praemittere, praemisi,  
praemissus, send ahead (pre-  
mise)

relinquō, relinquere, reliqui, relic-  
tus, leave behind, leave (relin-  
quish)

## EXERCISES

329. 1. Patrēs et mātrēs suōs liberōs maximē amant. 2. Eis cōnsilia optima dant et prō eis diligentissimē labōrant. 3. Tum in illam silvam amplam, quam hinc vidēmus, multitūdinem peditum praemittēmus. 4. Ex hōc summō monte facile videō sex urbēs centumque viās. 5. In īmīs terrae partibus sunt flūmina minima. 6. Diūtius lacū quam montibus impeditae sunt cōpiae nostrae. 7. Plūrimi militēs apud portum relictī erant; reliqui impetum in hostis subitō fēcērunt. 8. Arboribus et lapidibus mūrōs facient. 9. Hoc flūmen centum pedibus lātius est quam illud.

330. 1. Sometimes Cæsar's enemies fought much more bravely than the Roman soldiers. 2. But his soldiers fought very eagerly and boldly. 3. He carried on wars with the Gauls for a very long time. 4. Often he gave ample rewards to his centurions because they had captured much booty. 5. He was killed in the city of Rome by his personal enemies (*inimicus*).



GALLIC SWORD

## LESSON XLVIII.

### THE FIFTH DECLENSION · THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

**331. The Fifth Declension.** Nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ēs*. They are feminine, with the exception of *diēs*, *day*, which is usually masculine. They are inflected as follows :

|             | SING. | PLUR.   | SING. | PLUR.  | CASE ENDINGS |
|-------------|-------|---------|-------|--------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | di'ēs | di'ēs   | rēs   | rēs    | -ēs -ēs      |
| <i>Gen.</i> | diē'i | diē'rum | re'i  | re'rum | -ēi -ērum    |
| <i>Dat.</i> | diē'i | diē'bus | re'i  | re'bus | -ēi -ēbus    |
| <i>Acc.</i> | di'em | di'ēs   | rem   | rēs    | -em -ēs      |
| <i>Abl.</i> | di'ē  | diē'bus | rē    | re'bus | -ē -ēbus     |

a. The vowel *e* of the case endings is regularly long. It is shortened, however, in the ending *-eī* after a consonant, and in the ending *-em* : as, *rēi* and *rem*.

b. Only *diēs* and *rēs* are complete in the plural. A few other nouns have the nominative and the accusative plural. Decline *aciēs*, *fidēs* and *spēs*.

### 332. The Accusative of Extent.

1. *Decem annōs urbs oppugnābatur*, *the city was besieged for ten years.*
2. *Turris est centum pedēs alta*, *the tower is a hundred feet high.*

a. The accusative *decem annōs* denotes *extent of time*; the accusative *centum pedēs* denotes *extent of space*. Such accusatives answer the questions *how long?* *how far?* in time or in space. This usage is called the *Accusative of Extent*.

### 333. Rule for the Accusative of Extent. *Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative.*

## 334.

## VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle             | rēs, -ei, f., thing, event, fact<br>( <i>reality</i> )                                |
| altus, -a, -um, high, deep ( <i>alto</i> ) |   |
| diēs, -ēi, m., day ( <i>diary</i> )        | spēs, -ei, f., hope   |
| fidēs, -ei, f., trust, confidence          | īnstruō, īnstruere, īstrūxi, īn-<br>strūctus, draw up, marshal<br>( <i>instruct</i> ) |
| plānitiēs, -ēi, f., plain ( <i>plane</i> ) |   |
| posterus, -a, -um, next (649)              | castra pōnere, to pitch camp  |

## EXERCISES

335. 1. Caesar castra summō in monte prīmum posuit.  
 2. Castra summō in monte ā Caesare posita sunt. 3. Hinc hostēs magnā in plānitiē vīsi sunt. 4. Inter hunc montem et illam plānitiem erat flūmen, quod centum pedēs lātum et quīnque pedēs altum erat. 5. Caesar autem aciem īstrūxit et impetum hostium exspectābat. 6. Eius equitēs maiōrem partem diēi in cornibus manēbant. 7. Sed hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt, quod parvam victōriæ spem habuērunt. 8. Tum adulēscēntēs frūmentō plūris diēs caruērunt. 9. Collēs post castra nostra multis pedibus altiōrēs sunt.

336. 1. Cæsar heard about this fact from very many messengers. 2. The confidence of the Gauls was very slight on that day. 3. The river was ten feet deep at this place ; and so they left all the baggage on the shore. 4. This fact deprived our soldiers of all hope. 5. We shall remain six days in Italy.



AN OFFERING TO THE GODS

## LESSON. XLIX

### READING LESSON

#### A LETTER FROM POMPEII

337. Si tū valēs, bene est; ego quoque valeō. Hās litterās ad tē laetus<sup>1</sup> scribō. Medici cōnsiliō cum parentibus in Italia hiemāvī. Apud<sup>2</sup> vōs nivēs (*snow*) omnia complent, sed nōs hīc nivēs rārō vidēmus. Āēr est lēnissimus; caelum rīdet. Interdum in lītore ambulō vel in hortis amplis errō, nam grāmen arborēsque iam virent. Hinc videō Vesuvium montem hinc tōtam ferē urbem, hinc pulchrās īsulās in marī sitās. Linguae Lātīnae cotidiē multum operae dō. Eam linguan multō facilius quam Graecam discō. Sed iam finem faciam epistulae; mox cōram omnia tibi nārrābō. Valē,<sup>4</sup> mī amīce.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *laetus*, *gladly*.   <sup>2</sup> *apud*, *with*.   <sup>3</sup> *sitās*, *situated*.   <sup>4</sup> *valē*, *farewell*. This form is the imperative singular of *valeō*. See *XXXI, a.*   <sup>5</sup> *mī amīce*, *my friend*. These words are in the vocative case (*XXIV, b.*). When a person is addressed in Latin, a special case, called the vocative, is used. Generally it is the same in spelling as the nominative.



A VIEW IN POMPEII

## 338.

## VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| cōspectus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , look, view,<br>sight ( <i>conspectus</i> ) | prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessi, prō-<br>cessūrus, go forward, advance<br>( <i>proceed</i> ) |
| modus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , way, manner ( <i>mood</i> )                     | vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn,<br>change ( <i>convert</i> )                         |
| saxum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , stone, rock                                     |   |
| excēdō, excēdere, excessi, excessū-<br>rus, go out, withdraw           |   |

## PERSEUS MEDUSAM INTERFICIT (CONTINUED FROM 316)

339. Rēs difficillima erat caput Gorgonis abscidere,<sup>1</sup> eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc causam Minerva speculum Perseō dederat. Ille igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum prōcessit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscidit. Reliquae Gorgones statim ē somnō excitātae sunt, et, ubi<sup>2</sup> rem vidērunt, perturbātae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, et Perseum interficere volēbant.<sup>3</sup> Ille autem dum fugit,<sup>4</sup> galeam magi-  
cam induit; et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum excessit.

<sup>1</sup> abscidere, *to cut off*. The infinitive is here used as the subject of erat (393). <sup>2</sup> What two meanings has ubi in this paragraph? What kind of clause does it introduce here? <sup>3</sup> interficere volēbant, *wished to kill*. <sup>4</sup> dum fugit, while he was fleeing. The present tense with dum is translated as if it were the imperfect tense.



HEAD OF MEDUSA

CATUT M<sup>ED</sup>USA<sup>E</sup>

## LESSON L

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD · THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE PURPOSE CLAUSES WITH *UT* AND *NE*

**340. The Subjunctive Mood.** The Latin subjunctive is used in both independent and dependent clauses, but the kinds of dependent clauses in which the subjunctive is used are far more numerous than the independent. In this book only some uses in dependent clauses will be studied.

**341. The Tenses of the Subjunctive.** There are four tenses of the subjunctive: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect. No meanings are given for the tenses of the subjunctive, because the translation varies with the use of the mood (cf. 343, 357, 372).

**342. The Present Subjunctive.** The present subjunctive of the several conjugations and of **sum** is inflected as follows:

| ACTIVE        |                   | PASSIVE               |          |
|---------------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| 1. a'mem      | amē'mus           | a'mer                 | amē'mur  |
| 2. a'mēs      | amē'tis           | amē'ris               | amē'mini |
| 3. a'met      | a'ment            | amē'tur               | amēn'tur |
| mone          |                   |                       |          |
| reg           | -am, -ās, -at     | -āmus, -ātis, -ant    | ACTIV    |
| capi          | -ar, -āris, -ātūr | -āmūr, -āmīni, -āntūr | PASSI    |
| audi          |                   |                       |          |
| sim, sīs, sit |                   | sīmus, sītis, sint    |          |

*a.* Observe that the mood sign of the present subjunctive of the regular verbs is **-ē-** in the first conjugation, and **-ā-** in the others.

*b.* Learn the present subjunctive of the verbs above. Then inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **dūcō**, **mittō**, **recipiō**, **reperiō**, and **videō**. The present subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

## 343. Purpose Clauses.

1. **Civēs sē armant ut pugnant,** *the citizens arm themselves that they may fight (or, in order that they may fight, in order to fight, for the purpose of fighting, to fight).*
2. **Civēs sē armant nē superentur,** *the citizens arm themselves that they may not be overcome (or, in order not to be overcome, so that they may not be overcome, lest they be overcome).*

*a.* Observe that the dependent clauses express the *purpose* of the action of the principal clause, *ut, that*, introducing the affirmative clause, and *nē, that not*, the negative clause.

*b.* Observe the various ways of translating *ut* and *nē* and the subjunctive in these clauses. In English, purpose is most often expressed by the infinitive. In the best Latin prose, however, the purpose of an action is not expressed by the infinitive.

**344. Rule for Purpose Clauses.** *The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *nē* in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause.*

**EXERCISES**

- 345.** 1. Nūntium mittit *ut cīvēs moneat.* 2. Adulēscēns mititur *ut cīvēs moneantur.* 3. Legiō mittitur *nē oppidum ab hostibus capiātur.* 4. Legiōnēs fortiter pugnant *ut oppidum capiant.* 5. Puer venit *ut fābulam audiat.* 6. Puerī veniunt *ut verba tua audiant.* 7. Eōs mittimus *ut prōvinciam regant.* 8. Eōs mittimus *ut prōvincia ab eīs regātur.* 9. In Galliam properātis *ut bellum gerātis.* 10. Centum militēs praemittimus *ut castra mūniant.*

- 346.** 1. He is sent to fight. 2. We send them to find the way. 3. You are sent that the enemy may not make an attack on the city. 4. The soldiers are led out of the camp that a line of battle may be drawn up. 5. I am coming to see you and your mother. 6. He fights to defend himself.

## LESSON LI

### THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE · SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**347. The Imperfect Subjunctive.** The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive active; but the final -e of the infinitive is lengthened in certain forms.

a. Learn the imperfect subjunctive of the model verbs and of **sum** (658-663). The imperfect subjunctive belongs in the present system (671).

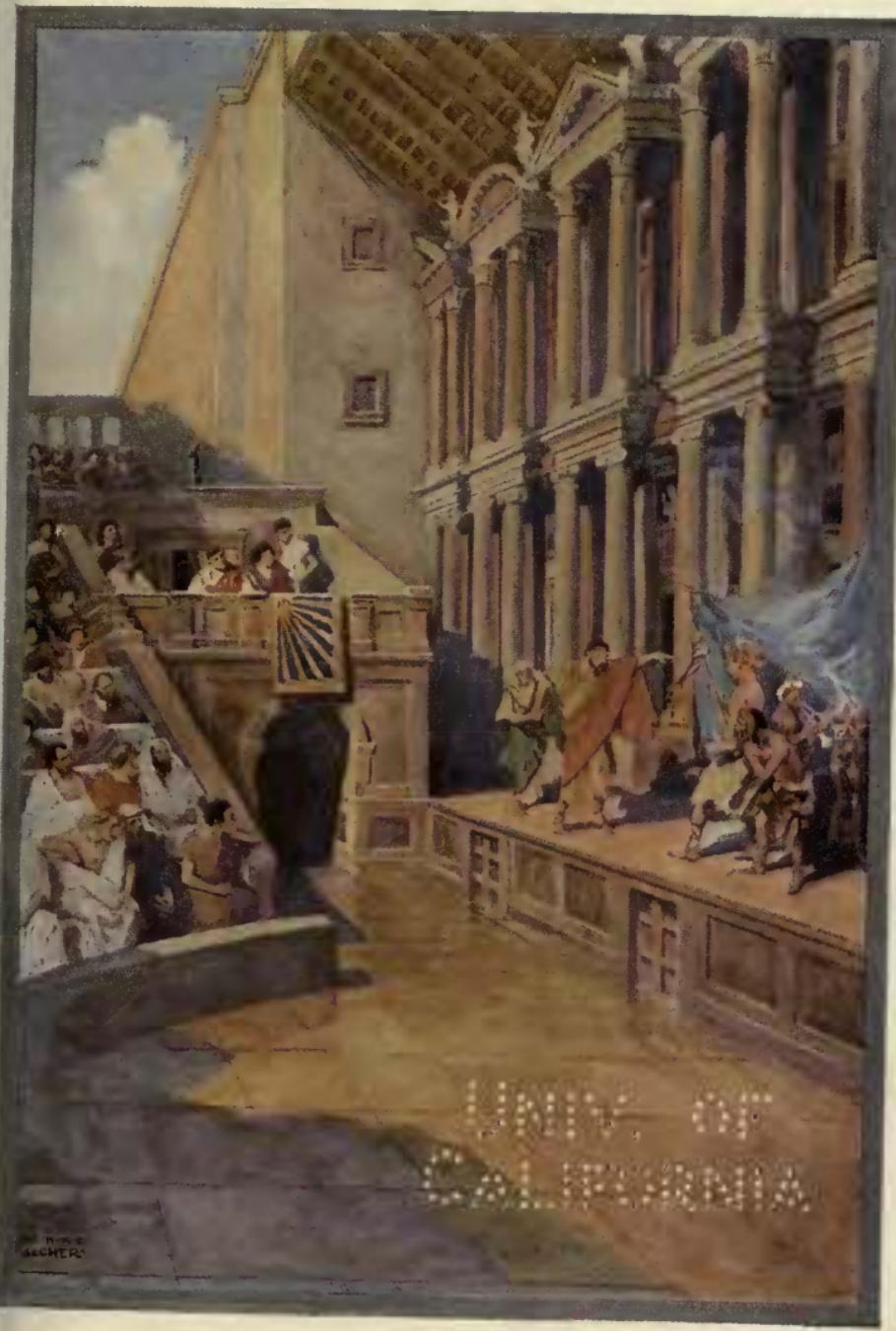
**348. Sequence of Tenses.** Examine the following English sentences:

1. He *comes* (*is coming*) that he *may* fight.
2. He *will come* that he *may* fight.
3. He *came* that he *might* fight.

a. Observe that in sentences 1 and 2 the verbs in the independent clauses are present and future, and that in sentence 3 the verb in the independent clause is past. Observe the change from *may* (present) to *might* (past) when a past tense takes the place of a present or a future in the verb of the independent clause. This following of one tense by another of the same kind is called *Sequence of Tenses*.

**349. Primary and Secondary Tenses.** Those tenses of the indicative which refer to present or to future time (present, future, and future perfect) are called *Primary Tenses*. Those tenses of the indicative which refer to past time (imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect) are called *Secondary Tenses*.

**350. Rule for Primary Sequence.** When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a primary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the present tense if its action is incomplete, but in the perfect tense if its action is completed.



A GLIMPSE INTO A ROMAN THEATER

l o c q e      c l e c b c      c  
c c c c      c l c c b c      c  
c q l c      c c c c b c      c  
c c c c      c c c c b c      c

c c c c      c c c c b c      c  
c c c c      c c c c b c      c  
c c c c      c c c c b c      c  
c c c c      c c c c b c      c

**351. Rule for Secondary Sequence.** When the verb of the independent clause of a sentence is in a secondary tense, a verb in the dependent clause is in the imperfect tense if its action is incomplete, but in the pluperfect if its action is completed.

a. Observe that all the verbs in the independent clauses in 345 are in the present tense, and that all the verbs in the dependent clauses are in the present subjunctive. If the verbs in the independent clauses should be changed to the future or the future perfect tense, what would be the tense of the subjunctive in the dependent clauses?

**352. Rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in Purpose Clauses.** Since a purpose clause expresses an incomplete action, its verb will be in the present subjunctive if the verb in the independent clause is in a primary tense, and in the imperfect subjunctive if the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense.

#### EXERCISES

**353.** 1. Veniunt ut pācem petant. 2. Veniēbant ut pācem peterent. 3. Venient ut pācem petant. 4. Vēnerant ut pācem peterent. 5. Fortiter pugnābant nē ā Gallis vincerentur. 6. Trāns flūmen properāverant ut oppidum oppugnārent. 7. Legiōnēs mīttentur ut hostēs commeātibus interclūdantur. 8. Ut portum dēfēderent nostri praemissi sunt. 9. Cōsul audācissimē dīcet ut populum Rōmānum incitet.

**354.** 1. They labor that they may be praised. 2. They were laboring that they might be praised. 3. They will labor that they may be praised. 4. They had labored that they might be praised. 5. They threw weapons from the higher places in order to hinder the Romans. 6. He had called together the chiefs to hear the new plan. 7. They will desist from battle that they may not be killed.

## LESSON LII

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE · RESULT CLAUSES

**355. Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** A substantive clause is a clause used like a noun (xx, *d*) ; it may be the subject or the object of a verb. Purpose clauses with *ut* and *nē* are often used in Latin as the objects of certain verbs : as,

*Petit ut obsidēs dent, he asks them to give hostages (that they give hostages).*

*a.* Observe that the clause *ut obsidēs dent* is the object of *petit*. This is, therefore, a noun clause. The purpose clauses in the preceding lessons were adverbial in nature (xx, *c*).

**356. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Purpose.** *Verbs meaning ask, command, persuade, and urge may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive.*

*a.* In English an infinitive is generally used in the object clause.

### 357. Result Clauses.

*1. Iter tam longum est ut puer sit dēfessus, the journey is so long that the boy is tired out.*

*2. Puer tam malus fuit ut ā patre nōn laudārētur, the boy was so bad that he was not praised by his father.*

*a.* Observe that the dependent clauses beginning with *ut* express the result of the statements in the independent clauses, and that the subjunctive is translated by an English indicative.

*b.* Observe that the sequence is the same as in purpose clauses, but that the negative clause contains *ut nōn* (not *nē*).

**358. Rule for Result Clauses.** *The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *ut nōn* in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause. The sequence of tenses is generally the same as in purpose clauses.*

## 359.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| ita, <i>adv.</i> , so, in such a way       | circumveniō, circumvenire, circum-   |
| tam, <i>adv.</i> , so                      | vēni, circumventus, surround   |
| tantus, -a, -um, so great                  | (circumvent).  |
| agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, act, do<br>(agent) | imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, impe-<br>rātus, command, order (imper-<br>ative) |

## EXERCISES

360. ① Puer ita ēgit ut ab omnibus amārētur. 2. Urbs vās-tāta est nē ab hostibus caperētur. 3. Eum monēmus nē miles sit. 4. Imperāvit nē per nostram prōvinciam iter facerent. ⑤ Tanta est inopia cibī ut plūrimi aegrī sint. ⑥ Urbs tam fortiter dēfēnsa est ut decem diēbus nōn caperētur. 7. Hostēs in silvās fūgērunt nē ā nostrīs circumvenirentur. 8. Caesar pīmum postulāvit ut nostrīs auxilium darētur..

361. ① They were so few that they fled. ② They were so brave that they did not flee. 3. I advise him to be more bold. 4. The lieutenant led the soldiers out of the camp in order to draw up a line of battle. 5. He demands that they pitch camp in this place. ⑥ The marsh is so great that our men are hindered.



A ROMAN CUP

## SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS XLIV-LII

362. Give the English meanings of the following words :

|             |            |           |           |         |
|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|---------|
| accipio     | copia      | instruo   | opera     | res     |
| aciēs       | diēs       | interdūm  | par       | saxum   |
| adulēscēns  | difficilis | ita       | perveniō  | sex     |
| agō         | diligenter | iūrō      | plānitiēs | similis |
| altus       | discēdō    | liberī    | posterus  | spēs    |
| amplus      | dissimilis | litus     | praemittō | subitō  |
| angustus    | excēdō     | malus     | prīnum    | superus |
| appellō     | expugnō    | modus     | prōcēdō   | tam     |
| arbor       | facilis    | multitūdō | quaerō    | tantus  |
| celer       | fidēs      | nātūra    | quam      | ut      |
| centum      | hinc       | nē        | quīnque   | vertō   |
| circumveniō | imperō     | omnīnō    | relinquō  | vīta    |
| cōspectus   | īferus     |           |           |         |

363. Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

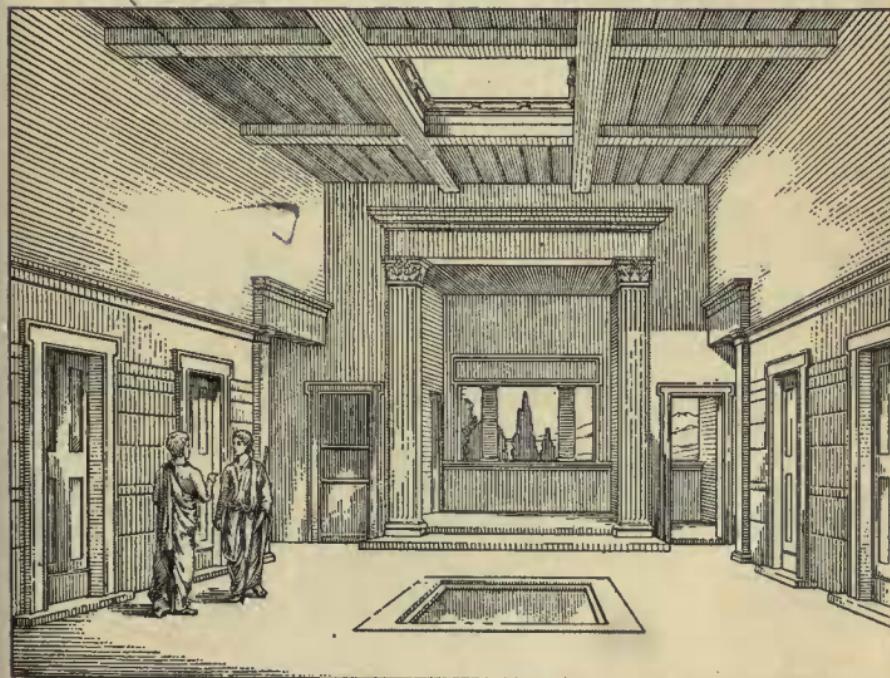
|            |             |                  |                        |
|------------|-------------|------------------|------------------------|
| children   | hundred     | high, deep       | swear, take oath       |
| bad        | so          | turn, change     | so, in such a way      |
| hope       | next        | young man        | nāture, character      |
| five       | plain       | that not, lest   | thing, event, fact     |
| suddenly   | narrow      | way, manner      | leave behind, leave    |
| so great   | day         | send ahead       | look, view, sight      |
| part       | withdraw    | command, order   | plenty, supply; troops |
| easy       | hard        | stone, rock      | trust, confidence      |
| than       | six         | wholly, entirely | draw up, marshal       |
| unlike     | seek, ask   | great number     | take by storm, capture |
| tree       | act, do     | so that, to      | go forward, advance    |
| sometimes  | high, above | large, spacious  | hence, from here       |
| diligently | call, name  | first, at first  | come through, reach    |
| shore      | like        | work, activity   | arrive                 |
| receive    | low, below  | line of battle   | go out, withdraw       |
| life       | surround    | swift, quick     |                        |

**364.** Decline each noun and each adjective in 362. Conjugate each verb in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural.

**365.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 362. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**366.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Partitive genitive               | 4. Adverbial clause of purpose   |
| 2. Ablative of degree of difference | 5. Substantive clause of purpose |
| 3. Accusative of extent             | 6. Adverbial clause of result    |
|                                     | 7. Sequence of tenses            |



THE ATRIUM OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LIII

### READING LESSON

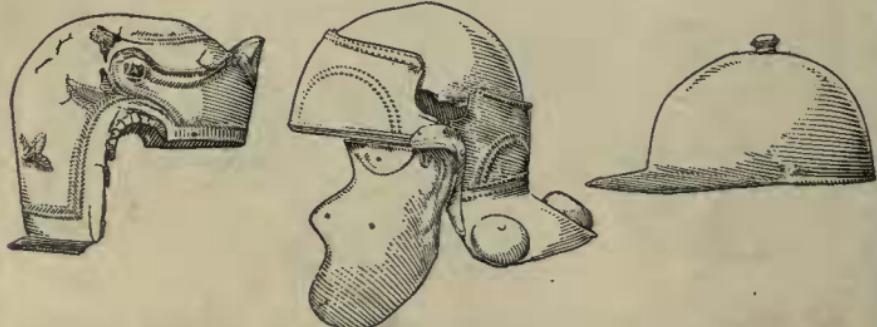
**367.**

#### VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire ( <i>secede</i> )                | ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxi, ēductus, lead out, lead forth     |
| conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, place, station ( <i>collocation</i> ) | iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid ( <i>adjutant</i> ) |

### CAESAR HOSTIS VINCIT

**368.** Posterō diē Caesar ex castrīs exercitum ēdūxit et iter ad flūmen fēcit. Quae (*this*) rēs hostibus nūntiāta est, quōrum peditēs ā nostrīs summō in colle visi sunt. Tum Caesar equitēs in cornibus conlocāvit ut peditēs iuvārent, et militum animōs ad pugnam ita incitāvit: "Omnis reī pūblicae spēs in nostrā virtūte posita est. Audācēs fortūna iuvat.. Fortēs vincent." Hostēs tam āriter in nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt ut hī cēderent. Brevi autem tempore hostēs ita superāti sunt ut ex omnibus pugnae partibus trāns flūmen fugerent. Eōrum dux captus est et Rōmam missus est.



ROMAN HELMETS

369.

## VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī,                             | sultus, plan, deliberate, consult<br>(consultation)                             |
| cōnstitūtus, establish, deter-<br>mine ( <i>constitution</i> ) | trādō, trādere, trādidi, trāditus,<br>give over, surrender ( <i>tradition</i> ) |
| cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsului, cōn-                             |   |

## ANDROMEDA FILIA CEPHEI (CONTINUED FROM 339)

370. Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus illō tempore regēbat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, oīlim offenderat; itaque Neptūnus mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc mōnstrum cotidiē ē mari veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Quam (*this*) ob causam terror animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, et ā deō iussus est<sup>1</sup> filiam Andromedam mōnstrō trādere.<sup>2</sup> Illa autem virgō pulcherrimā erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, maximē doluit. Volēbat tamen cīvīs suōs ē tantō perīculō servāre,<sup>3</sup> et ob eam causam imperāta Hammōnis facere<sup>4</sup> cōnstituit.

<sup>1</sup> iussus est, from iubeō. <sup>2</sup> trādere, translate with iussus est. <sup>3</sup> servāre, translate with volēbat (394). <sup>4</sup> facere, translate with cōnstituit (394).



A ROMAN CHARIOT

## LESSON LIV

### THE PERFECT AND THE PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE INDIRECT QUESTIONS

371. The Perfect and the Pluperfect Subjunctive. The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive active are formed on the perfect stem (671) :

|      |                         |                             |
|------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| amāv | -erim, -eris, -erit,    | -erimus, -eritis, -erint    |
| amāv | -issem, -issēs, -isset, | -issēmus, -issētis, -issent |

The perfect and the pluperfect subjunctive passive belong to the participial system (671).

a. Learn these tenses of the model verbs and of **sum** (658–663). Inflect the entire subjunctive of **agō**, **pōnō**, **dō**, and **videō**.

372. Indirect Questions. An indirect question is a subordinate clause which contains the substance of a direct question : as,

1. **Ubi sunt?** *where are they?*
2. **Audit ubi sint,** *he hears where they are.*

a. Observe that the dependent clause in 2 begins with an interrogative word (**ubi**) and contains the substance of the direct question in 1. Observe that the subjunctive mood is used, and that the clause is substantive in nature. Every subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word is an indirect question.

b. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb. Indirect questions usually follow the general rule for the sequence of tenses : as,

1. **Audit,** *he hears*
  2. **Audiet,** *he will hear*
  3. **Audiverit,** *he will have heard*
- ubi sint, where they are*

*ubi fuerint, where they were or where they have been*

}

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Audiēbat, he was hearing<br>2. Audivit, he heard<br>3. Audiverat, he had heard | ubi essent, where they were<br>ubi fuissent, where they had been |
|---|--|

**373. Rule for Indirect Questions.** The verb of an indirect question is in the subjunctive. If the verb of the independent clause is in a primary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the present subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the perfect for a completed action. If the verb of the independent clause is in a secondary tense, the verb of the indirect question is put in the imperfect subjunctive for an incomplete action, but in the pluperfect for a completed action.

**374.****VOCABULARY**

|  |   |
|--|---|
| num, <i>adv.</i> , whether                       | rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask            |
| quot, <i>adv.</i> , how many ( <i>quotient</i> ) | (arrogant)                                    |
| unde, <i>adv.</i> , whence                       | sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know<br>(science) |

**EXERCISES**

**375.** 1. Rogat quid agant, quid ēgerint. 2. Sciēbat quid age-  
rent, quid ēgissent. 3. Tibi dicam cūr labōrent, cūr labōrāverint.  
4. Audiverant unde militēs venirent, unde vēnissent. 5. Rogā-  
vērunt cūr laudārētur, cūr laudātī essent. 6. Scit cūr mane-  
ant, cūr mānserint. 7. Nōbis dixit quid illī puerī fēcissent.  
8. Rogāvī num saepe in Italiā fuisset. 9. Scīsne quot annōs  
Rōmānī Britanniam tenuerint?

**376.** 1. I shall tell you where they were and what they did.  
2. These come to see, those to be seen. 3. They are so tired  
that they are not working to-day. 4. He asked me why I had  
come. 5. I had heard where he had been. 6. The general  
asked whether they had all come. 7. Do you know how many  
soldiers are coming?

## LESSON LV

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES · THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

**377. Numeral Adjectives.** For the definition of numeral adjectives see III, c. A list of Latin cardinal and ordinal numerals is given in 651.

**378. The Declension of Numeral Adjectives.** The cardinals *ūnus*, *one*, *duo*, *two*, *trēs*, *three*, are declined; so, too, are the words for the *hundreds*, as, *ducentī*, *two hundred*, *trecentī*, *three hundred*, and (in the plural) *mille*, *thousand*. The other cardinals are not declined. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions.

a. Learn the declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille* (646).

**379. The Use of *Mille*.** The singular of *mille* is indeclinable, and is used either as an adjective or as a neuter noun: *mille* (adj.) *hominēs*, *a thousand men*, or *mille* (noun) *hominum*. The plural is used only as a noun. When used as a noun it takes the partitive genitive: (*mille hominum*) *a thousand (of) men* *quattuor mīlia hominum*, *four thousand(s of) men*.

**380. The Objective Genitive.**

*Spēs praedae hominēs incitat, hope of booty impels the men.*

a. Observe that the genitive *praedae* expresses the thing hoped for the object of the hope. This usage of the genitive case is called the *Objective Genitive*. The difference between the possessive and the objective genitive is illustrated by *timor canis*, *fear of the dog*, which may mean the dog's fear (possessive) or fear felt for the dog (objective).

**381. Rule for the Objective Genitive.** *Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns.*

382.

## VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| dexter, dextra, dextrum, right<br>( <i>dexterous</i> ) | passus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , pace ( <i>pace</i> )              |
| duo, duae, duo, adj., two ( <i>dual</i> )              | quārtus, -a, -um, adj., fourth<br>( <i>quarto</i> )        |
| memoria, -ae, <i>f.</i> , memory ( <i>memorable</i> )  | quattuor, adj., indecl., four                              |
| mille, adj. or noun, thousand<br>( <i>million</i> )    | sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left<br>( <i>sinister</i> ) |
| mille passuum, mile (a thousand<br>of paces)           | tertius, -a, -um, adj., third ( <i>tertiary</i> )          |
| octō, adj., indecl., eight ( <i>October</i> )          | timor, timōris, <i>m.</i> , fear ( <i>timorous</i> )       |
|  | trēs, tria, adj., three ( <i>trio</i> )                    |
|  | ūnus, -a, -um, adj., one ( <i>unify</i> )                  |

## EXERCISES

383. 1. In itinere duo flūmiña reperientur decem pedēs alta.  
 2. Memoria hārum rērum exercitum incitāverat. 3. Tria mīlia  
 passuum iter fēcerant et prīma aciēs īstruēbātur. 4. Caesar  
 imperāvit ut in dextrō cornū tertia, in sinistrō quārta legiō con-  
 locārētur. 5. Trium frātrum Mārcus erat fortissimus. 6. Propter  
 studium victōriæ haec ūna legiō Gallōs sustinuit. 7. Pilum  
 Rōmānum fuit sex pedēs longum. 8. Posterō diē octō mīlia  
 passuum ex illō lōcō discessērunt. 9. Quattuor explōrātōrēs,  
 quī praemissī erant, propter timōrem hostium fūgērunt.

384. 1. Hope of a reward impelled the children of Marcus.  
 2. On that hill were drawn up ten thousand foot soldiers and  
 two thousand horsemen. 3. The baggage of the army had  
 been left a mile from the shore. 4. The general will station  
 the second legion in front of the camp. 5. At the arrival of  
 two legions the enemy departed from the left flank. 6. Fear  
 of Cæsar and of the Romans will hinder one clan. 7. One of  
 the men was unfriendly to me.

## LESSON LVI

### ADJECTIVES HAVING THE GENITIVE IN -IUS

**385. Adjectives having the Genitive in -ius.** The adjectives of the following vocabulary end in -ius in the genitive singular and in -i in the dative singular of all genders (except that the genitive of alter ends in -ius).

#### 386.

#### VOCABULARY

|  |  |
|--|--|
| alius, alia, aliud, other, another<br>(alias)              | sōlus, -a, -um, alone, sole, only<br>(solitude)    |
| alter, altera, alterum, the other<br>(of two) (alterhate). | tōtus, -a, -um, whole, all (total)                 |
| neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither<br>(of two) (neutralitv)  | ūllus, -a, -um, any (at all)                       |
| nūllus, -a, -um, no, no one, none<br>(nullify)             | ūnus, -a, -um, one (unite)                         |
|  | uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)                  |
|  | uterque, utraque, utrumque, each<br>(of two), both |

- Learn the declension of **alius** (646). Decline the other words.
- These adjectives are usually emphatic, and so stand before their nouns. They are often used as pronouns.

**387. The Idiomatic Uses of Alius and of Alter.** Alius and alter, when repeated in the same sentence, have the following meanings:

alter . . . alter, one . . . the other (of two only)  
alius . . . alius, one . . . another (of any number)  
aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others

- Alterum oppidum in Italiā, alterum in Galliā est, one town is in Italy, the other in Gaul (only two towns are thought of).
- Aliud oppidum magnum, aliud parvum est, one town is large another small (here the thought is not limited to two towns).
- Aliī gladiis, aliī pilis pugnant, some are fighting with swords others with javelins.

## EXERCISES

- 388.** 1. In alterō flūminis lītore urbs, in alterō fuit mōns.  
 2. Duōrum hominū alter imperātor, alter tribūnus erat. 3. Tertiae legiōnis sōlius virtūte tōtus exercitus dēfendēbātur. 4. Altera legiō in dextrō, altera in sinistrō cornū ā Caesare conlocāta est.  
 5. Neutrī obsidi cibum dabō. 6. Uter puer est tuus filius? 7. Eā aestāte erant in marī nūllae nāvēs. 8. Cūr utrumque incitās?

- 389.** 1. Cæsar had praised the valor of the whole legion.  
 2. Which of the two young men showed the greater courage?  
 3. Cæsar will march without any delay with the second legion alone. 4. Some were pitching camp, others were drawing up a line of battle. 5. In no place did we find very many trees.

**390.**

## VOCABULARY

|   |  |
|---|--|
| celeritās, celeritātis, <i>f.</i> , speed<br>(celerity) | lacrima, -ae, <i>f.</i> , tear ( <i>lachrymose</i> )             |
| dolor, dolōris, <i>m.</i> , grief, pain<br>(dolorous)   | nec, neque, <i>conj.</i> , and not, nor                          |
| fremitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , noise                        | simul, <i>adv.</i> , at the same time<br>( <i>simultaneous</i> ) |

## MONSTRUM APPROPINQUAT (CONTINUED FROM 370)

- 391.** Tum rēx diem dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi is diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus ducta est, et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem adligāta est. Omnēs propter fātum eius dolēbant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. Subitō autem, dum mōnstrum exspectant, Perseus ad lītus pervenit; et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul mōnstrum saevissimum procul vidētur. Eius cōspectus timōrem maximum prae- buit. Magnā celeritāte ad lītus mōnstrum properāvit, iamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat.

## LESSON LVII

### THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND AS COMPLEMENT

**392. The Infinitive.** The infinitives of *amō* are as follows

| ACTIVE   | PASSIVE                                       |
|--|---|
| <i>Pres.</i> amāre, <i>to love</i>   | amāri, <i>to be loved</i>                     |
| <i>Perf.</i> amāvisse, <i>to have loved</i>                                | amātus esse, <i>to have been loved</i>        |
| <i>Fut.</i> amātūrus esse, <i>to be about to love, to be going to love</i> | (amātum irī, <i>to be about to be loved</i> ) |

a. Observe that the present infinitive passive is formed from the active by changing final **-e** to **-i**. But in the third conjugation final **-ere** is changed to **-i**.

b. The perfect infinitive active is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem.

c. The perfect infinitive passive is formed by using the perfect participle with **esse**, the present infinitive of **sum**.

d. The future infinitive active is formed by using the future active participle, **amātūrus**, with **esse**. The future active participle is made by changing final **-tus** or **-sus** of the perfect passive participle **-tūrus** or **-sūrus**. Form the future active participles of **pōnō**, **instruvideō**, **mittō**, and **gerō**.

e. Learn the infinitives and meanings of the model verbs and **sum** (658–663). The future infinitive passive may be omitted. It is rare.

**393. The Infinitive as Subject.** Since the infinitive is a noun it may be used as the subject or the object of a verb. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a subject or an object of its own and be modified by adverbs, adverb phrases, or adverb clauses.

1. *Laudāri est grātum, to be praised is pleasing.*
2. *Iter per finēs hostium facere erit difficile, to march through the territory of the enemy will be difficult.*

a. Observe that **laudāri** is the subject of **est**, and **iter per fīnēs hostium facere** of **erit**, while **iter** is the object of **facere**. Of what gender are **grātum** and **difficile**? What, then, is the gender of the infinitive?

### 394. The Complementary Infinitive.

1. **Vincere potest, he is able to conquer.**
2. **Bonī esse dēbēmus, we ought to be good.**

a. Observe that **vincere** and **esse** complete the meaning of **potest** and **dēbēmus**. An infinitive so used is called a *Complementary Infinitive*, and it is common in Latin, as in English, with verbs meaning *be able, decide, ought, wish, begin, etc.* You have already met this usage of the infinitive in several of the selections for reading.

b. The predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb.

### 395.

#### VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>coepī, coepisse</b> ( <i>lacks the present system</i> ), began                     | <b>decimus, -a, -um</b> , tenth ( <i>decimate</i> ) |
| <b>dēbēre</b> , <b>dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus</b> , ought, be obliged to ( <i>debit</i> ) | <b>potest</b> , is able, can                        |
|   | <b>possunt</b> , are able, can ( <i>possible</i> )  |
|   |   |

#### EXERCISES

396. 1. **Venire, dare, discēdere potest.** 2. **Impedīri, pōnī, conlocāri possunt.** 3. **Praemia recipere saepe est grātum.** 4. **Caesar reliquōs agrōs et oppida illius cīvitātis vāstārē coepit.** 5. **Tua verba audire est difficillimum.** 6. **Germānī Rōmānōs commeātibus interclūdere nōn possunt.** 7. **Statim multitūdō pacem petere coepit.** 8. **Sē dēfendere dēbent.** 9. **Quis tōtius exercitūs tam fortis fuit ut impetum hostium sustinēret?** 10. **Hieme diēs quīnque hōrīs breviōrēs quam aestātē sunt.**

397. 1. It will be easy to fortify the camp with a high wall. 2. You ought to offer help. 3. He is not able to arouse the soldiers of the tenth legion. 4. To carry on a war is not often best. 5. We ought to be brave and good. 6. Some have begun to fight, others to flee.

## LESSON LVIII

### THE INFINITIVE AS OBJECT · THE ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF THE INFINITIVE · INDIRECT STATEMENTS

#### 398. The Infinitive as Object.

*Mē venire iussit, he ordered me to come.*

a. Observe that in the English sentence the object of *ordered* is *me to come*; and that *me* is in the objective case and subject of the infinitive *to come*. The Latin sentence is like the English; *mē* is in the accusative case. Verbs meaning *order* and *wish* are the commonest verbs having an infinitive as their object; but *imperō*, *order*, takes a substantive clause of purpose (356). The objective infinitive is also used in indirect statements (400–402).

#### 399. Rule for the Accusative as Subject of the Infinitive. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

400. Indirect Statements. A direct statement gives the exact words used by a speaker or writer: as, *He says (or said) "Soldiers are coming."* In an indirect statement the words of a speaker or writer are made to depend on a verb of *saying*, *thinking*, etc., and in English may or may not be the same as they were in the original statement or thought: as, *He says that soldiers are coming, he said that soldiers were coming*. Observe the same sentences in Latin:

1. *Militēs veniunt, soldiers are coming.*
2. *Dicit militēs venire, he says that soldiers are coming.*
3. *Dixit militēs venire, he said that soldiers were coming.*

a. Observe that in turning a direct statement into an indirect statement in Latin the nominative is changed to the accusative (399) and the indicative to the infinitive.

**401. Rule for Indirect Statements.** *Indirect statements, with verb in the infinitive and subject in the accusative, are found in dependence on verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like.*

**402. The Use of the Tenses of the Infinitive in Indirect Statements.** The *present* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement is going on at the *same* time as the action indicated by the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs venīre**, *he says that soldiers are coming.*
2. **Dixit militēs venīre**, *he said that soldiers were coming.*
3. **Dicet militēs venīre**, *he will say that soldiers are coming.*

The *perfect* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurred *before* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs vēnisse**, *he says that soldiers came (or have come).*
2. **Dixit militēs vēnisse**, *he said that soldiers came (or had come).*
3. **Dicet militēs vēnisse**, *he will say that soldiers came (or have come).*

The *future* infinitive is used when the action of the indirect statement occurs *after* that of the verb of *saying, thinking, etc.*: as,

1. **Dicit militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he says that soldiers will come.*
2. **Dixit militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he said that soldiers would come.*
3. **Dicet militēs ventūrōs esse**, *he will say that soldiers will come.*

### 403.

### VOCABULARY

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus, learn, know, understand (*recognize*)  
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (*cupiī*), cupitus, desire, wish (*cupidity*)

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus, bid, order, command (*jussive*)  
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus, answer, reply (*respond*)

**EXERCISES**

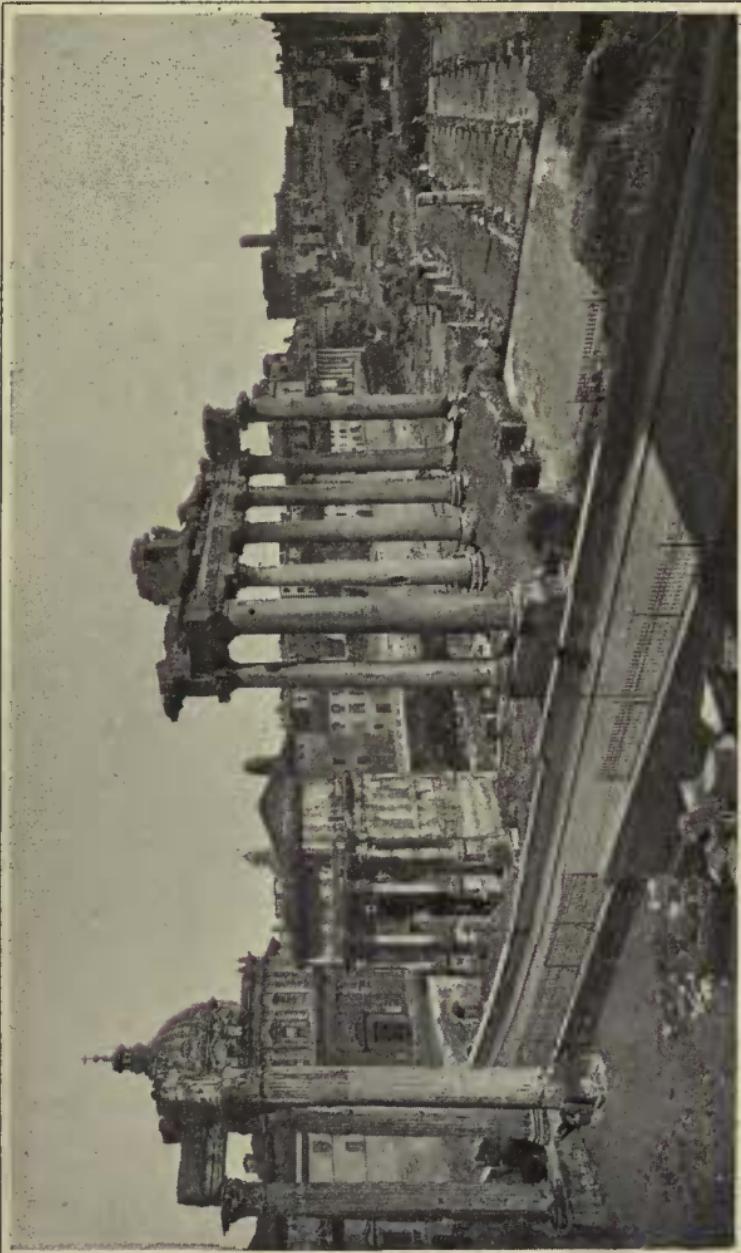
**404.** 1. Caesar per duōs explōrātōrēs cognōvit hostēs sex milia passuum iter fēcisse. 2. Socīi respondent sē sine morā auxilium ad Caesarem missūrōs esse. 3. Imperātor dixit sē suis praemia ampla datūrum esse. 4. Omnēs cupiunt esse liberī. 5. Omnēs cupiunt Italiam esse liberam. 6. Omnēs vident oppidum fortiter dēfendī. 7. Statim tertiam aciem īstruī Caesar iussit. 8. Sciēbat Gallōs venire ut impetum facerent.

**405.** 1. That lieutenant will order his men to build towers. 2. I know that two legions have been sent ahead. 3. From the captives he learned that the enemy lacked food. 4. He ordered (*iubeō*) them to spend the winter in that state. 5. The traders replied that there was no grain in the territory of the Germans.



A ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

THE ROMAN FORUM TO-DAY



## LESSON LIX

### READING LESSON

#### CAESAR IN CONCILIO DICIT

406. Post hoc proelium Caesar militibus in concilio ita dixit: Eōs fortiter pugnāvisse; itaque hostis omnibus in partibus victōs esse et in montīs et palūdēs fugere; praedam eīs sē datūrum esse; sē scīre eōs longō bellō esse dēfessōs et statim eōs in Italiā missūrum esse; sē velle<sup>1</sup> in Galliā manēre per hiemem, sed proximā aestāte suōs in Germānōs ductūrum esse; multōs captivōs Rōmam missōs esse, et populum Rōmānum victoriā eōrum dēlectārī.

#### 407.

#### VOCABULARY

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost (*peninsula*)

regiō, regiōnis, *f.*, place (*region*)

undique, *adv.*, from all sides, everywhere

dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put down, lay aside (*deposit*)

ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, osten-

tus, show, display (*ostensible*)

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, give back, return (*render*)

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, know, perceive (*sentiment*)

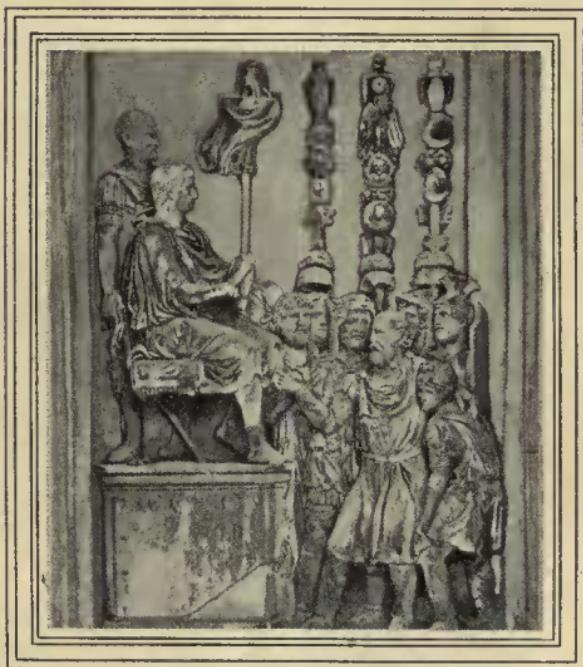
#### PERSEUS CEPHEO ANDROMEDAM REDDIT (CONTINUED FROM 391)

408. At Perseus ubi haec vidit, gladium suum ēdūxit, et postquam tālāria induit, per āera volāvit. Tum dēsuper in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit, et gladiō suō collum eius graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus in aquam mersit. Perseus dum circum lītus volat, redditum eius exspectābat. Mare

<sup>1</sup> velle, infin. of volō, *wish*.

autem interim undique sanguine īficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput ostendit; mox tamen ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē in undās mersit, neque posteā visa est.

Perseus postquam ad litus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīcta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, et ubi Perseus pervēnit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit, et puellam patri reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō adfectus est. Itaque Andromedam Perseō in mātrimōnium dedit. Paucōs annōs Perseus cum uxōre in eā regiōne habitābat, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnīs Aethiopēs.



IMPERATOR ET CAPTIVI

## LESSON LX

### THE DEMONSTRATIVES *IDEM*, *IPSE*, *ISTE* · THE IRREGULAR VERB *POSSUM*

**409.** The Demonstratives *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*. Review the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille* (654), and learn the declension of *idem*, *same*, *ipse*, *-self*, and *iste*, *this of yours, that of yours* (654).

a. Observe that *idem* is declined like *is* with *-dem* added, except that in the accusative singular and the genitive plural *m* is changed to *n*, and in the nominative and accusative singular *is* is changed to *i*, *id* to *i*.

b. Decline together *idem diēs, rēs ipsa*, and *istud cōnsilium*.

**410.** The Distinction between *Idem*, *Ipse*, and *Iste*.

a. *Idem* and *iste* may be used both as demonstrative adjectives and as demonstrative pronouns.

b. *Iste* is used of that which has some relation to the second person, and is translated *this of yours, that of yours, your*: as, *istam diligentiam laudō, I praise that diligence of yours (your diligence)*.

c. *Ipse* means *-self (himself, herself, itself, themselves)*. It is an intensive word, used to emphasize a noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, with which it agrees as an adjective: as, *amicus ipse ad mē vēnit, my friend himself came to me*. It must be distinguished from *sē, -self*, which is reflexive, not emphatic (266). Sometimes *ipse* may be translated *even* or *very*: as, *in flūmine ipsō pugnant, they are fighting in the very river*.

**411.** The Irregular Verb *Possum*. The irregular verb *possum*, *I can*, is a compound of *potis*, *able*, and *sum*, *I am*; *pot-sum* changed to *possum*. Wherever, in the inflection of this verb, *t* comes before *s*, it is changed to *s*, and wherever it comes before *f*, *f* is dropped. Learn the principal parts and the complete inflection (664).

## 412.

## VOCABULARY

difficultās, difficultātis, *f.*, difficulty,  
idem, eadem, idem, same (*identity*)  
idem . . . quī, same . . . as  
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive, -self  
iste, ista, istud, this of yours,  
that of yours  
nihil, *n.*, indecl., nothing (*annihilate*)  
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, *f.*, speech, plea  
(*oration*)

rūrsus, *adv.*, again  
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvi, nūntiātus, report, announce (*annunciator*)  
possum, posse, potui, —, be able, can (*potent*)  
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, think, believe, reckon (*compute*)  
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus, hope (*prosperous*)

## EXERCISES

**413.** 1. Potest, poterat, poterit. 2. Potuimus, potuerant, poterant. 3. Scīsne cūr ista verba audīrī nōn possint? 4. Eaēdem erant difficultātēs bellī quās vōbīs nūntiāre potuī. 5. Labiēnus ipse scīvit causās bellī plūrimās esse. 6. Putō mē hodiē nihil ēmptūrum esse. 7. Nōn iam pōstulant ut populus Rōmānus nāvēs praebeat. 8. Centuriō, quī cum octō explōrātōribus missus erat ut viam cognōsceret, nūntiāvit sē viam cognōscere nōn potuisse. 9. Omnēs spērābant Caesarem eā aestāte Gallōs victūrum esse. 10. Virī ipsī dicunt tēla iaci nōn posse.

**414.** 1. They have been able, he will be able, I could. 2. He had been able, they will have been able, we could. 3. The very children no longer desired peace. 4. They say that our allies are in the same danger to-day. 5. I think that I can stay two days with that friend of yours. 6. The traders reported that many bands of horsemen had been sent into the mountains. 7. I think that you can fight. 8. You thought that I could not come.

## EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LIII-LX

**415.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|           |              |         |           |         |
|-----------|--------------|---------|-----------|---------|
| alius     | difficultas  | nec     | puto      | solum   |
| alter     | dolor        | neque   | quartus   | spem    |
| cedo      | duo          | neuter  | quattuor  | tertius |
| celeritas | educco       | nihil   | quot      | timor   |
| coepi     | fremitus     | nullus  | reddo     | totus   |
| cognoscō  | idem         | num     | regio     | tradicō |
| conlocō   | ipse         | nuntio  | respondeo | tres    |
| cōstituō  | iste         | octo    | rogō      | ullus   |
| cōsulō    | iubeo        | oratio  | rursus    | unde    |
| cupio     | iuvō         | ostendō | sciō      | undique |
| dēbeō     | lacrima      | paece   | sentiō    | ūnus    |
| decimus   | memoria      | passus  | simul     | uter    |
| dēpōnō    | mille        | possum  | sinister  | uterque |
| dexter    | mille passum |         |           |         |

**416.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|         |                   |            |                              |
|---------|-------------------|------------|------------------------------|
| two     | answer, reply     | memory     | give way, retire             |
| one     | nearly, almost    | the other  | think, believe, reckon       |
| left    | and not, nor      | know       | put down, lay aside          |
| tear    | give back, return | began      | from all sides, everywhere   |
| speed   | other, another    | three      | no, no one, none             |
| eight   | how many          | whence     | lead out, lead forth         |
| again   | be able, can      | help, aid  | at the same time             |
| four    | show, display     | hope       | bid, order, command          |
| mile    | which (of two)    | difficulty | this of yours, that of yours |
| ask     | speech, plea      | place      | establish, determine         |
| third   | place, station    | noise      | alone, sole, only            |
| neither | desire, wish      | thousand   | learn, know, understand      |
| pace    | report, announce  | right      | ought, be obliged to         |
| nothing | whole, all        | -self      | give over, surrender         |

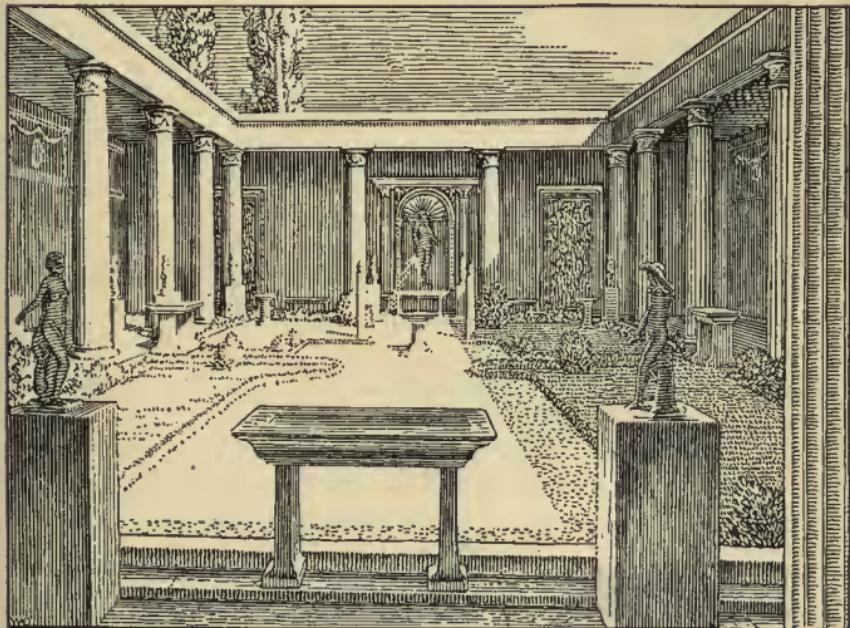
|        |              |         |                           |
|--------|--------------|---------|---------------------------|
| same   | each, both   | whether | feel, know, perceive      |
| fourth | any (at all) | fear    | plan, deliberate, consult |
| tenth  | grief, pain  |         |                           |

**417.** Decline each noun, adjective, and pronoun in 415. Conjugate each verb in all tenses of the subjunctive mood. Make synopses. Give the infinitives of each verb.

**418.** Following the suggestions of 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 415. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**419.** Give the rule for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin:

- |                             |   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Indirect questions       | 5. Infinitive as object                       |
| 2. Objective genitive       | 6. Indirect statements                        |
| 3. Infinitive as subject    | 7. Accusative as subject of the<br>infinitive |
| 4. Infinitive as complement |   |



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXI

### THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

**420. The Indefinite Pronouns.** The indefinite pronouns (*ii, g*) are compounds of *quis* and of *qui*. The following indefinite pronouns will be used in this book:

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, aliquod, *some, some one, any, any one*  
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, quoddam, *a certain one, a certain*  
*quisquam, ——, quidquam (no plural), any one (at all) ~*  
quisque, quaeque, quidque, quodque, *each, each one, every, every one*

*a.* Learn the meanings and the declension of these pronouns (657).

*b.* The meanings of the neuters (*something, anything, etc.*) are easily inferred.

*c.* Observe how **aliqua**, which is both the feminine nominative singular and the neuter nominative and accusative plural of **aliquis**, differs from the corresponding forms of **quis**.

*d.* Observe that **quidam** (*qui + dam*) is declined like **qui**, except that in the accusative singular and genitive plural **m** is changed to **n**; also that the neuter has **quiddam** and **quoddam** in the nominative and accusative singular.

*e.* In the neuter of all indefinites the **quid** forms are used as pronouns, and the **quod** forms as adjectives.

### EXERCISES

**421.** 1. Duo nova flūmina ā quibusdam virīs audācībus reperta sunt. 2. Nōn iam quemquam ante domum vidēre possum. 3. Ut civēs timōre liberāret, arma statim trādi iussit. 4. Quidam captīvus idem rūrsus nūntiāvit. 5. Quisque aliquid respondēre potuerit. 6. Aliquae fēminae nōn sōlum perturbātæ erant, sed etiam fūgerant. 7. Lēgātus quemque ex finibus frūmentum

portāre iubēbit. 8. Quaedam legiō spē victōriæ Delphōs properābat. 9. Īnsulae similis est ista terra.

422. 1. Each says that the Gauls are approaching. 2. He does not demand anything at all. 3. That girl has something in her right hand. 4. A part of each summer we live among the mountains and hills. 5. To-day a story was told to us by somebody. 6. At the same time certain (men) came to Cæsar to demand help. 7. I know what each is able to do.

### THE NATIONS OF GAUL

423. Gallia est omnis dīvisa (*divided*) in partīs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī qui Galli appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, quod prōvinciae Rōmānae propinqui nōn sunt neque mercātōrēs ad eōs saepe pervenient; proximique sunt Germānīs qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā (*for this reason*, 186) Helvētiī quoque fortiorēs quam reliquī Galli sunt. Cotidiānī ferē proeliis cum Germānīs contendunt, cum (*when*) aut (*either*) suīs finibus eōs prohibent aut (*or*) ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Ea pars quam Galli obtinent īitium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā (*Garonne*) flūmine, ūceanō, finibus Belgārum.



TABLE, VASE, AND LAMP STANDS

## LESSON LXII

### THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS · THE DATIVES OF PURPOSE AND REFERENCE

#### 424. The Dative with Compounds.

1. *Quis equitibus praefuit?* *who commanded the horsemen?*
2. *Huic legiōni lēgātūm praefēcit,* *he put a lieutenant in charge of this legion.*

a. Observe that *praefuit*, which is a compound of *sum*, is intransitive. It does not admit a direct object, but does admit the indirect object *equitibus*. There are a number of Latin verbs which in their simple form take neither a direct nor an indirect object; when these verbs are compounded with a preposition, they have a meaning which may take an indirect object. Some compound verbs take both a direct and an indirect object: as, *praefēcit* in sentence 2.

**425. Rule for the Dative with Compounds.** *Some verbs compounded with ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, and super, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative.*

#### 426. The Datives of Purpose and Reference.

1. *Militēs ibi erant praeſidiō, soldiers were there as (for) a defense.*
2. *Militēs auxiliō eīs mittuntur, soldiers are sent as (for) a help to them.*

a. Observe that the datives *praeſidiō* and *auxiliō* are used to express the purpose for which something serves. This usage is called the *Dative of Purpose*. Often the dative of purpose is accompanied by another dative, called the *Dative of Reference*, denoting the person or thing served: as, *eīs* in sentence 2. This combination is known as the *Double Dative*.

**427. Rule for the Dative of Purpose.** *The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves.*

**428. Rule for the Dative of Reference.** *The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb.*

**429.****VOCABULARY**

mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, *f.*, fortification, defense (*ammunition*)  
 praesidium, praesi'dī, *n.*, defense, protection, guard  
 subsidium, subsi'dī, *n.*, help, aid  
 ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, benefit, advantage (*useful*)  
 dēsum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be lacking, be wanting, fail  
 occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occur-sūrus, run toward, meet (*occur*)

praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus, place in command of (*prefect*)  
 praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus, surpass, be superior to  
 praesum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, be at the head of, command  
 supersum, superesse, superfui, superfutūrus, be left over, survive

**EXERCISES**

**430.** 1. *Ūnum oppidum sociōrum ab hostibus diū oppugnātum erat, et mūnitiōnēs cotidiē yāstābantur.* 2. *Quod cibus et arma cīvibus deesse coepérunt, socii rogāvērunt ut Caesar cōpiās auxiliō mitteret.* 3. *Itaque Caesar Labiēnum ūni legiōni praefēcit et eum subsidiō cīvibus misit.* 4. *In itinere Labiēnus hostibus occurrit, quī omnibus ex partibus vēnerant ut oppidum caperent.* 5. *Pila impedimentō nostris, sed magnō ūsuī gladiī erant.* 6. *Nostrī hostibus praestitērunt et eōs superāvērunt.* 7. *Labiēnus dixit sē cīvibus praesidiō futūrum esse.* 8. *Scisne quis ei oppidō praefuerit?*

**431.** 1. Courage did not often fail Cæsar. 2. He commanded brave men. 3. He was a protection to his country. 4. He did not survive his last (*proximus*) wars many years. 5. He was superior to the chiefs of the Gauls and the Germans. 6. He placed lieutenants in charge over the nations which had been conquered. 7. The sea is many feet deeper than this lake.

## LESSON LXIII

### THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL INTRANSITIVE VERBS · THE IRREGULAR VERBS *VOLO*, *NOLO*, *MALO*

#### 432. The Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.

1. *Legiōnī imperat*, *he commands a legion*.
2. *Amīcō meō persuādet*, *he persuades my friend*.

a. Observe that *legiōnī* and *amīcō* are in the dative case, while the English equivalents are in the objective case. It is obvious, therefore, that the Latin verbs *imperō* and *persuādeō* are intransitive, and that they admit an indirect object.

*Verbs of ATTITUDE or HELP*  
433. *Rule for the Dative with Special Intransitive Verbs.* Most verbs meaning believe, favor, help, please, trust, and their opposites, also command, obey, pardon, persuade, resist, serve, spare, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object.

a. Such verbs used in this book are *crēdō*, *believe*; *faveō*, *favor*; *imperō*, *command*; *noceō*, *harm*; *persuādeō*, *persuade*; *placeō*, *please*; *resistō*, *resist*; and *studeō*, *desire, be eager for*.

b. Observe that *imperō* has an indirect object, while *iubeō* takes a direct object.

434. *The Irregular Verbs *Volō*, *Nōlō*, and *Mālō*.* Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of *volō*, *wish*, *nōlō* (*nē + volō*), *be unwilling*, and *mālō* (*magis volō*), *be more willing, prefer*, in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive (665).

#### 435.

#### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| mulier, mulieris, <i>f.</i> , woman          | <i>crēdō</i> , <i>crēdere</i> , <i>crēdidi</i> , <i>crēditus</i> ,          |
| neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor         | <i>believe, trust (creditor)</i>  |
| occāsus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , setting (occasion) | <i>faveō</i> , <i>favēre</i> , <i>fāvī</i> , <i>fautūrus</i> , <i>favor</i> |
| sōl, sōlis, <i>m.</i> , sun (solstice)       | ( <i>favor</i> )  |

mālō, mālle, māluī, —, be more  
willing, prefer  
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus,  
harm, injure (*obnoxious*)  
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be un-  
willing  
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī,  
persuāsus, persuade (*persua-  
sive*) *vt vs*

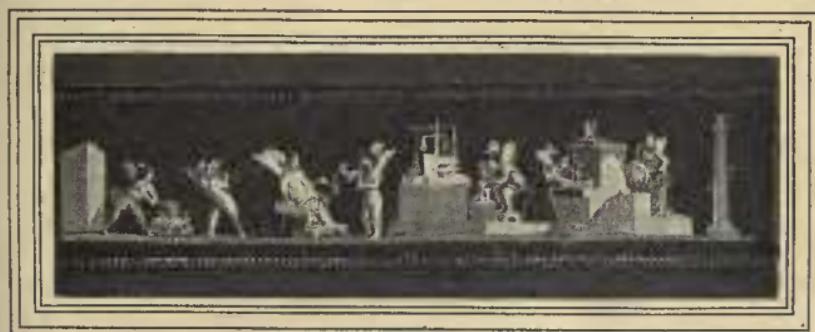
*m*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus,  
please, be pleasing to (*placidly*)  
resistō, resistere, restitī, —,  
resist, oppose (*resistance*)  
studeō, studēre, studuī, —, be  
eager for, desire (*student*)  
volō, velle, voluī, —, be willing,  
wish (*volition*)

## EXERCISES

**436.** 1. Vultis, nōlumus, māvīs. 2. Mercātōribus nōn crē-  
dit. 3. Nōlle, māluisse. 4. Vōbīs persuādēre volunt. 5. Vult  
mihi favēre. 6. Neque nōlunt tibi nocēre. 7. Tibi auxiliō esse  
mālumus. 8. Cūr nōn vīs mātri tuae esse praesidiō? 9. Putā-  
mus eum voluisse equitātuī praeesse. 10. Sōlis occāsū militēs  
castra hostium capient. 11. Paucae enim ex hīs nātiōnibus  
bellō student. 12. Militibus imperāvit ut fortiter Gallis resis-  
tent. 13. Neque mulierēs neque liberī timēbant.

**437.** 1. They were wishing, I shall be unwilling, she will  
prefer. 2. They were not willing to help our men. 3. They were  
not able to please your friends. 4. And they did not persuade  
the general. 5. He will command them not to harm the women.  
6. Neither the Gauls nor the Germans desired war at that time.



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXIV

### READING LESSON

#### BELLING THE CAT

438. Quidam mūrēs aliquandō concilium habēbant, nam fēlem maximē timēbant. Cōnsilia quae prōposita sunt omnibus nōn placēbant. Tandem ūnus ex mūribus ita dixit: "Tintinnābulum caudae fēlis adnectere dēbēmus. Sic enim sonitū eius monēbimur et fugere poterimus. Quis vestrum hoc facere vult?" Sed nūlli ex sociis persuādēre potuit ut tintinnābulum fēli adnecteret, et ipse nōluit. Ea fābula docet plūrimōs in suādendō<sup>1</sup> esse audācēs sed in ipsō periculō timidōs.

#### NASICA AND ENNIUS

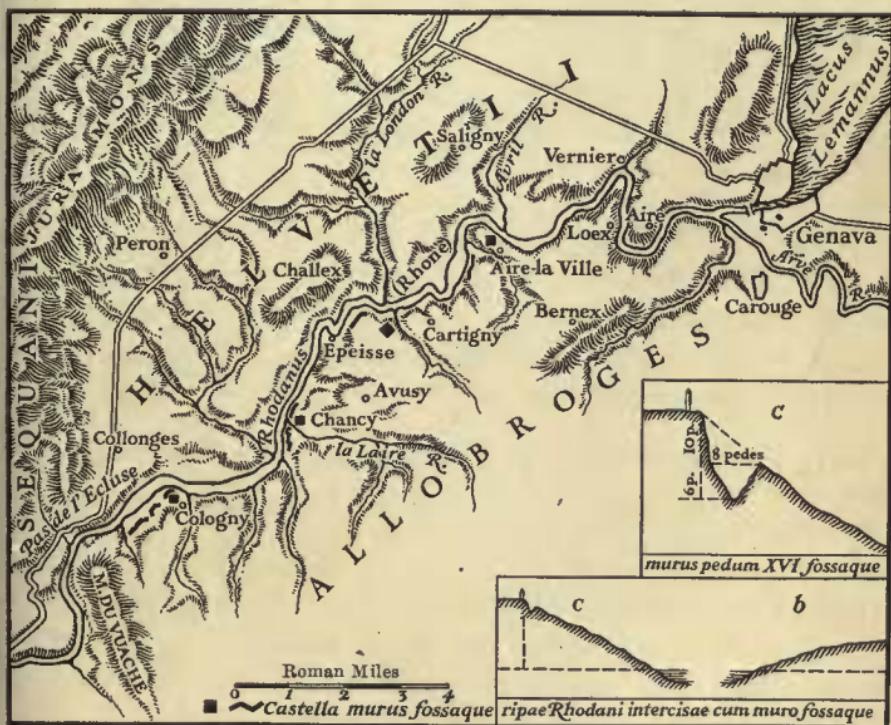
439. Nāsica aliquandō ad poētam<sup>2</sup> Ennium vēnit et dē eō quaesivit. Ancilla respondit Ennium domī<sup>3</sup> nōn esse. Nāsica autem sēnsit illam dominī iussū hoc dixisse et Ennium domī esse. Paucis post diēbus<sup>4</sup> Ennius ad Nāsicam vēnit. Ei exclāmat Nāsica sē domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius dixit, "Quid Ego nōn cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Hic<sup>5</sup> Nāsica: "Homō es impudēns. Ego ancillae tuae crēdidi; tū mihi ipsi nōn crēdis?"

#### ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS

440. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus erat Orgetorix. Iērēgnī cupiditātē inductus est et coniūrātiōnem nōbilitatis fēcit. Tum civitātī persuāsit ut dē finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis properārent. Facilius eis persuāsit quod undique locī nātūrā

<sup>1</sup> suādendō, offering advice. <sup>2</sup> ad poētam, to the house of the poet. <sup>3</sup> domī at home. <sup>4</sup> paucis post diēbus, a few days later. <sup>5</sup> hīc, adv., hereupon.

Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte (*on one side*) flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā (ex parte) lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, qui prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dīvidit. Propter multitudinem hominum et glōriam belli angustōs sē finēs habēre putābant, qui in longitūdinem milia passuum ccXL (ducenta quadrāgintā), in lātitūdinem CLXXX (centum octōgintā) patēbant.



MAP OF HELVETIA.

~~terf.~~ - ~~int. (a. n. m.)~~ laudatus (a. m.)  
Fut. ursus - ~~int. (a. n. m.)~~ - ~~int. (a. n. m.)~~

LESSON LXV

## PARTICIPLES

**441. Participles.** Learn the participles of the model verbs (658–662), and their meanings.

a. Observe that the present active and the future passive participles are formed from the present stem by the addition of **-ns** and **-ndus**, with certain changes in quantity; and the future active and the perfect passive from the participial stem by the addition of **-ūrus** and **-us**. But observe that in verbs of the fourth conjugation and of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** the present active participle has **-iēns** and the future "passive" participle has **-iendus**. Form the participles of **gerō**, **videō**, **iaciō**, **vāstō**, and **mūniō**.

**442. The Declension of Participles.** Participles in **-ns** are declined like **amāns** (645). The ablative singular ending is **-e**; but the ending is **-ī** when the word is used as an adjective. The other participles are declined like **bonus** (643). Decline the participles of **gerō**.

**443. The Agreement of Participles.** Since participles are verbal adjectives (xxxiv), they agree with nouns or pronouns in gender, number, and case.

**444. The Tenses of Participles.** The present active participle is used of an action going on at the same time as the action of the main verb: as, **tē labōrāntem videō**, *I see you working*; **tē labōrāntem vidi**, *I saw you working*.

The perfect passive participle is used of an action that is completed at the time of the action of the main verb: as, **mīles vulnērātus domum vēnit**, *the soldier, having been wounded, came home*.

The future active and passive participles are used of actions which are to occur after the time of the action of the main

verb. In this book the future active participle is used only in the formation of the future active infinitive (392, d). The uses of the future passive participle will be explained later (471-473).

#### 445. The Translation of Participles.

1. **Tē in urbe manentem vidi**, *I saw you when you were staying in the city.*
2. **Urbs diū oppugnāta nōn capta est**, *the city, though besieged for a long time, was not taken.*
3. **Caesar eā rē commōtus in Galliam properāvit**, *Cæsar, because he was alarmed by this circumstance, hastened into Gaul.*
4. **Dux victus sē recipiet**, *the general, if defeated, will retreat.*
5. **Dōna missa recēpit**, *he received the gifts which had been sent.*
6. **Caesar p̄incipem captum Rōmam mīsit**, *Cæsar captured a chieftain and sent him to Rome.*

a. Observe that in the first five sentences the participle is translated by clauses of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, and *condition*, and by a *relative clause*. In 6 the participle is translated by a coördinate verb. Note the words which introduce the different clauses. When you meet a participle, consider which of these six ways best brings out the thought of the sentence and translate accordingly. Do not translate a participle literally.

#### 446.

#### VOCABULARY.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>hiberna</b> , -ōrum, <i>n. plur.</i> , winter quarters ( <i>hibernate</i> )                                     | <b>moveō</b> , <i>movēre</i> , <i>mōvī</i> , <i>mōtus</i> , move ( <i>motion</i> )              |
| <b>commoveō</b> , <i>commovēre</i> , <i>commōvī</i> , <i>commōtus</i> , disturb, move, arouse ( <i>commotion</i> ) | <b>redūcō</b> , <i>redūcere</i> , <i>redūxī</i> , <i>reductus</i> , lead back ( <i>reduce</i> ) |

#### EXERCISES

447. 1. Alii militēs fugientēs capti sunt. 2. His rēbus impediti eō diē impetum nōn fēcērunt. 3. Alter centuriō p̄imā in aciē pugnāns vulnerātus est. 4. Ad nostrōs militēs castra oppugnantis auxilium missum erat. 5. Quaedam mulierēs in oppidō relictae sē dēfendere cōstituērunt. 6. Pars hostium

adventū Caesaris commōta sōlis occāsū discessit. 7. In hibernis  
reductōs mīlitēs relinquébat. 8. Multitūdō servōrum territa ex  
urbe fugiēbat. 9. Posterō diē castra mōvērunt.

**448.** 1. A certain man, while resisting, was wounded by an enemy. 2. Although wounded, they fought so bravely that they could not be captured. 3. Since he was disturbed by the difficulties of the march, he decided to lead back his legions. 4. Those horsemen who were sent ahead resisted the Gauls long and bravely. 5. If asked concerning your plans, I shall say nothing. 6. The leaders will be captured and sent to Italy.



GALLI CAPTI IN CASTRA REDUCUNTUR

## LESSON LXVI

### READING LESSON

### DICTA ANTIQUORUM

449. 1. Lacaena filio in proelium properanti dixit, "Aut in scūtō aut cum scūtō."

2. Leōnidās militi nūntianti, "Hostēs nōbis propinquī sunt," respondit, "Etiam nōs hostibus propinquī sumus."

3. Thalēs interrogātus, "Quid hominibus commūne est?" respondit, "Spēs; hanc enim etiam illi habent qui nihil aliud habent."

4. Āgis mūrōs firmōs altōsque Corinthī spectāns rogāvit, "Quārum mulierum haec urbs est?"

5. Aristotelem quidam rogāvit, "Quid est amīctia?" Ille respondit, "Ūnus animus in duōbus corporibus."

6. Cicerō dixit, "Nōn potest exercitū is continēre imperātor qui sē ipse nōn continet."

### 450.

### VOCABULARY

rēgnūm, -ī, n., kingdom (*inter-regnum*)

addūcō, addūcere, addūxi, adduc-tus, lead to, influence (*adduce*)

obtineō, obtinēre, obtinui, obten-

tus, possess, occupy, hold (*obtain*)

suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpi, sus-cep-tus, take up, undertake (*susceptible*)

### ORGETORIX AND THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 440)

451. His rēbus adducti et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti Helvētiī cōstituērunt carrōrum maximum numerum emere, cōpiam frūmentī parāre, pācēm et amīctiam cum proximis civi-ātibus cōfirmāre. Orgetorīx interim lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs

suscēpit. In eō itinere persuāsit Casticō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquaniis multōs anños obtinuerat et ā senātū populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitātē suā occupāret. Cuidam aliī pīncipi persuāsit ut idem faceret. Ōrātiōne Orgetorīgis adductī hī pīncipēs inter sē obsidēs dant, et tōtam Galliam sēsē occupāre posse spērant. Helvētiī autem hoc cōnsilium nōn probāvērunt. Itaque multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs coēgērunt ut cōnsilia Orgetorīgis prohibērent. Sed eō tempore Orgetorīx subitō mortuus est (*died*).



ROMAN STYLES OF HAIRDRESSING

## LESSON LXVII

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

#### 452. The Ablative Absolute.

1. *Cōnsul, castris mūnitīs, Rōmam vēnit, with the camp fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *Caesare dūcente, semper vincimus, with Cāesar leading, we always conquer.*
3. *Caesare duce, vincēmus, with Cāesar as leader, we shall conquer.*

a. Observe that the ablatives in these sentences are so loosely connected with the rest of the sentence that they are grammatically independent. Because of its loose connection with the sentence this usage of the ablative is known as the *Ablative Absolute* (*ab + solvō*).

#### 453. How to translate the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute is usually translated, not as above, but by a clause : thus,

1. *When (because, although, if) the camp had been fortified, the consul came to Rome.*
2. *When (because, although, if) Cāesar is leading, we always conquer.*
3. *When (because, although, if) Cāesar is leader, we shall conquer.*

The method of translation in any particular sentence must be determined by asking which kind of clause best expresses the thought of the sentence as a whole.

#### 454. The Formation of the Ablative Absolute. The ablative absolute may be formed by a noun or pronoun with a participle (as in 452, 1 and 2); or by a noun or pronoun with another noun or an adjective (as in 452, 3). The present active and perfect passive participles are used in this construction. Since the verb *sum* has no present participle, a participle is not expressed when the ablative absolute is formed as it is in 452, 3 : *Caesare duce, Cāesar (being) leader.*

a. An ablative absolute containing a perfect passive participle expresses an action that occurred before the action expressed by the main verb of the sentence; one containing a present participle expresses an action occurring at the same time as that of the main verb.

b. The Latin perfect participle is not found in the active voice. Accordingly such a sentence as *Cæsar, having defeated the Gauls, returned to Rome* has to be recast into the form *Cæsar, the Gauls having been defeated, returned to Rome, Caesar, Gallis victis, Rōmam rediit.*

c. The noun of the ablative absolute is always a different person or thing from the subject or object of the sentence.

**455. Rule for the Ablative Absolute.** *The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express time, cause, concession, condition, or other relations.*

### 456.

### VOCABULARY

dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f., surrender  
ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, f., sally, sortie  
(eruption)

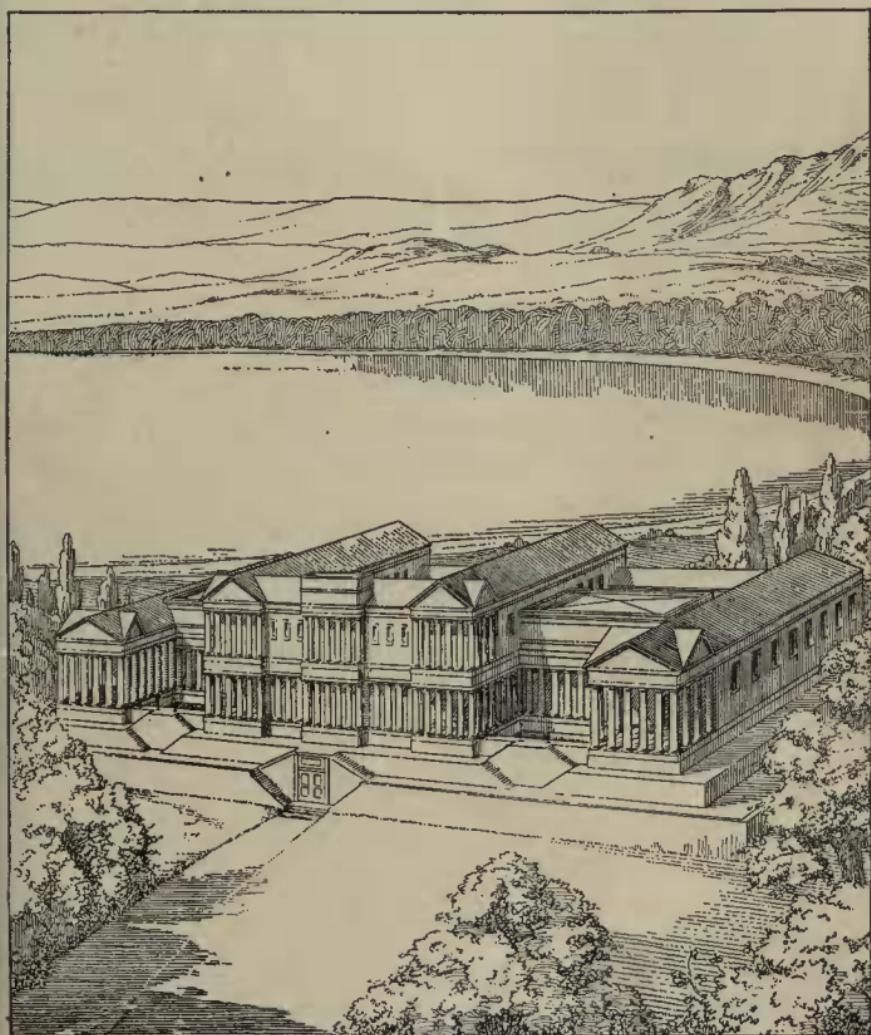
medius, -a, -um, middle of  
(medium)

rīpa, -ae, f., bank (riparian)

### EXERCISES

**457.** 1. Hostibus victis, per mediam prōvinciam iter facere cōstituit. 2. Cāesare cōsule, cum Gallis longum erat bellum. 3. Oppidō quōdam expugnātō, castra in rīpis ipsīs huius flūminis posuērunt. 4. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mīsērunt. 5. Hī rēbus repertīs, omnēs bellō studēbant. 6. Hoc oppidum, paucīs dēfendentibus, Rōmānī capere nōn potuērunt. 7. Captīvīs in dēditiōnem acceptīs, dux subsidiō castrīs trēs cohortēs reliquit. 8. Hī captīvī eīdem fortissimē pugnantēs captī erant. 9. Quis praefuit equitibus qui imperātōrī auxiliō missī sunt? 10. Urbe mūnitā, cīvēs nōn iam terrēbāntur.

458. 1. When he had heard these words, he was much disturbed. 2. When the city had been taken, the soldiers set the prisoners free. 3. The enemy resisted our men all day. 4. If Labienus is leader, our army will be able to injure the enemy. 5. Labienus, having captured the mountain, was waiting for our men. 6. Although a sortie was made, they were not able to approach our first line.



A COUNTRY VILLA

## LESSON LXVIII

### THE GERUND · THE IRREGULAR VERB *EO*

**459. The Gerund.** The gerund (xxxii, *c*) is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular. It is formed by adding *-ndī*, *-ndō*, *-ndum*, *-ndō* to the present stem, with certain changes in quantity and spelling. Learn the gerunds of the model verbs (658–662).

**460. What the Gerund is.** The gerund is like the English verbal noun in *-ing*, as, *loving*; but it lacks a nominative case. For the nominative the infinitive is used.

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>amāre, to love, loving</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>amandī, of loving</i>      |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>amandō, for loving</i>     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>amandum, loving</i>        |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>amandō, by loving</i>      |

**461. The Uses of the Gerund.** The gerund is used in the various constructions of nouns. Since it is a *verbal* noun, it may have a direct or an indirect object: as, *vincendō hostēs by overcoming the enemy*; *resistendō hostibus, by resisting the enemy*. Also observe the following:

1. *Ad pugnandum vēnērunt, they came for fighting, for the purpose of fighting, to fight.*
2. *Pugnandi causā vēnērunt, they came for the sake of fighting to fight.*

a. Observe that the accusative of the gerund with *ad*, or the genitive of the gerund with *causā*, is used to express purpose. *Causā* when so used follows its genitive. This method of expressing purpose is used in brief statements.

**462. The Irregular Verb *Eō*.** Learn the principal parts and conjugation of the irregular verb *eō* (667).

a. Observe where *i* (the root of *eō*) is changed to *e* in the present indicative and subjunctive, in the present participle, and in the gerund. In the perfect system *-v-* is regularly dropped. For the declension of the present participle see 645.

### 463.

### VOCABULARY

*causā*, *abl. of causa*, for the sake  
of, to

*nōmen*, *nōminis*, *n.*, name (*nomi-*  
*nate*)

*spatium*, *spati*, *n.*, room, space,  
time, opportunity (*spacious*)

*vallum*, *-i*, *n.*, rampart, earth-  
works (*interval*)

*accēdō*, *accēdere*, *accessī*, *accessū-*  
*rus*, come near, approach (*ac-*  
*cession*)

*coniciō*, *conicere*, *coniēcī*, *coniectus*,  
throw, hurl (*conjecture*)

*eō*, *ire*, *ii* (*ivī*), *itūrus*, go (*initial*)  
*ōrō*, *ōrāre*, *ōrāvī*, *ōrātus*, speak,  
plead, beg (*orator*)

### EXERCISES

**464.** 1. *It, īmus, ībant.* 2. *Īre, īsse, ībunt.* 3. *Eunt, ierant, iiit.*  
4. *Difficultātem nāvigandī nūntiāvit.* 5. *Haec est causa mit-*  
*tendi.* 6. *Litterās mittendī causā vēnit.* 7. *Diligentia in agendō*   
*ducī placet.* 8. *Spatium pugnandī nōn datum est.* 9. *Caesar*  
*finem ūrandī fēcit.* 10. *Spatium pīla in hostīs coniciendi breve*  
*suit.* 11. *Accessērunt ad dicendum.* 12. *Vōbiscum ībit ut*  
*nōmina eōrum roget.* 13. *Voluit cognōscere quō īssent.* 14. *La-*  
*biēnus imperāvit ut castra vällō mūnirentur.*

**465.** 1. You are going, they were going, he had gone. 2. We  
shall go, you will have gone. 3. Whither have they gone?  
4. He persuades them to go. 5. He ordered them to go.  
6. They came near for the sake of seeking peace. 7. Time  
was not given for pleading. 8. They went toward the sea for  
the purpose of sailing. 9. That day they went three miles, and  
at sunset pitched camp.

## NINTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LXI-LXVIII

**466.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|          |             |           |            |          |
|----------|-------------|-----------|------------|----------|
| accēdō   | ēruptiō     | noceō     | praesidium | sōl      |
| addūcō   | faveō       | nōlō      | praestō    | spatiū   |
| aliquis  | hiberna     | nōmen     | praesum    | studeō   |
| causā    | mālō        | obtineō   | quīdam     | subsidiū |
| commoveō | medius      | occāsus   | quisquam   | supersum |
| coniciō  | moveō       | occurrō   | quisque    | suscipiō |
| crēdō    | mulier      | ōrō       | redūcō     | ūsus     |
| dēditiō  | mūnītiō     | persuādeō | rēgnūm     | vällum   |
| dēsum    | neque . . . | placeō    | resistō    | volō     |
| eō       | neque       | praeficiō | rīpa       |          |

**467.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                       |              |                                  |
|-----------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| neither . . . nor     | kingdom      | use, benefit, advantage          |
| be unwilling          | bank         | each, each one, every, every one |
| be left over, survive | throw, hurl  | possess, occupy, hold            |
| be willing, wish      | favor        | disturb, move, arouse            |
| resist, oppose        | sun          | surpass, be superior to          |
| believe, trust        | surrender    | rampart, earthworks              |
| place in command      | move         | be at the head of, command       |
| for the sake of, to   | harm, injure | some, some one, any, any one     |
| be eager for, desire  | help, aid    | be more willing, prefer          |
| speak, plead, beg     | middle of    | defense, protection, guard       |
| sally, sortie         | name         | be lacking, be wanting, fail     |
| lead to, influence    | woman        | come near, approach              |
| winter quarters       | persuade     | please, be pleasing to           |
| take up, undertake    | lead back    | room, space, time, opportunity   |
| run towards, meet     | setting      | a certain one, a certain         |
| any one (at all)      | go           | fortification, defense           |

**468.** Decline the nouns in 466. Decline the indefinite pronouns. Give the principal parts of each verb. Give the participles of each verb. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Conjugate **volō**, **nōlō**, and **eō** throughout.

**469.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 466. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**470.** Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Dative with compounds                  | 5. Participles as the equivalent<br>of certain clauses |
| 2. Dative of purpose                      | 6. Ablative absolute                                   |
| 3. Dative of reference                    | 7. Gerund  |
| 4. Dative with special intransitive verbs |  |



WALL DECORATION OF A ROMAN HOUSE

## LESSON LXIX

### THE GERUNDIVE · THE IRREGULAR VERB *FERO*

471. **The Gerundive.** The future passive participle (441, 444) is more commonly called the *Gerundive*. It is a verbal adjective, and must be distinguished from the gerund, which is a verbal noun. The gerund, being a noun, may be used alone or with an object; but the gerundive, being an adjective, must agree with a noun.

#### 472. The Gerundive used in Place of the Gerund.

1. *Pācem petendi causā vēnērunt*, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.
2. *Pācis petendae causā vēnērunt*, they came for the purpose of seeking peace.

a. Observe that the Latin sentences have the same meaning, and that 1 contains a gerund, *petendī*, with an object, *pācem*; while 2 contains a gerundive, *petendae*, in agreement with *pācis*. Instead of a gerund with an object, the Romans much preferred the gerundive construction, except occasionally in the genitive and in the ablative without a preposition.

473. **The Gerundive used in the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** The gerundive is also used with forms of *sum* as a predicate adjective. This is known as the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*. For a synopsis see 670.

1. *Miles laudandus est*, the soldier is to be praised, must be praised, ought to be praised.
2. *Cornēlia laudanda erat*, Cornelia was to be praised, ought to have been praised, needed to be praised.

a. Observe that these sentences express necessity. Observe, too, the methods of translation.

**474. The Irregular Verb *Ferō*.** Learn the principal parts and the conjugation of the irregular verb *ferō* (666).

**475.****VOCABULARY**

*libertās, libertatis, f.*, freedom  
(*liberty*)

*signum, -ī, n.*, sign, signal (*signify*)

*vis, vis, f.*, force, strength, power,  
might (642) (*violence*)

*augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, in-*  
*crease, enlarge (auction)*

*conveniō, convenire, convēnī, con-*  
*ventūrus, come together, as-*  
*semble (convene)*

*ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, bring;*  
*report, say (transfer)*

**EXERCISES**

**476.** 1. Fert, ferimus, ferent. 2. Ferre, feret, tulisse. 3. Rūr-sus veniunt ut auxilium ferant. 4. Tulerant, lātus esse. 5. In petendā pāce. 6. Libertatis petendae causā. 7. Viribus augen-dis. 8. Pontis faciendi. 9. Legiō ad bellum gerendum sē parat. 10. Multī convēnērunt urbis novae videndae causā. 11. Signum dandum erat. 12. Signō datō, mīlitēs impetum summā celeritātē fēcērunt. 13. Omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. 14. Putāmus bellum parandum esse. 15. Ad pīla conienda tempus dēfuit. 16. Arma in hiberna ferenda sunt.

**477.** 1. You are bearing, they bear, he had borne. 2. You have borne, they were bearing, by bearing. 3. Help was being brought. 4. They said that they should bring the shields. 5. Of seeing the town. 6. For the sake of drawing up a line of battle. 7. By carrying on war. 8. In laying waste the fields. 9. The strength of the allies is being increased daily. 10. The force of the enemy must be borne. 11. The cohort must be led back with speed. 12. A lieutenant ought to have been put in command of these troops.

## LESSON LXX

### READING LESSON

**478.**

#### VOCABULARY

mors, mortis *f.*, death (*mortality*)  
 privātus, -a, -um, private, personal  
 (*private*)  
 vadum, -i, *n.*, ford, shoal  
 vel . . . vel, *conj.*, either . . . or  
 exeō, exire, exiī, exitūrus, go out,  
 go forth (*exit*)  
 incendō, incendere, incendī, incēn-  
 sus, burn, kindle, excite (*in-  
 cendiary*)

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus,  
 begin (*incipient*)  
 pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, sub-  
 due, pacify  
 permittō, permittere, permīsī, per-  
 missus, allow, suffer, give up  
 (*permission*)  
 pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, —  
 extend, pertain to (*pertinent*)  
 trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsi-  
 tus, go across, cross (*transit*)

### THE HELVETIANS LEAVE THEIR TERRITORY

**479.** Post Orgetorīgis mortem tamen Helvētiī id quod cōn-  
 stituerant facere incēpērunt, ut ē finibus suis exīrent. Ubi iam  
 sē ad eam rem parātōs esse putāvērunt, oppida sua omnia et  
 vicōs et privāta aedificia incendērunt. Frūmentum et cibum  
 sibi quemque domō ferre iussērunt. Persuāsērunt quibusdam  
 civitātibus fīnitimīs ut oppidīs suis vicīsque incēnsis cum eis  
 exīrent.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre po-  
 terant: unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter monter  
 Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum; mōns autem altissimus impendē-  
 bat, ut facile pauci prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvincian  
 Rōmānam, multō facilius, quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et  
 Allobrogum, qui nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nō  
 nūllis locīs vadō trānsītur.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogib⁹ sēsē vel persuāsūrōs esse vel vī coāctūrōs esse spērābant ut per suōs finēs eōs īre permetterent. Omnibus rēbus parātis diem conveniēdī dicunt.

Caesar per nūntiōs audīvit Helvētiōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere coepisse. Statim properāvit Rōmā et quam maximis potuit. itineribus<sup>1</sup> in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervēnit. Prōvinciae tōti quam maximum potuit mīlitum numerum imperāvit (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genāvam iussit rescindī. Ubi dē eius adventū Helvētiī cognōvērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.

<sup>1</sup> quam maximis (potuit) itineribus, by as long journeys as possible. Sometimes Cæsar traveled a hundred miles a day.



DINING COUCHES

## LESSON LXXI

### THE ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION · DEONENT VERBS

#### 480. The Ablative of Specification.

Gallōs virtūte superant, *they surpass the Gauls in courage.*

a. Observe that the ablative *virtūte* tells in what respect the Gauls are surpassed. This usage is known as the *Ablative of Specification*.

481. *Rule for the Ablative of Specification.* *The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true.*

482. **Deponent Verbs.** Deponent verbs are verbs which have passive forms with active meanings. They occur in each of the regular conjugations, and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: first conjugation, -ārī; second, -ērī; third, -ī; fourth, -īrī. Learn the principal parts, the meanings, and the conjugation of the deponent verbs in 669.

483. **The Active Forms and the Participles of Deponent Verbs.** A deponent verb has the following active forms:

*Fut. Infin.* hortātūrus esse                  *Gerund*      hortandi, etc.

It has the participles of both voices :

|              |                                  |                  |                               |
|--------------|----------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | hortāns, <i>urging</i>           | <i>Perfect</i>   | hortātus, <i>having urged</i> |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | hortātūrus, <i>about to urge</i> | <i>Gerundive</i> | hortandus, <i>to be urged</i> |

a. Observe that the perfect participle of deponent verbs is active in meaning; the gerundive is passive. As the perfect participle is active in meaning, an ablative absolute (454, b) is seldom necessary with this participle; instead, the construction is the same as in English: as,

Hortātus militēs signum dedit, *having encouraged the soldiers he gave the signal, or, when he had encouraged, etc.*

## 484.

## VOCABULARY

|   |   |
|---|---|
| cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum, try, attempt ( <i>conative</i> )                | proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out, march                        |
| experior, experiri, expertus sum, test, make trial of ( <i>experience</i> ) | prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum, go forward, advance ( <i>progress</i> ) |
| hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum, urge, entreat ( <i>exhortation</i> )         | sequor, sequi, secūtus sum, follow ( <i>sequence</i> )                        |
| polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum, promise, offer                        | vereor, verēri, veritus sum, fear, respect ( <i>reverence</i> )               |

## EXERCISES

485. 1. Experiēbāmī, cōnāmur, hortāberis. 2. Pollicēbantur, experiuntur, veritī erāmus. 3. Ut sequātur, verēns, sequendō. 4. Proficiscētūr, sequendi causā, secūtūrus esse. 5. Veritī sunt, secūtūrus, prōgredientur. 6. Cōnātūr, expertus esse, ad prōgrediendum. 7. Verēmī mortem. 8. Caesar hortātūs est militēs ut ducēs sequerentur. 9. Illō diē exercitus proficiscēbātūr. 10. Ipse cum celeritāte eōs sequētūr. 11. His persuāserant ut eandem fortūnam belli experīrentur. 12. Nātiōnēs Germāniae subsidium pollicitae erant. 13. Per finēs nostrōs ire cōnantur. 14. Puer patri virtūte similis erat.

486. 1. He was urging, they urge, they will follow. 2. She has followed, he fears, to attempt. 3. They had followed many miles. 4. You will set out, they will advance, going to follow. 5. Having followed, to have advanced. 6. Cæsar ordered the same two legions to set out. 7. They do not follow the tribune. 8. They will set out at daybreak in order to follow the enemy. 9. Although they promised grain, they were unable to bring it because of a lack of carts. 10. The poor soldiers are tired [in] body, but they surpass the enemy [in] speed.

## LESSON LXXII

### TEMPORAL CLAUSES WITH **CUM** · THE IRREGULAR VERB **FIO**

**487.** Temporal Clauses with *Cum*. The Latin conjunction *cum*, *-when*, *while*, introduces temporal clauses (xx, e).

1. *Cum Caesar in Italiā erat, bellum in Galliā ortum est, when (while) Cæsar was in Italy, a war began in Gaul.*
2. *Caesar, cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam contendit, Cæsar, when this had been reported, hastened into Gaul.*
3. *Cum nūntius pervēnerit, Caesar prōgrediētur, when the messenger arrives, Cæsar will advance.*

a. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 1 *fixes the time* at which the war began, and that its verb is in the indicative. Observe that the clause in sentence 2 *describes the circumstances* under which Cæsar was impelled to hasten into Gaul, and that its verb is in the subjunctive. Observe that the temporal clause in sentence 3 *refers to future time*, and that its verb is in the indicative.

**488.** Rule for Temporal Clauses with *Cum*. *Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by cum, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action. The indicative is used in temporal clauses introduced by cum referring to present or to future time.*

**489.** The Irregular Verb *Fio*. The verb *faciō*, which you have frequently used in the active voice, forms its present system in the passive from the irregular verb *fio*. Learn the principal parts of *fio* and its conjugation (668). Review the complete inflection of *faciō*. The passive voice of the compounds of *faciō* is inflected regularly.

## 490.

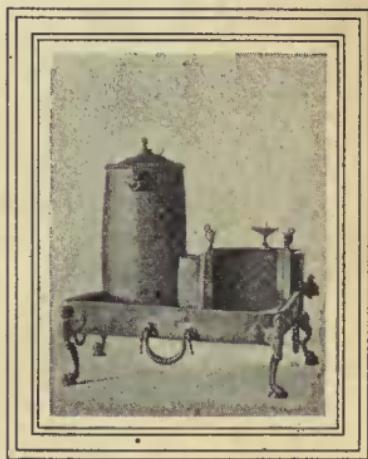
## VOCABULARY

**certus**, -a, -um, certain, sure  
**cum**, *conj.*, when, while  
**frumentarius**, -a, -um, of grain;  
 rēs frumentaria, grain supply,  
 provisions  
**nē . . . quidem**, not even (*the word*  
*or words between nē and quidem*  
*are emphasized*)

**paulō**, *adv.*, a little  
**fiō**, fierī, factus sum, be made,  
 be done, happen, *become*  
**certiōrem facere** (to make more  
 sure), to inform  
**certior fierī** (to be made more  
 sure), to be informed

## EXERCISES

491. 1. Fit, fiunt. 2. Fierī, factus esse. 3. Fiet, fiēbant,  
 fiō. 4. Fiētis, fiēmus. 5. Eum certiōrem fēcimus. 6. Certior  
 fit dē his rēbus. 7. Galli, cum oppi-  
 dum cēpissent, omnēs captivōs inter-  
 fēcērunt. 8. Cum dē inopiā rei  
 frumentariae certior factus esset, in  
 ulteriōrem partem prōvinciae paulō  
 ante medianam noctem profectus est.  
 9. Nē amīci quidem dē adventū  
 tuō certiōrēs fient. 10. Cum proeli-  
 finem nox fēcisset, quidam ad  
 Caesarem vēnit. 11. Cum equitātum  
 hostium vīdērunt, nostri in eōs im-  
 petum fēcērunt.



A ROMAN STOVE

492. 1. You are becoming, they become. 2. It happens, to  
 be made, it will be made. 3. When you come, you will learn  
 this. 4. They have been informed. 5. I shall inform them.  
 6. When he was not able to persuade them, he went to the  
 general. 7. Not even the general had been informed about  
 this. 8. When the lieutenant had exhorted the soldiers, he  
 gave the signal for battle.

## LESSON LXXIII

### READING LESSON

**493.**

#### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| altitūdō, altitūdinis, <i>f.</i> , height<br><i>(altitude)</i>           | existimō, existimāre, existimāvī,<br>existimātus, think, judge, consider<br><i>(estimate)</i>       |
| castellum, -i, <i>n.</i> , fort, redoubt<br><i>(castle)</i>              | pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat,<br>drive, defeat <i>(repel)</i>                               |
| cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis, <i>f.</i> , custom                            | perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus,<br>accomplish, finish <i>(perfect)</i>                     |
| facultās, facultatis, <i>f.</i> , power, opportunity<br><i>(faculty)</i> | temperō, temperāre, temperāvī,<br>temperātus, control, refrain,<br>abstain from <i>(temperance)</i> |
| fossa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , ditch, trench <i>(fosse)</i>                     |   |

#### CÆSAR REFUSES THE HELVETIANS PERMISSION TO GO THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

**494.** Cum lēgātī Helvētiōrum rogāvissent ut per prōvinciam ire permitterentur, Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat cōsulem Rōmānum interfectum (*esse*)<sup>1</sup> ab Helvētiis et exercitum eius pulsum (*esse*) et sub iugum missum (*esse*), concēdendum (*esse*) nōn putābat; neque Helvētiōs, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciendī, temperatūrōs ab iniūriā existimābat. Tamen, ut spatium militum cōgendōrum, quōs imperāverat, esset, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad conloquium dictūrum.

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque qui ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum fluit, ad montem Iūram, qui finis Sēquanōrum ab-

<sup>1</sup> Frequently *esse* is omitted in Latin infinitive forms. From which infinitives in this lesson is it omitted?

Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum xviiiī mūrum in altitūdinem pedum xvi fossamque perdūxit. Eō opere perfectō praeſidia conlocāvit, castella mūnīvit, ut facilius eōs prohibēre posset.

Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, dixit sē propter cōsuētūdinem populi Rōmānī iter nūlli per prōvinciam dare posse ; et eōs prohibitūrum ostendit.



ROMAN ARMY CROSSING A BRIDGE OF BOATS

## LESSON LXXIV

### SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT INTRODUCED BY QUOD THE INDICATIVE IN ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

#### 495. Substantive Clauses of Fact with *Quod*.

*Quod eum laudās, mihi grātum est, the fact that you praise him is pleasing to me.*

a. Observe that the clause *quod eum laudās* is the subject of *est*. Such clauses, which should be translated by *that* or *the fact that*, are called *Quod Clauses of Fact*, and have their verb in the indicative. They are found as the subject of a verb or in apposition with some word.

#### 496. Rule for Substantive Clauses of Fact. *The indicative is used with quod in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact.*

#### 497. Adverbial Clauses with the Verb in the Indicative.

1. *Ibunt quā iter facillimum est, they will go where the way is easiest.*
2. *Quaedam nātiōnēs Galliae, ut diximus, fortissimae erant, certain nations of Gaul, as we said, were very brave.*

a. Observe that the clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* are adverbial in nature, and that their verbs are in the indicative. *Quā* and *ut*, so used, are adverbs.

#### 498.

#### VOCABULARY

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>condiciō, condiciōnis, f., terms, condition (condition)</i> | <i>cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, gather together, force, compel (with acc. and infin., or a substantive clause of purpose) (cogent)</i> |
| <i>lātitūdō, lātitūdinis, f., breadth, width (latitude)</i>    | <i>ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out, go forth (egress)</i>  |
| <i>lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., mission, embassy (legation)</i>    | <i>pateō, patēre, patui, —, lie open, extend, spread (patent)</i>   |
| <i>numerus, -ī, m., number (numerical)</i>                     |   |

## EXERCISES

**499.** 1. Inopia commeātūs hostēs ēgredi coēgit. 2. Quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per montēs erat, cum legiōnibus ire contendit. 3. Quod maiōrēs manūs hostium coāctae sunt, ducem nōn perturbāvit. 4. Una rēs Caesarem impedivit, quod lātitūdinem flūminis nōn cognōverat. 5. Eōrum agrī in lātitūdinem centum et sex mīlia passuum patēbant. 6. Quod Galli vīcōs nostrōs vāstābant, Caesari persuāsit ut pīncipēs eōrum in conloquium convocāret. 7. In Italiam contendit ut magnum numerum equitum et peditum cōgeret. 8. Quod condiciōnēs pācis petunt, nūntiandum est. 9. Omnia paranda sunt ad ēgrediendum. 10. Ad cognōscendās condiciōnēs dēditiōnis, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, lēgatiōnēs ab proximīs nātiōnibus missae erant.

**500.** 1. Bands of horsemen must be gathered together. 2. The fact that a great number of men are now going forth from the villages to make war disturbs us. 3. In the conference he said that the terms of surrender would be pleasing to him. 4. A great number of scouts went forth from the camp where the width of the river was least. 5. Do you know how many miles the lake extends? 6. The fact that the enemy were greatly confused was of help to us in attacking the town.



ROMAN LAMPS

## LESSON LXXV

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS

#### 501. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

1. **Dicunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolant, ex finibus ēgredī,** they say that the Germans, who live across the Rhine, are going forth from their territories.
  2. **Dixērunt Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolerent, ex finibus ēgredi,** they said that the Germans, who lived across the Rhine, were going forth from their territories.
- a. Observe that in each sentence there is an indirect statement containing a subordinate clause. The direct statement of both sentences is the same, **Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex finibus ēgrediuntur.** Observe that the subordinate verbs are in the subjunctive in an indirect statement, and that the tense is changed according to the rule for the sequence of tenses (348–351).

#### 502. Rule for Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive. The tense of the subjunctive is decided by the rule for the sequence of tenses after the verb of saying, knowing, etc.

- a. Subordinate verbs that were in the subjunctive before they were indirectly quoted of course remain in the subjunctive.

#### 503.

#### VOCABULARY

**barbarus, -ī, m., barbarian (*bar-barous*)**

**celeriter, adv., swiftly (*celerity*)**

**initium, ini'tī, n., beginning (*initial*)**

**satis, adv. and n. noun, enough, sufficiently (*satisfy*)**

**cōsuēscō, cōsuēscere, cōsuēvi,  
cōsuētus, become accustomed**

**moror, morārī, morātus sum, hinder, delay (*moratorium*)**

**revertō, revertere, revertī, reversus  
(or, in the present system, re-  
vertor, deponent), turn back, re-  
turn (*revert*)**

## EXERCISES

504. 1. Caesar pollicētur sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium bellī faciant. 2. Caesar pollicitus est sē celeriter reversūrum esse quod barbarī initium bellī facerent. 3. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt hostēs vīcōs quōs oppugnāvissent nōn cēpissem. 4. Per captīvōs cognōscit hostēs, quod agri et vīci omnēs vāstāti sint, nūllum frūmentum habēre. 5. Putō cōnsilia quae mihi dare cōnsuēveris bona fuisse. 6. Aliquis dīcit dolōrem hostiū tantum esse ut in castrīs Rōmānīs audiātur. 7. Barbarī putāvērunt Cæsarem, qui in Galliam citeriōrem quōque annō revertī cōsuēvisset, diūtius nōn morātūrum esse. 8. Habēsne satis nāvium ad nāvigandum?

505. 1. They say that the legions which are spending the winter across the river will return. 2. A scout announced that Labienus, who had captured the town, was awaiting the coming of Cæsar. 3. I think that the enemy will go forth from our territories because they have not enough food. 4. We know that many nations which contended with the Romans have been conquered. 5. The barbarians, when they had delayed three days in front of the camp, sent an embassy to our general.



ROMAN PITCHERS

## TENTH REVIEW LESSON

## LESSONS LXIX-LXXV

**506.** Give the English meanings of the following words :

|            |              |                 |             |                 |
|------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| altitūdō   | conveniō     | hortor          | pācō        | rēs frūmentāria |
| augeō      | cum          | incendō         | pateō       | revertō         |
| barbarus   | ēgredior     | incipiō         | paulō       | satis           |
| castellum  | exeō         | initium         | pellō       | sequor          |
| celeriter  | existimō     | lātitūdō        | perficiō    | signum          |
| certus     | exerior      | lēgātiō         | permittō    | temperō         |
| cōgō       | facultās     | libertās        | pertineō    | trānseō         |
| condiciō   | ferō         | mōrō            | polliceor   | vadum           |
| cōnor      | fīō          | mōrs            | privātus    | vel . . . vel   |
| cōnsuēscō  | fossa        | nē . . . quidem | proficiscor | vereor          |
| cōnsuētūdō | frūmentārius | numerus         | prōgredior  | vīs             |

**507.** Give the Latin meanings of the following words :

|                                |                        |                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|
| test, make trial of            | promise, offer         | barbarian        |
| allow, suffer, give up         | terms, condition       | not even         |
| come together, assemble        | urge, entreat          | try, attempt     |
| enough, sufficiently           | either . . . or        | death            |
| accomplish, finish             | ditch, trench          | sign, signal     |
| bear, bring ; report, say      | go across, cross       | a little         |
| mission, embassy               | certain, sure          | height           |
| become accustomed              | fort, redoubt          | begin            |
| turn back, return              | breadth, width         | follow           |
| extend, pertain to             | private, personal      | swiftly          |
| lie open, extend, spread       | set out, march         | number           |
| control, refrain, abstain from | increase, enlarge      | hinder, delay    |
| power, opportunity             | fear, respect          | beginning        |
| be made, be done, happen       | burn, kindle, excite   | ford, shoal      |
| force, strength, power, might  | go forward, advance    | go out, go forth |
| gather together, force, compel | think, judge, consider | of grain         |
| beat, drive, defeat            | subdue, pacify         | freedom          |
| grain supply, provisions       | when, while            | custom           |

**508.** Decline each noun in 506. Conjugate each deponent verb throughout. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural. Give the infinitives and the participles of each verb. Conjugate **ferō** and **fiō** throughout.

**509.** Following the suggestions in 634, give English words derived from the Latin words in 506. Define these derivatives, and illustrate each by an English sentence.

**510.** Give the rule, if there is one, for the following constructions, and illustrate each by a sentence in Latin :

1. Gerundive with **ad** and with **causā**
2. Passive periphrastic conjugation
3. Ablative of specification
4. Temporal clauses with **cum**
5. Substantive clauses of fact with **quod**
6. Adverbial clauses with the verb in the indicative
7. Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse

**511.** Give Latin words suggested by the following English words :

|             |              |              |             |            |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| popular     | magnanimous  | petition     | prefect     | total      |
| temporal    | audible      | posterity    | depredation | fidelity   |
| real        | local        | intellect    | malefactor  | itinerary  |
| neutral     | habitable    | novelty      | humility    | science    |
| vulnerable  | lucid        | extremity    | longitude   | premium    |
| ultimate    | subterranean | solitude     | identity    | fortitude  |
| post mortem | numerous     | exhortation  | altitude    | egress     |
| versatile   | cognizant    | tenant       | deity       | ignite     |
| subsidiary  | innocent     | instruction  | factory     | satisfy    |
| nocturnal   | permanent    | magnitude    | postulate   | assimilate |
| impetuous   | alternate    | gladiator    | contention  | minimize   |
| final       | urban        | avocation    | mission     | nullify    |
| insular     | cogent       | multitude    | position    | intervene  |
| military    | marine       | pedestrian   | audacity    | contradict |
| hostile     | naval        | constitution | vicinity    | expatriate |

## SUMMARY

## THE USES OF NOUNS AND VERBS

512. From your study of the book to this point you are supposed to be familiar with the uses of nouns and verbs summarized below.

## USES OF NOUNS

*Nominative*

Subject, 27, 28

Predicate noun, 86, 87

*Genitive*

Possessive, 43, 44

Material, p. 79, note 1

Partitive, 308, 309

Objective, 380, 381

*Dative*

Indirect object, 56, 57

With adjectives, 110, 111

With compound verbs, 424, 425

Purpose, 426, 427

Reference, 426, 428

With special verbs, 432, 433

*Accusative*

Direct object, 32, 33

Place to which, 179, 180, 230

With prepositions, 193

Extent of time and space, 332,  
333

Subject of infinitive, 399

*Ablative*

Place where, 58, 59

Means, 121, 122

Manner, 128, 129

Accompaniment, 142, 143

Place from which, 177, 178, 230

Cause, 184, 185

With prepositions, 194

Time, 218, 219

Agent, 242, 243

Separation, 281, 282

Degree of difference, 320, 321

Absolute, 452-455

Specification, 480, 481

## 513.

## USES OF VERBS

*Indicative*

Main verb: Declaratory sentence

Main verb: Question

Subordinate verb: Causal clause with **quod**, 50, 51

Subordinate verb: Temporal clause with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate verb: Relative clause

Subordinate verb: Substantive clause of fact with **quod**, 495, 496

Subordinate verb: Adverbial clause with **quā** and **ut**, 497

*Subjunctive*

Purpose clause: Adverbial, 343, 344

Purpose clause: Substantive, 355, 356

Result clause: Adverbial, 357, 358

Indirect Question: Substantive, 372, 373

Temporal clause: with **cum**, 487, 488

Subordinate clause in indirect statements, 501, 502

*Infinitive*

Subject of another verb, 393

Complement of another verb, 394

Object of another verb, 398

Verb of an indirect statement, 401

*Participle*

As an adjective, 443

Ablative absolute, 452-455

Equivalent to a clause of time, concession, cause, condition, etc., 444, 445

*Gerund*

As a noun, 460

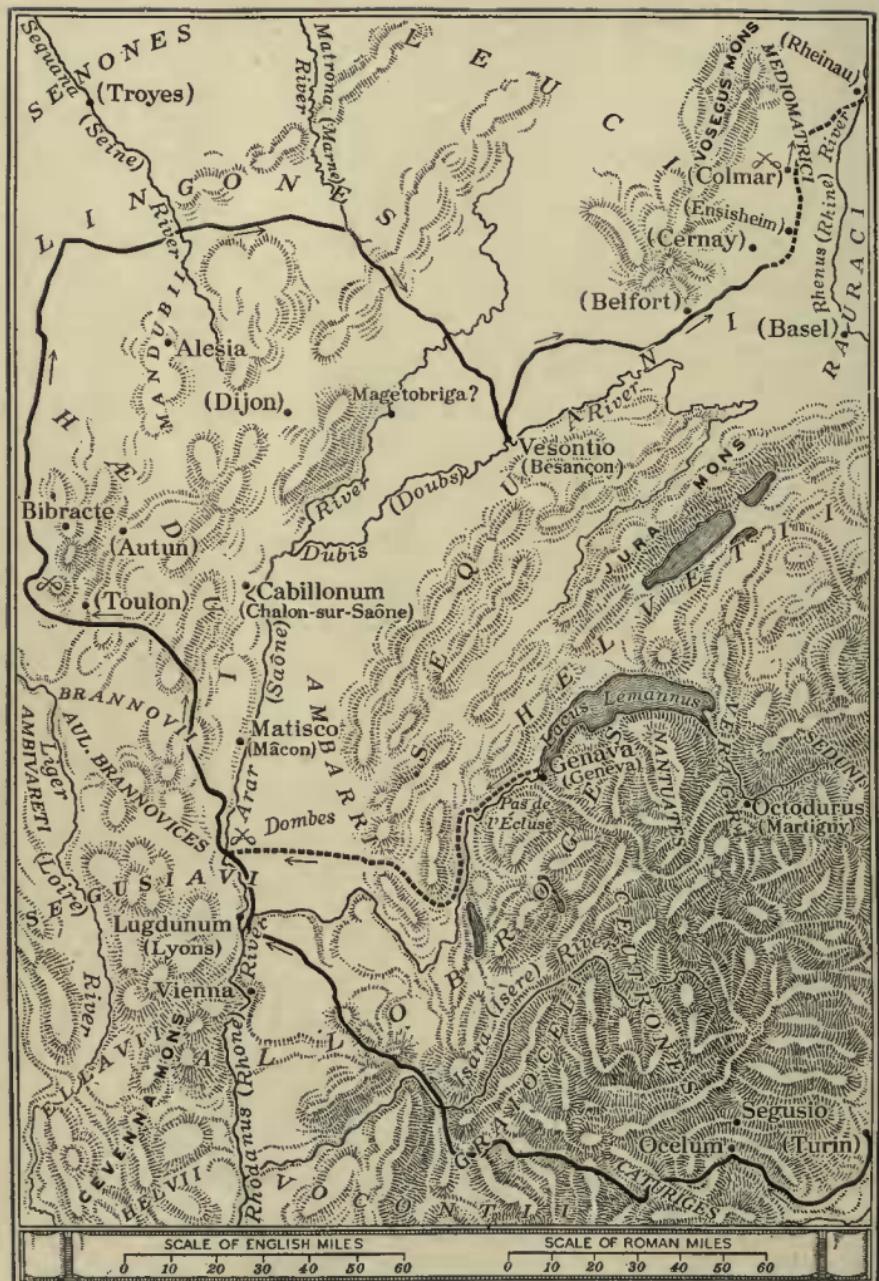
With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 461

*Gerundive*

With **ad** or **causā** to show purpose, 472

With forms of **sum** in the passive periphrastic conjugation, 473

Whenever in your translation of the subsequent Selections for Reading you meet a noun or a verb, at once ask yourself which of these uses the particular noun or verb has. Then translate accordingly.



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS

## SELECTIONS FOR READING

### CÆSAR: THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE HELVETIANS (CONTINUED FROM 494)

*The Helvetians are allowed to proceed through the land of the Sequani*

514. Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, vadīs Rhodani, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsire cōnātī sunt, 'sed mūnitiōne et tēlīs repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via. His cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mīsērunt. Dumnorīx apud Sēquānōs plūrimum poterat<sup>1</sup> et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrīmōnium dūxerat. Etiam cupiditāte rēgnī adductus est. Itaque Sēquānis persuāsit ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs īre permitterent et obsidēs inter sēsē darent: Sēquānī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibērent; Helvētiī, ut sine iniūriā trānsirent. 10

*Cæsar opposes this plan of the Helvetians and crosses the Rhone*

515. Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs cōnstituisse per agrum Sēquānorūm et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, qui nōn longē ā Tolōsatium finibūs aberant, quae cīvitās erat in prōvinciā. Inimicōs populī Rōmānī eam regiōnem incolere nōlēbat. Ob eam causam ei mūnitiōnī quam 15 fēcerat Labiēnum lēgātūm praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus<sup>2</sup> contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscrīpsit; et trēs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūxit, et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum his quīnque legiōnibūs īre contendit. Ibi quaedam cīvitātēs, locīs 20

<sup>1</sup> plūrimum poterat, had a great deal of influence.   <sup>2</sup> magnīs itineribus, by long journeys. See p. 185, note 1.

superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conatae sunt. Compluribus his proeliis victis,<sup>1</sup> ab Ocelo, quod est oppidum citerioris provinciae<sup>2</sup> extrimum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines,<sup>3</sup> ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum duxit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

*The Hædui and other tribes ask for Cæsar's help against the Helvetians*

516. Helvetti interim per fines Sèquanorum suas copias duxerant, et in Haeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agrós vastabant. Haeduī sē suaque<sup>3</sup> ab eis defendere nōn poterant.  
 10 Itaque legatōs ad Caesarem misérunt ut auxilium rogarent. Ei dixerunt paene in conspectū exercitū nostri agrós vastari, liberós in servitūtem abducī, oppida expugnari nōn dēbuisse.<sup>4</sup> Eodem tempore Ambarri Caesarem certiorem fecerunt sese, vastatis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere.  
 15 Item Allobrogēs, qui trans Rhodanum vicōs habebant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēperunt. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar diutius nōn exspectandum esse<sup>5</sup> constituit.

*Cæsar destroys one division of the Helvetians*

517. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Haeduorum et Sèquanorum in Rhodanum fluit. Id Helvetti transibant. Ubi per exploratōres Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs copiarum Helvettiōs id flumen tradūxisse, quartam fere partem citrā flumen Ararim relictam esse, dē tertia vigiliā cum legionibus tribus ē castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nōndum flumen transierat. Eōs impeditōs adgressus magnam  
 25 partem interfecit; reliquī sese fugae mandavérunt atque in proximās silvas abdidērunt.

<sup>1</sup> Translate **compluribus** with **proeliis** and **his** with **victis**.   <sup>2</sup> The Roman province on the Italian side of the Alps.   <sup>3</sup> *suaque, and their possessions.*  
<sup>4</sup> *vastari . . . nōn dēbuisse, ought not to have been etc.*   <sup>5</sup> *nōn exspectandum esse, that he must not wait.* The verb, however, is used impersonally.

*The Helvetians send an embassy to Cæsar*

**518.** Hoc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī<sup>1</sup> fēcit atque ita exercitum trādūxit. Helvētiī repentinō eius adventū commōti, cum illum ūnō diē flūmen trānsisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt; cuius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō princeps fuit. In conloquiō Caesar im- 5 perāvit ut obsidēs populō Rōmānō darentur. Dīvicō respondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuēuisse. Hoc respōnsō datō discessit..

*Cæsar follows the Helvetians*

**519.** Posterō diē castra ex eō locō mōvērunt. Idem fēcit Caesar, equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, 10 quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coēgerat, praemīsit, ut vidērent quās in partēs hostēs iter facerent. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen<sup>2</sup> secūti alienō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium commisērunt; et pauci dē nostrīs interfectī sunt. Quō proeliō dēlectāti Helvētiī, quod paucis 15 equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum vicerant, audācius in nostrōs impetum facere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, et ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum pīnum<sup>3</sup> quīnque mīlia passuum interessent.

20

*Cæsar prepares to attack the Helvetians*

**520.** Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus est hostēs mīlia passuum ab ipsiū castrīs octō abesse. Dē tertiā vigiliā Labiēnum lēgātūm cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibūs qui iter cognōverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iussit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs 25 contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mīsit. Cōnsidius cum explōrātōribus praemissus est.

<sup>1</sup> in Ararī, over the Arar.    <sup>2</sup> novissimum agmen, the rear.    <sup>3</sup> pīnum (agmen), vanguard.

*Considius becomes panic-stricken*

521. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris mille passuum abesset, neque (ut posteā ex captīvis intellēxit) aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō<sup>1</sup> ad eum properāvit. Dixit mon-  
5 tem quem Caesar ā Labiēnō occupārī voluisse ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicis armīs cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās ad proximum collem dūxit et aciem īstrūxit. Labiēnus inter-  
im, monte occupātō, nostrōs exspectābat. Mūltō diē<sup>2</sup> per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Hel-  
10 vētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi nūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōsuēverat intervällō, hostēs secūtus est et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra posuit.

*The battle between Cæsar and the Helvetians*

522. Posterō diē cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem  
15 dūxit equitātumque, ut sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem legiōnum quattuor īstrūxit. In summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximā aestātē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia<sup>3</sup> conlocāvit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum  
20 contulērunt; ipsi sub primam nostram aciem successērunt. Cae-  
sar hortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Militēs ē locō superiōre pilis missīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī hostēs ad montem, quī circiter mille passuum aberat, sē recipere coepērunt. Diū atque āriter pugnāvērunt. Diūtius  
25 cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut cooperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī<sup>4</sup> ad impedimenta et

<sup>1</sup> equō admissō, at full gallop. <sup>2</sup> multō diē, late in the day. <sup>3</sup> auxilia, auxiliaries. <sup>4</sup> alterī . . . alterī, one body . . . the other.

carrōs suōs iērunt. Ad multam noctem<sup>1</sup> etiam ad impedimenta contendērunt, quod Helvētiī prō vällō carrōs conlocāverant et ē locō superiore in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant. Tandem nostrī impedimenta et castra cēpērunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est.

5

*The Helvetians retreat and offer to surrender*

523. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt, eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt. In finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt. Nostrī autem propter vulnera militum eōs sequī nōn potuērunt. Caesar litterās nūntiōsque ad Lingonēs misit et imperāvit nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent. 10 Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs<sup>2</sup> prōiēcissent pācemque petissent atque eōs in eō locō quō tum erant suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruē- 15 runt. Eō cum Caesar pervēnisset, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Obsidibus armisque trāditīs, eōs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs in finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, 20 qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finib⁹ in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitim⁹ Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

<sup>1</sup> ad multam noctem, until late at night.    <sup>2</sup> ad pedēs, at his feet.



CARRI

## CÆSAR: THE STORY OF THE ADUATUCI

*The Aduatuci prepare to make a desperate resistance to Cæsar*

524. Aduatuci<sup>1</sup> cum omnibus cōpiis auxiliō<sup>2</sup> Nerviis veniēbant. Hāc pugnā<sup>3</sup> nūntiātā, ex itinere domum revertērunt; omnibus oppidīs castellīisque dēsertis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnitūm contulērunt. Quod<sup>4</sup> ex omnibus in circuitū partibus<sup>5</sup> altissimās rūpēs habēbat, sed ūnā ex parte aditus relinquēbātur. Quem locum duplīcī altissimō mūrō mūnierant et magna saxa in mūrō conlocābant.

*From their walls they taunt the Rōmans*

525. Prīmō adventū exercitūs nostri<sup>6</sup> crēbrās ēruptiōnēs faciēbant parvīsque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant. Posteā, 10 vällō crēbrīsque castellīs ā Rōmānis circummūnītī, oppidō<sup>7</sup> sē continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs<sup>8</sup> aggere exstrūctō, turrim<sup>9</sup> procul cōnstituī vidērunt, prīmū inridēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcībus<sup>10</sup> coepērunt, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō<sup>11</sup> īstruēbātur. Rogāvērunt quibus manibus aut quibus vīribus 15 tantulī<sup>12</sup> hominēs tantam turrim in mūrō<sup>13</sup> conlocāre possent.

<sup>1</sup> The Aduatuci lived about the river Mosa (Meuse), in what is now Belgium.  
<sup>2</sup> for an aid = to aid. What use of the case?   <sup>3</sup> The reference is to a battle in which the Nervii had been almost annihilated.   <sup>4</sup> this town.   <sup>5</sup> ex . . . partibus, from all parts in a circuit = all around.   <sup>6</sup> prīmō . . . nostri, as soon as our army got there. What literally?   <sup>7</sup> oppidō = in oppidō.   <sup>8</sup> vīneīs āctīs, the vineæ had been brought up. These vineæ were wooden sheds, open in front and rear, used to protect men who were building an agger, undermining a wall, or filling up a ditch in front of fortifications. They were about eight feet high, of like width, and double that length, covered with raw hides to protect them from being set on fire, and moved on wheels or rollers.   <sup>9</sup> turrim = turrem.   <sup>10</sup> increpitāre vōcībus, taunt. What literally?   <sup>11</sup> ab tantō spatiō, so far away.   <sup>12</sup> To the taller Belgians the Romans looked like "little chaps."   <sup>13</sup> The Aduatuci, unacquainted with Roman siege operations, supposed the Romans intended to hoist the tower upon their wall.

*But they lose confidence and offer to surrender*

526. Ubi turrim movērī<sup>1</sup> et appropinquāre mūris vīdērunt, novā speciē commōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce misērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī<sup>2</sup> sunt: Aduatucōs nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine auxiliō deōrum bellum gerere, quod tantās māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte movēre possent; itaque sē suaque 5 omnia eōrum potestātī permīssūrōs esse. Īnum<sup>3</sup> petēbant, nē Caesar sē armis privāret. Omnēs ferē fīnitimī erant inimicī, ā quibus sē dēfendere armis trāditīs nōn poterant. Mālēbant quamvis fortūnam<sup>4</sup> ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab inimicīs interfici.

*Cæsar says they must disarm, but promises them protection*

527. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Magis cōnsuētūdine suā<sup>5</sup> 10 quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem sē cōservātūrum esse; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi<sup>6</sup> armis trāditīs; id quod in<sup>7</sup> Nerviis fēcisset factūrum esse, et fīnitimī imperātūrum esse nē iniūriam eis īferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur sē factūrōs esse dīxērunt. Armōrum tanta multi- 15 tūdō dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iacta est ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem<sup>8</sup> acervi eōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter pars tertia, ut posteā cognōvit Caesar, cēlāta<sup>9</sup> atquē in oppidō retenta est.

*A brave dash for freedom, with a tragic ending*

528.. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī militēsque ex oppidō 20 exire iussit. Oppidānī, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs<sup>10</sup> praesidia dēductūrōs crēdiderant, tertiā vigiliā, quā facilis ad nostrās

<sup>1</sup> was moving. <sup>2</sup> From loquor. <sup>3</sup> one thing, namely, nē . . . privāret.

<sup>4</sup> quamvis fortūnam, any fate whatsoever. <sup>5</sup> according to his custom. <sup>6</sup> nisi is to be translated with the ablative absolute armis trāditīs, unless their arms were given up. <sup>7</sup> in the case of. <sup>8</sup> summam . . . altitūdinem, top. <sup>9</sup> Supply est. <sup>10</sup> nostrōs, our commanders.

mūnitionēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis subitō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut Caesar ante imperāverat, ignibus<sup>1</sup> signō factō, ex proximīs castellīs eō nostrī properāvērunt. Āriter hostēs pugnābant in extrēmā spē salūtis<sup>2</sup> 5 iniquō locō contrā nostrōs, qui ex vallō turribusque tēla iaciēbant. Interfectis ad<sup>3</sup> hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquōs in oppidum nostrī reiēcērunt. Posterō diē, intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit.<sup>4</sup> Ab eis qui ēmerant capitum<sup>5</sup> numerus ad eum relātus est mīlīum 10 quīnquāgintā trium.<sup>6</sup>

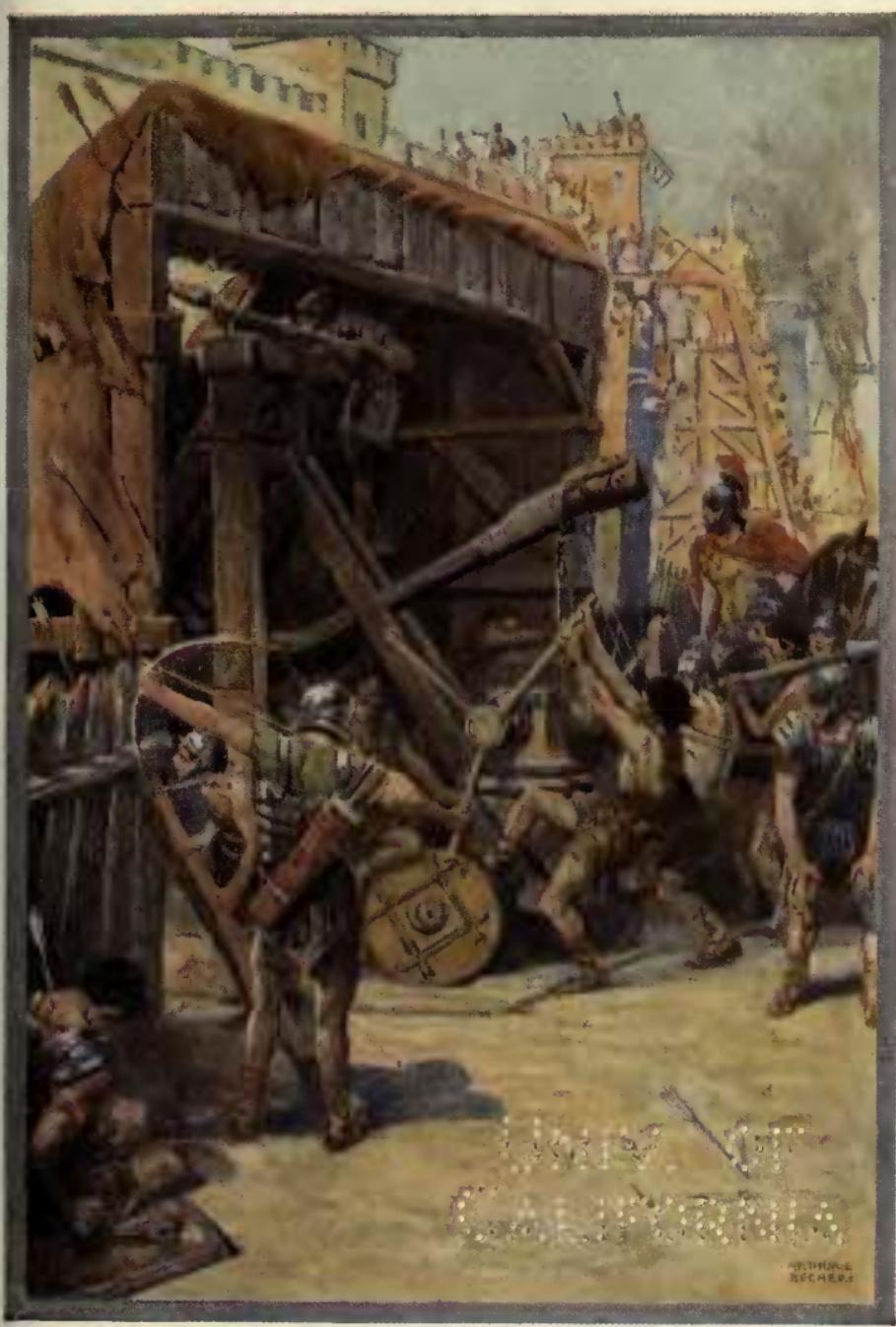
## STORIES OF HERCULES

*The infant Hercules*

529. Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, oīlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. Sed Iūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcmēnam nōn amāvit et Herculem, qui adhūc īfāns erat, interficere voluit. Mīsit igitur duo serpentī sae- 15 vissimōs, qui mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre dormiēbat. Nōn tamen in cūnis sed in scūtō magnō dormiēbant. Serpentēs iam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant. Itaque puerī ē somnō excitāti sunt.

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce auxilium petiit; at 20 Herculēs ipse parvīs manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eōrum magnā vī compressit. Hōc modō serpentēs ā puerō interficti sunt. Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōre auditō, marītum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et

<sup>1</sup> by fires. <sup>2</sup> in . . . salūtis, as their last chance of saving themselves. What literally? <sup>3</sup> about, an adverb. <sup>4</sup> sectiōnem . . . vēndidit, Cæsar sold the whole town (the people and their property) as booty. <sup>5</sup> souls. We say so many "head" of cattle. <sup>6</sup> relātus . . . trium, was reported to be 53,000. These 53,000 captives were probably driven to the Province or to Italy and sold in lots to suit purchasers, there to wear out their lives in bondage.



WITH THE ROMANS AT THE FRONT



gladium rapuit ad auxilium ferendum ; tum ad puerōs properāvit, sed, ubi ad locum vēnit, rem mīram vīdit, Herculēs enim ridēbat et serpentēs interfectōs dēmōnstrābat.

*Hercules studies music*

530. Herculēs ā puerō (*from boyhood*) corpus diligenter exercēbat ; magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat ; dicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conicere. His exercitatiōnibus vīrēs eius cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā ā Linō centaurō ērudiēbātur. Hi centauri equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant. Huic artī nōn diligenter Herculēs studēbat. Hāc rē cognitā, Linus puerum reprehendēbat, quod nōn studiōsus erat. 10 Tum Herculēs, īrā commōtus, citharam subitō rapuit, et omnibus vīribus caput magistrī infēlicis percussit.<sup>1</sup> Ille ictū prōstrātus<sup>2</sup> est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

*Hercules consults the oracle*

531. Herculēs post paucōs annōs cōstituit ad ōrāculum 15 Delphicum ire, hoc enim ōrāculum erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis plūrimīs dōnis ūrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, Pȳthia, et cōsilium dabat iis qui ad ōrāculum veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur et voluntātem dei hominibus ēnūntiābat. Her- 20 culēs igitur, qui Apollinem maximē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Pȳthia iussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha ire et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. His auditīs, "Herculēs ad illam urbem contendit, et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādidit. Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs 25 quōs ille imperāverat cōfēcit, hōc enim ūnō modō tantum sce- lus<sup>3</sup> expiāri potuit. Dē his labōribus plūrima ā poētīs scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētæ nārrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

<sup>1</sup> From *percutiō*. <sup>2</sup> From *prōsternō*. <sup>3</sup> The murdering of his own children.

*The golden apples of the Hesperides*

532. Eurystheus labōrem ūndecimum Herculī imposuit graviōrem quam eōs quōs anteā imperāverat. Imperāvit enim ei ut aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum ferret. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam pulcherrimae, quae in terrā longinquā 5 habitābant et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Iūnōne commissa erant. Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inducti, haec pōma auferre iam anteā cōnāti erant. Rēs tamen difficillima erat, nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; prætereā dracō quidam, qui centum capita habuit, portam horti 10 diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat difficillimum, nōn sōlum ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed etiam quod Herculēs omnīnō ignōrābat quō in locō hortus situs esset.

*Atlas, who upheld the heavens*

533. Herculēs quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, sed cōnstituit 15 Eurystheō pārēre; et, cum iussa eius accēpisset, proficisci mātūrāvit. Ā multīs mercātōribus quaesīvit quō in locō Hesperiōnes habitārent; nihil tamen certum reperīre potuit. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa pericula subiit. Tandem, cum in his itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsisset, ad extrēmam 20 partem orbis, quae proxima erat Océanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir quidam, nōmine Atlās, qui caelum umerīs sustinēbat, nē in terram dēcideret. Herculēs, tantum labōrem magnopere mirātus, paulō post in conloquium cum Atlante vēnit, et, cum causam itineris docuissest, auxilium ab eō petiit.

*Hercules takes the place of Atlas*

25 534. Atlās autem potuit Herculem maximē iuvāre, ille enim erat pater Hesperidum et bene scīvit quō in locō esset hortus. Cum igitur audīvisset quam ob causam Herculēs vēnisset, dīxit

"Ipse ad hortum ibō, et filiābus<sup>1</sup> meis persuādēbō ut pōma suā sponte<sup>2</sup> trādant." Herculēs, cum haec audivisset, magnopere gāvisus est,<sup>3</sup> nōluit enim vim adhibēre; cōnstituit igitur oblātūm<sup>4</sup> auxilium accipere. Atlās tamen postulāvit ut, dum ipse abesset (*while he was himself away*), Herculēs caelum umeris sustinē- 5 ret. Hoc negōtium Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs difficillima erat, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūris diēs sōlus sustinuit.

*The return of Atlas*

535. Atlās intereā abierat<sup>5</sup> et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē<sup>6</sup> contulerat. 10 Eō cum vēnisset, causam veniendī exposuit et filiās vehementer hortātus est ut pōma trāderent. Illae diū haerēbant, nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Iūnōne, ut ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba eis persuāsit ut sibi<sup>7</sup> pārērent, et pōma ad Herculem reftulit. Herculēs 15 intereā, cum plūris diēs exspectāvisset, neque ullam fāmam dēreditū Atlantis accēpisset, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quīntō diē Atlantem redeuntem<sup>8</sup> vīdit et mox magnō cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tanto beneficiō ēgit, in Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit. 20

*Nessus, the Centaur*

536. Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscrībere<sup>9</sup> longum est.<sup>10</sup> Tandem aētāte prōvectus<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The ending -ābus is regularly used for the dative and ablative plural of dea and of filia. <sup>2</sup> suā sponte, *of their own accord*. <sup>3</sup> gāvisus est, from gaudeō, which is deponent in the perfect system. <sup>4</sup> From offerō. <sup>5</sup> From abeō. From what verb dōes aberat come? <sup>6</sup> quam celerrimē, *as quickly as possible*. Quam with a superlative usually has the force *as . . . as possible* (see p. 185, note 1). <sup>7</sup> sibi is an indirect reflexive here, and refers to the subject of persuāsit rather than to that of pārērent. <sup>8</sup> Present participle of redeō. See 393. <sup>10</sup> longum est, *it would be tedious*. What is the subject of est? <sup>11</sup> From prōvehō. How translated?

Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrimōnium dūxit<sup>1</sup>; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine<sup>2</sup> Eunomum, cāsū interfēcit. Itaque cum uxōre ē finibus eius cīvitatis exire mātrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt, 5 quod nūllō ponte iūnctum erat, et, dum quaerunt quō modō flūmen trāicerent, accurrit centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem in tergum Nessi imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō<sup>3</sup> trānsiit, quā flūmen angustissimum erat. At Nessus, paulum in aquam 10 prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod cum animadvertisset<sup>4</sup> Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

*The poisoned robe*

537. Nessus igitur sagittā Herculis trānsfixus humī (*on the ground*) iacēbat; at, nē occāsiōnem sui ulciscendi dimitteret, 15 ita locūtus est: "Si vīs amōrem marītī tui cōservāre, aliquid huius sanguinis, quī ē pectore meō effunditur, sūmēs et repōnēs, Tum sī quandō suspīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit,<sup>5</sup> vestem marītī hōc sanguine inficiēs." Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra autem, nihil mali<sup>6</sup> suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. 20 Post breve tempus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem propinquum, suscēpit et, cum rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcisset, Iolēn, filiam Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamer domum vēnit, nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturium appulit et, in terram ēgressus, āram cōstituit, ut Iovī sacrificāret. Dum 25 tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum mīssi

<sup>1</sup> in mātrimōnium dūxit, married: How literally? <sup>2</sup> See 481. <sup>3</sup> From nō; by swimming; see 460. <sup>4</sup> quod cum animadvertisset, when he had noticed this; refers to the whole preceding sentence. Quod referring to a preceding sentence is commonly translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun <sup>5</sup> vēnerit, shall have come; but it is better translated comes. <sup>6</sup> Partitive genitive with nihil; nothing of evil = no evil.

ut yestem albam referret; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs vestem albam gerere<sup>1</sup> cum sacrificiā facerent. At Dēianira, verita<sup>2</sup> Iolēn, vestem, priusquam Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī infēcit.

*The death of Hercules*

538. Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia membra sēnsit, et quae causa eius rei esset magnopere mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus vestem dētrahere cōnātus est; illa tamen in corpore haesit neque ullō modō divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxerat, sē imposuit. Quod cum fēcisset, eōs qui circumstābant orāvit ut rogum quam celerrimē accenderent. Omnes diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs dēnsā nūbe vēlātus ā Iove in Olympum abreptus est.<sup>15</sup>

STORIES OF ULYSSES

*Polyphemus, the one-eyed giant*

539. Ulixēs comitēsque, postquam tōtam noctem rēmis conterant; ad terram ignōtam nāvem appulērunt; tum, quod nātūram eius regiōnis ignōrābat, ipse Ulixēs, cum duodecim ē sociis in terram ēgressus, locum explōrāre cōstituit. Paulum ā litorē prōgressi, ad antrum ingēns pervēnērunt, quod habitāri 20 sēnsērunt, eius enim introitum arte et manibus<sup>3</sup> mūnitum esse animadvertērunt. Mox, etsi intellegēbant sē nōn sine periculō id factūrōs esse, antrum intrāvērunt. Quod cum fēcissent,

<sup>1</sup> gerere, to wear; subject of erat. <sup>2</sup> verita, fearing; the perfect participle of some deponent verbs is often translated like a present participle. <sup>3</sup> arte et manibus, by skill and hands = by skillful hands.

magnam cōpiam lactis invēnērunt in vāsīs ingentibus conditam. Dum tamen mirantur quis eam sēdem incoleret, sonitum terriblem audivērunt, et oculis ad portam versīs, mōnstrum horribile vīdērunt, quod hūmānam speciem et figūram sed corpus 5 ingēns habuit. Cum autem animadvertisserint gigantem ūnum tantum<sup>1</sup> oculum habēre in mediā fronte positum, intellēxērunt hunc esse ūnum ē Cyclōpibus, dē quibus fāmam iam accēperant.

*The giant's supper*

540. Cyclōpēs autem pāstōrēs erant quidam, qui īsulam Siciliam et praecipuē montem Aetnam incolēbant; ibi enim 10 Vulcānus, praeses fabrōrum et ignis repertor, cuius servī Cyclōpēs erant, officinam habēbat. Graeci igitur, simul ac mōnstrum vīdērunt, terrōre paene exanimāti, in interiōrem partem spēluncae refūgērunt et sē ibi cēlāre cōnābantur. Polyphēmus autem (ita enim gigās appellātus est) pecora sua in spēluncam 15 ēgit; tum, cum saxō ingenti portam obstrūxisset, ignem mediō in antrō accendit. Hōc factō, omnia oculō perlūstrābat, et cum sēnsisset hominēs in interiōre parte antri cēlāri, magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Qui estis hominēs? Mercātōrēs an latrōnēs?" Tum Ulixēs respondit sē neque mercātōrēs esse neque 20 praedandi causā vēnisse, sed ā Trōiā redeuntēs,<sup>2</sup> vī tempestātum ā rēctō cursū dēpulsōs esse; ḍrāvit etiam ut sē sine iniūriā dimitteret. Tum Polyphēmus quaesivit ubi nāvis eōrum esset. Ulixēs autem respondit nāvem in rūpēs coniectam et omnīnc perfrāctam<sup>3</sup> esse. Polyphēmus, nūllō respōnsō datō, duo ē 25 sociīs manū corripuit et membrīs eōrum dīvulsīs<sup>4</sup> carnem dēvorāre coepit.

<sup>1</sup> *tantum*, *only*.   <sup>2</sup> Modifies *sē* understood from the preceding clause *that they, while returning*.   <sup>3</sup> From *perfringō*.   <sup>4</sup> From *dīvellō*.   <sup>5</sup> From *carō*

*No way of escape*

**541.** Dum haec geruntur, Graecōrum animōs tantus terror occupāvit ut nē vōcem quidem ēdere possent, sed, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, mortem praeſentem exſpectārent. At Polyphēmus, postquam famēs hāc tam horribili cēnā dēpulsa est, humī (*on the ground*) prōstrātus somnō sē dedit. Quod cum 5 vidisset Ulixēs, arbitrātus est mōnstrum interficiendum esse. Primum cōnstituit explōrāre quā ratiōne ex antrō ēvādere possent. At, cum saxum animadvertisset quō introitus obstrūctus erat, intellēxit mortem Polyphēmī auxiliō sibi nōn futūram esse. Tanta enim erat eius saxī magnitūdō ut nē ā decem 10 quidem hominibus āmovēri posset. Ulixēs igitur hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad sociōs rediit; qui, cum intellēxissent quō in locō<sup>1</sup> rēs esset, nūllā spē salūtis oblātā, dē fortūnī suis dēspērāre coepērunt. Ille tamen vehementer hortātus est nē animōs dēmitterent,<sup>2</sup> et dēmōnstrāvit sē ipsōs iam anteā ē multis et 15 magnis periculis ēvāsisse.

*A plan for vengeance*

**542.** Ortā lūce<sup>3</sup> Polyphēmus, iam ē somnō excitātus, idem quod<sup>4</sup> hesternō diē fēcit, correptīs enim duōbus ē reliquīs virīs carnem eōrum sine morā dēvorāvit. Tum, cum saxum āmōvisset, ipse cum pecore ex antrō prōgressus est. Quod cum 20 vidērent Graeci, magnam in spēm vēnērunt<sup>5</sup> sē post paulum ēvāsūrōs. Mox tamen ab hāc spē repulsī sunt, nam Polyphēmus, postquam omnēs ovēs exiērunt, saxum in locum restituit. Graeci, omnī spē salūtis dēpositā, lāmentis lacrimīsque sē dēdidērunt. Ulixēs vērō, qui, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, vir 25

<sup>1</sup> locō, state, condition, not place. <sup>2</sup> nē . . . dēmitterent, not to lose heart.

<sup>3</sup> ortā lūce = primā lūce, at daybreak; ortā is from orior. <sup>4</sup> idem quod, the same as. <sup>5</sup> magnam . . . vēnērunt, had great hopes.

fortis fuit, etsī bene intellegēbat rem in discriminē esse, nōn dum omnīnō dēspērābat. Tandem, postquam diū tōtō animō cōgitāvit, hoc cēpit cōnsilium. Ē lignīs quae iñ antrō repositā sunt pālum magnum dēlēgit; hunc summā cum diligentiā 5 praeacūtum fēcit; tum, postquam sociīs quid<sup>1</sup> fieri vellet ostendit, redditum Polyphēmī exspectābat.

*Polyphemus thrice drains a wine bowl*

543. Sub vesperum Polyphēmus ad antrum rediit et eōdem modō quō anteā cēnāvit. Tum Ulixēs ūtrem vīnī prōmpsīt,<sup>2</sup> quem forte, ut in tālibus rēbus saepe accidit, sēcum attūlerat, et postquam magnam crātēram vīnō replēvit, gigantem ad bibendum prōvocāvit. Polyphēmus, qui numquam anteā vīnum gustāverat, tōtam crātēram statim hausit.<sup>3</sup> Quod cum fēcisset, tantam voluptātem percēpit ut iterum et tertium crātēram replēri iubēret. Tum, cum quaesivisset quō nōmine 15 Ulixēs appellārētur, ille respondit sē Nēminem<sup>4</sup> appellārī. Quod cum audivisset Polyphēmus, ita locūtus est: "Ut tibi grātiām prō tantō beneficiō referam, tē ultimum omnium dēvorābō." His dictis, cibō vīnōque gravātus recubuit<sup>5</sup> et post breve tempus somnō oppressus est. Tum Ulixēs, sociīs convocā- 20 tīs, dīxit: "Habēmus quam petiimus facultātem.<sup>6</sup> Tanta occāsiō nōn omittenda est."

*Noman*

544. Hāc orātiōne habitā, postquam extrēmum pālum<sup>7</sup> ignī calefēcit, oculum Polyphēmi, dum dormit, flagrante lignō trānsfōdit. Quō factō, omnēs in dīversās spēluncae partīs sē abdi- 25 dērunt. At ille subitō illō dolōre, quod necesse fuit,<sup>8</sup> ē somnō

<sup>1</sup> In what case is quid? <sup>2</sup> From prōmō. <sup>3</sup> From hauriō. <sup>4</sup> Noman.

<sup>5</sup> From recumbō. <sup>6</sup> quam . . . facultātem = facultātem quam petiimus.

<sup>7</sup> extrēmum pālum = extrēmam partem pāli. <sup>8</sup> quod necesse fuit, which was necessary = necessarily; the reference is to what follows.

excitātus, clāmōrem terribilem sustulit,<sup>1</sup> et dum per spēluncam errat, Ulixī manum inicere cōnābātur. Hoc tamen, quod iam omnīnō caecus erat, nūllō modō efficere potuit. Intereā reliquī Cyclōpēs, clāmōre auditō, undique ad spēluncam convēnērunt, et apud introitum adstantēs, quid Polyphēmus ageret<sup>2</sup> quaesi- 5 vērunt et quam ob causam tantum clāmōrem sustulisset. Ille respondit sē graviter vulnerātum esse et magnō dolōre adfici. Cum tamen cēterī quaesivissent quis ei<sup>3</sup> vim intulisset, respon- 10 dit ille Nēminem id fēcisse. Hōc auditō, Cyclōpēs, eum in insāniām incidiisse arbitrātī,<sup>4</sup> abiērunt.

10

*The escape*

**545.** Sed Polyphēmus, cum sociōs suōs abiisse sēnsisset, furōre atque āmentiā impulsus, Ulixem iterum quaerere coepit. Tandem cum portam invēnissēt, saxum quō obstrūcta<sup>5</sup> erat āmōvit, ut pecus ad agrōs exiret. Tum ipse in introitū sēdit, et cum quaeque ovis ad locum vēnerat, tergum eius manibus 15 tractābat, nē viri inter ovēs exire possent. Quod cum animad- vertisset Ulixēs, hoc cōnsilium iniit, bene enim intellēxit omnem spem salūtis iam in dolō magis quam in virtūtē pōnī. Primum trēs quās vīdit pinguissimās ex ovibus dēlēgit. Quibus inter.sē<sup>6</sup> vīminibus cōnexīs,<sup>7</sup> ūnum ex sociīs ventribus eōrum ita subiēcit 20 ut omnīnō latēret; deinde ovis hominem sēcum ferentēs ad portam ēgit. Id accidit quod fore<sup>8</sup> suspicātus erat. Polyphēmus enim, postquam manūs tergis eōrum imposuit, ovis praeterire passus<sup>9</sup> est. Ulixēs, postquam rem fēliciter ēvēnisce vīdit, omnēs sociōs suōs ex ūrdine eōdem modō ēmīsit; quō factō, ipse 25 ultimus ēvāsit.

<sup>1</sup> From tollō. <sup>2</sup> quid . . . ageret, what Polyphemus was doing = what ailed Polyphemus. <sup>3</sup> Which usage of the dative? <sup>4</sup> Translate as if it were a present participle. See p. 213, note 2. <sup>5</sup> The subject is porta. <sup>6</sup> inter sē, together. <sup>7</sup> From cōnectō. <sup>8</sup> fore = futūrum esse, would be, would happen. <sup>9</sup> From patior.

*Out of danger*

546. His rēbus ita cōfectis, Ulixēs cum sociis quam celerrimē ad lītus contendit. Quō<sup>1</sup> cum vēnissent, ab eis qui praeſidiō nāvī relictī erant magnā cum laetitiā acceptī sunt. Hī enim, cum iam anxiis animis trēs diēs redditum eōrum in 5 hōrās<sup>2</sup> exspectāvissent, eōs in periculum grave incidisse suspicātī, ipsī auxiliandi causā ēgredi parābant. Tum Ulixēs, nōn satis tūtum esse arbitrātus in eō locō manēre, quam celerrimē proficisci cōnstituit. Iussit igitur omnēs nāvem cōnscendere, et, ancoris sublātis, paulum ā lītore in altum p̄rōiectus est. Tum 10 magnā vōce exclāmāvit: "Tū, Polyphēme,<sup>3</sup> quī iūra hospiti spērnis, iūstam et dēbitam poenam immānitātis tuae solvistī." Hāc vōce auditā, Polyphēmus, irā vehementer commōtus, ad mare sē contulit, et ubi intellēxit nāvem paulum ā lītore remōtam esse, saxum ingēns correptum in eam partem coniēcit unde 15 vōcem venīre sēnsit. Graeci autem, nūllō damnō acceptō, cursum tenuērunt.

EUTROPIUS: HISTORY OF ROME<sup>4</sup>*The founding of Rome by Romulus*

547. Rōmānum imperium<sup>5</sup> ā Rōmulō initium habet, qui Rhēae Silviae filius et Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem parvam in Palātinō monte<sup>6</sup> cōnstituit. Condītā 20 cīvitātē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit.<sup>7</sup> Multitūdinem fīnitimōrum in cīvitātem recēpit, centum ex seniōribus<sup>8</sup> lēgit, quōrum cōsiliō omnia agēbat, quōs senātōrēs

<sup>1</sup> quō, *thither*; begin to translate with *cum*. <sup>2</sup> in hōrās, *hourly*. <sup>3</sup> Vocative case, denoting the person addressed. <sup>4</sup> Eutropius, a Roman historian of the fourth century of our era, wrote a brief history of Rome from its founding to the year 364. <sup>5</sup> imperium, *power, state*. <sup>6</sup> Palātinō monte, *the Palatine Hill*, one of the seven hills on which Rome was built. <sup>7</sup> haec ferē ēgit, *he did about as follows*. <sup>8</sup> seniōribus, *older men*; comparative of senex, *old*.

nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent,<sup>1</sup> invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicīnās urbi Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellis propter raptārum<sup>2</sup> iniūriam Caenīnēnsēs vicit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabinōs,<sup>3</sup> Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec 5 omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum, ortā subitō tempestāte, nōn compāruisset,<sup>4</sup> annō rēgnī trīcēsimō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēdītus est et cōnsecrātus.<sup>5</sup>

*The kings who succeeded Romulus*

548. Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī<sup>6</sup> quam Rōmulus 10 prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōnstituit et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs, et īfīnīta sacra ac templa cōnstituit.

Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vicit; Vēientēs et Fidēnātēs bellō superāvit; urbem ampliāvit adiectō Caeliō monte.<sup>7</sup>

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius suscēpit imperium. Contrā Latinōs dimicāvit, Aventīnum montem cīvitātī adiēcit et Iāniculum; apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem condidit.

Deinde rēgnū Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplīcāvit, circum<sup>8</sup> Rōmae<sup>9</sup> aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmā- 20 nōs<sup>10</sup> instituit, quī ad nostrām memoriam permanent. Vicit idem etiam Sabinōs et nōn parum<sup>11</sup> agrōrum urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxit, pīmusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcit et cloācās, Capitōlium incohāvit.

<sup>1</sup> cum . . . habērent, because . . . had. A causal clause introduced by cum, because, as, since, has its verb in the subjunctive mood. <sup>2</sup> Understand virginū.

<sup>3</sup> In apposition with Caenīnēnsēs, Antemnātēs, and Crustumīnōs. Fidenæ and Veii were Etruscan towns. <sup>4</sup> nōn compāruisset, had disappeared. <sup>5</sup> cōnsecrātus (est), was deified. <sup>6</sup> Which use of the dative? <sup>7</sup> adiectō Caeliō monte, by the addition of the Cælian Hill. <sup>8</sup> circum, the Circus Maximus, where races and other sports were held. <sup>9</sup> Rōmae, at Rome. <sup>10</sup> The lūdī Rōmānī consisted of a variety of games and contests held each year in September in the Circus Maximus. <sup>11</sup> nōn parum, not a little; parum is here used as a noun.

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscēpit imperium. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirinālem, Viminālem, Ēsquilinum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrum dūxit. Prīmus omnium cēnum ōrdināvit, qui adhūc per orbem terrārum 5 incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma, omnibus in cēnum dēlātis,<sup>1</sup> habuit capita<sup>2</sup> LXXXIII mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum his qui in agrīs erant.

Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniā euntibus<sup>3</sup> nōn longē ab urbe 10 est, vīcit, Gabiōs cīvitātem<sup>4</sup> et Suessam Pōmētiā subēgit, cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitōliō<sup>5</sup> aedificāvit. Posteā Ardeam oppugnāns imperium perdidit<sup>6</sup>; cumque imperāvisset annōs quattuor et vīgintī, cum uxōre et liberī suis fūgit.

*The first consuls*

15 549. Hinc cōsulēs coepērunt, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creātī, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset,<sup>7</sup> alter eum habēns potestātem similem coērcēret. Et placuit<sup>8</sup> nē imperium longius quam annum habērent, nē per diūturnitātem potestātis īsolen-tiōrēs redderentur. Fuērunt igitur annō pīmō ab expulsis 20 rēgibus cōsulēs Iūnius Brūtus et Tarquinius Collātinus. Sed Tarquiniō Collātinō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat<sup>9</sup> enim nē quisquam in urbe manēret qui Tarquinius vocārētur. Ergō, acceptō omnī patrimōniō suō, ex urbe migrāvit, et locō ipsius<sup>10</sup> factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

<sup>1</sup> omnibus . . . dēlātis, when all had been enumerated. <sup>2</sup> See p. 208, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> ad Campāniā euntibus, to those going toward Campania, in the direction of Campania; euntibus is a dative of reference. <sup>4</sup> Gabiōs cīvitātem, the city (or community) of Gabii.

<sup>5</sup> in Capitōliō, on the Capitoline Hill. <sup>6</sup> A crime committed by a son of Tarquinius aroused such indignation that Tarquinius and his family were obliged to leave Rome. <sup>7</sup> sī . . . voluisset, if one of the consuls were inclined to be troublesome; voluisset is attracted into the subjunctive mood, because it depends on a clause the verb of which is in the subjunctive. <sup>8</sup> placuit, it was decided. The subject is the clause nē . . . habērent.

<sup>9</sup> placuerat, it had been decided. <sup>10</sup> locō ipsius, in his place.

*Wars against the Tarquins*

**550.** Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī fuerat expulsus, et, collēctis multis gentibus, ut in rēgnū posset restituī, dīmicāvit. In prīmā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arrūns, Tarquinī filius, invicem sē occidērunt,<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum mātrōnae Rōmānae 5 quasi commūnem patrem per annum lūxērunt.<sup>2</sup>

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius, ut reciperetur in rēgnū, bellum Rōmānīs<sup>3</sup> intulit, auxilium<sup>4</sup> ei ferente Porsenā,<sup>5</sup> Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērum tum quoque victus est. IO

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius, cum suscipi nōn posset in rēgnū neque ei Porsena, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcerat, praestāret auxilium, Tusculum sē contulit, quae cīvitās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs privātus incoluit. I5

*Pyrrhus and the Romans*

**551.** Eōdem tempore Tarentinīs, quī iam in ultimā Italiā sunt, bellum indictum est, quod lēgātīs Rōmānōrum iniūriam fēcerant. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā Rōmānōs in auxilium poposcērunt.<sup>6</sup> Is mox ad Italiam vēnit, tumque prīmū Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Missus est contrā eum cōnsul P. Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum explorātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iussit eōs per castra dūcī, ostendī omnem exercitum, tumque dīmittī, ut renūntiārent Pyrrhō quae ā Rōmānīs agerentur. Commissā mox pugnā, cum iam Pyrrhus fugeret, elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quōs incognitōs<sup>7</sup> Rōmānī 25 timuērunt. Sed nox proeliō finem dedit; Laevīnus tamen per noctem fūgit, Pyrrhus Rōmānōs mille octingentōs cēpit et eōs

<sup>1</sup> invicem sē occidērunt, killed each other. <sup>2</sup> From lūgeō. <sup>3</sup> Which usage of the dative? <sup>4</sup> auxilium, object of ferente. <sup>5</sup> ferente Porsenā, ablative absolute. <sup>6</sup> From poscō. <sup>7</sup> Translate so as to show cause.

summō honōre trāctāvit, occīsōs sepelivit. Quōs cum adversō vulnere<sup>1</sup> et truci vultū<sup>1</sup> etiam mortuōs iacēre vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dicitur cum hāc vōce: Sē tōtius orbis domi-  
num esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi mīlitēs contigissent.<sup>2</sup>

5 Posteā Pyrrhus, coniūntīs sibi Samnitibus, Lūcānīs, Bruttiīs, Rōmam perrēxit,<sup>3</sup> omnia ferrō ignīque vāstāvit, Campāniam populātus est, et ad Praeneste vēnit. Mox terrōre exercitus, quī eum cum cōnsule sequēbātur, in Campāniam sē recēpit. Lēgātī ad Pyrrhum dē redimendīs captivīs missī ab eō bene 10 recepti sunt. Captivōs sine pretiō Rōmam mīsit. Ūnum ex lēgātīs Rōmānōrum, Fabricium, sīc admirātus, cum eum pau-  
perem esse cognōvisset, ut quārtā parte rēgnī prōmissā<sup>4</sup> sol-  
licitāre voluerit<sup>5</sup> ut ad sē trānsiret, contemptusque<sup>6</sup> est ā  
Fabriciō. Quārē cum Pyrrhus Rōmānōrum ingenti admirā-  
15 tiōne tenērētur,<sup>7</sup> lēgātūm mīsit, ut pācem aequīs condicōnibus  
peteret, praecipuum virum, Cineam nōmine, ita ut Pyrrhus  
partem Italiae quam iam armīs occupāverat obtinēret.

• Pāx displicuit remandātūmque Pyrrhō est<sup>8</sup> ā senātū eum cum Rōmānīs, nisi ex Italiā recessisset, pācem habēre nōn posse.  
20 Ita lēgātus Pyrrhī reversus est. Ā quō cum quaereret Pyrrhus quālem Rōmam<sup>9</sup> comperisset, Cineās dīxit rēgum sē patriam vīdisse: tālēs illīc ferē omnēs esse, quālis ūnius Pyrrhus apud Ēpirum<sup>10</sup> et reliquā Graeciam putārētur.

Missī sunt contrā Pyrrhum ducēs P. Sulpicius et Decius  
25 Mūs cōsulēs. Certāmine commissō Pyrrhus vulnerātus est,

<sup>1</sup> adversō vulnere and truci vultū are descriptive ablatives. Translate, *when he saw these men lying with wounds on the front of their bodies and with stern expressions on their faces even in death.* <sup>2</sup> if it had been his lot to have such soldiers. <sup>3</sup> From pergō. <sup>4</sup> quārtā . . . prōmissā, by the offer of a fourth of his kingdom. <sup>5</sup> The perfect subjunctive is often used in result clauses in secondary sequence. <sup>6</sup> From contemnō. <sup>7</sup> cum . . . tenērētur, since Pyrrhus felt great admiration for the Romans. How literally? The clause is causal. <sup>8</sup> remandātūm . . . est, word was sent back to Pyrrhus that, etc. <sup>9</sup> quālem Rōmam, what sort of city he had found Rome to be. <sup>10</sup> apud Ēpirum, in Epirus.

elephantī interfectī, vīgintī milia caesa<sup>1</sup> hostium, et ex Rōmānīs tantum quīnque milia; Pyrrhus Tarentum fugātus.<sup>2</sup>

Interiectō annō contrā Pyrrhum Fabricius est missus, qui prius inter lēgātōs sollicitārī nōn poterat; quārtā rēgnī parte prōmissā. Tum, cum vīcina castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus Pyrrhī nocte ad eum vēnit, prōmittēns venēnō sē Pyrrhum occisūrum, sī sibi aliquid pollicērētur.<sup>3</sup> Quem Fabricius vīncut redūci iussit ad dominum Pyrrhōque dīcī quae contrā caput eius medicus spopondisset.<sup>4</sup> Tum rēx admirātus eum dixisse fertur<sup>5</sup>: “Ille est Fabricius qui difficilius ab honestātē quam 10 sōl ā cursū suō āvertī potest.” Tum rēx in Siciliam profectus est.

Cōsulēs deinde M. Curius Dentātus et Cornēlius Lentulus adversus Pyrrhum missī sunt. Curius contrā eum pugnāvit, exercitum eius cecidit,<sup>6</sup> ipsum Tarentum fugāvit, castra cēpit. 15 Eō diē caesa hostium vīgintī tria milia. Curius in cōsulātū triumphāvit. Prīmus Rōmam elephantōs quattuor dūxit. Pyrrhus etiam ā Tarentō mox recessit et apud Argōs, Graeciae cīvitātem, occīsus est.

## STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

*The brave deed of Horatius Cocles*

552. Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs 20 cum īfestō exercitū vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāserat; ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiis. Alia pars urbis mūris,<sup>7</sup> alia Tiberī obiectō<sup>8</sup> tūta vidēbātur.<sup>9</sup> Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit. Únus vir autem erat, 25

<sup>1</sup> From caedō. <sup>2</sup> Supply est. <sup>3</sup> sī . . . pollicērētur, if some reward were promised to him. <sup>4</sup> From spondeō. <sup>5</sup> fertur, is reported. <sup>6</sup> From caedō. <sup>7</sup> mūris, by reason of its walls. <sup>8</sup> Tiberī obiectō, by the interposed Tiber = by the Tiber's being between. <sup>9</sup> vidēbātur, seemed.

Horātius Cocles, illō cognōmine appellātus quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmiserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, aeiem hostium sōlus sustinuit. Intereā pōns ā tergō interrumpēbātur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostīs; ponte rescissō,<sup>1</sup> armātus in 5 Tiberim dēsiluit et, multīs superincidentibus tēlīs, incolumnis ad suōs trānshāvit. Ob virtūtem Horātiō cīvitās grātiam solvit<sup>2</sup>: ei tantum agrī pūblicē datum est quantum<sup>3</sup> ūnō diē circumarāre potuit. Statua quoque ei in Comitiō posita est.

*The fortitude of Mucius*

553. Cum Porsena Rōmam obsidēret, Mūcius senātūm adiit 10 et veniam trānsfugiendi<sup>4</sup> petiit, necem rēgis reprōmittēns. Acceptā potestāte, in castra Porsenae vēnit. Ibi in cōnfertissimā turbā prope rēgium tribūnal cōnstitit. Stīpendium tunc forte militib⁹ dabātur, et proximus rēgi erat scriba, qui similem vestem gerēbat. Mūcius, ignōrāns uter rēx esset, scribam prō 15 rēge occidit. Apprehēnsus et ad rēgem pertrāctus,<sup>5</sup> dextram accēnsō<sup>6</sup> ad sacrificium foculō iniēcit, *velut* manum pūniēns. Attonitus mīrāculō, rēx iuvenem āmovērī ab altāribus iussit. Tum Mūcius, quasi beneficium remūnerāns, dīxit trecentōs<sup>7</sup> 20 sibi similis adversus eum coniūrāvisse. Quā rē ille territus, bellum acceptīs obsidibus dēpositus.

*Clælia, the hostage, escapes*

554. Porsena Cloeliam, virginem nōbilem, inter obsidēs accēperat. Castra Porsenae haud procul ab ripā Tiberis locāta erant. Cloelia, dēceptīs custōdibus, nocte castris ēgressa, equō quem fors dederat arreptō,<sup>8</sup> Tiberim trāiēcit. Quod ubi rēgi 25 nūntiātum est, pīmō incēnsus irā, Rōmam lēgātōs misit ad

<sup>1</sup> From rescindō. <sup>2</sup> grātiam solvit, showed its gratitude. <sup>3</sup> tantum . . . quantum, as much . . . as. <sup>4</sup> veniam trānsfugiendi, favor of deserting = permission to desert. <sup>5</sup> From pertrahō. <sup>6</sup> From accēndō; order: foculō accēnsō ad sacrificium. <sup>7</sup> trecentōs, three hundred; subject of coniūrāvisse. <sup>8</sup> equō . . . arreptō, seizing a horse; arreptō is from arripiō.

Cloeliam obsidem reposcendam. Rōmānī eam ex foedere restituērunt. Tum rēx virginis virtūtem admirātus<sup>1</sup> eam laudāvit ac partem obsidum ei datūrum esse sē dixit, permīsitque ut ipsa obsidēs legeret. Prōductis obsidibus, Cloelia virginēs puerōsque ēlēgit, quōrum aetātem iniūriae obnoxiam<sup>2</sup> sciēbat, et cum eis in patriam rediit. Rōmānī novam in fēminā virtūtem novō genere honōris, statuā equestri, dōnāvērunt. In summā<sup>3</sup> Viā Sacrā<sup>4</sup> est posita virgō īsidēns equō.

*Caius Marcius Coriolanus*

555. C. Mārcius captis Coriolīs,<sup>5</sup> urbe Volscōrum, Coriolānus dictus est. Puer patre<sup>6</sup> orbātus sub mātris tūtēlāadolēvit. Cum 10 prīma stīpendia facere coepisset<sup>7</sup> adulēscēns, ē multis proeliis quibus interfuit numquam rediit nisi corōnā aliōve militārī praemiō dōnātus. In omnī vītae ratiōne nihil aliud sibi prōpōnēbat quam ut mātri placēret; cumque illa audiret filium<sup>8</sup> laudārī aut corōnā dōnārī vidēret, tum dēmum fēlicem sē ipsa 15 putābat. Cōnsul factus gravī annōnā<sup>9</sup> advectum<sup>10</sup> ē Siciliā frūmentum magnō pretiō dandum populō cūrāvit, ut plēbs agrōs, nōn sēditiōnēs, coleret. Quā de causā damnātus ad Volscōs infestōs tunc Rōmānīs cōfūgit eōsque adversus Rōmānōs concitāvit. Imperātor ā Volscīs factus, castrīs ad quārtum ab urbe 20 lapidem<sup>11</sup> positīs, agrum Rōmānum est populātus.

Missī sunt Rōmā ad Coriolānum lēgātī dē pāce, sed atrōx respōnsum rettulērunt. Iterum deinde iidem missī nē in castra

<sup>1</sup> Translate as if it were a present participle. <sup>2</sup> obnoxiam, liable to.

<sup>3</sup> summā, highest part of. <sup>4</sup> Viā Sacrā, a street running through the Roman Forum up to the Capitol. <sup>5</sup> captis Coriolīs, because of the capture of Corioli.

<sup>6</sup> Which usage of the ablative? <sup>7</sup> prīma . . . coepisset, had begun to earn first wages (as a soldier) = had begun his first military service. <sup>8</sup> Subject accusative of laudārī and dōnārī. <sup>9</sup> gravī annōnā, in a time of extreme scarcity.

<sup>10</sup> Agrees with frūmentum, which is the subject accusative of dandum (esse). Translate, had (cūrāvit) corn, which had been brought from Sicily, distributed to the people at a high price. <sup>11</sup> lapidem, milestone.

quidem recepti sunt. Stupēbat senātus, trepidābat populus, viri pariter ac mulierēs exitium imminēns lāmentābantur. Tum Veturia, Coriolānī māter, et Volumnia uxor, duōs parvōs filiōs sēcum trahēns, castra hostium petiērunt. Ubi mātrem adspexit 5 Coriolānus, exclāmāvit: “Ō patria, vīcistī īram mēam admōtis mātris meae precibus,<sup>1</sup> cui<sup>2</sup> tuam in mē iniūriam condōnō.” Complexus inde suōs castra mōvit et exercitum ex agrō Rōmānō abdūxit.

<sup>1</sup> admōtis . . . precibus, by employing the prayers.

<sup>2</sup> cui, for whose sake.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

### LESSON I

556. What use of the nominative do you know? What are the case endings of a noun, and what is their use? What are the personal endings of the third person singular and plural? Translate **puella ambulat** to show three kinds of action. What is the case ending in the nominative plural for words ending in -a in the nominative singular? What is an enclitic? To which word in a sentence is -ne generally attached? Accent **ambulant** and **ambulantne**. Divide **agricola** and **ambulant** into syllables, and give a reason for the accent of each word.

### LESSON II

557. What are the case endings for the nominative and the accusative singular? for the same cases in the plural? What usage has the accusative? Give the accusative singular and plural of **agricola**. What is the difference in meaning between **agricola puellās convocat** and **puellās agricola convocat**? What Latin words are suggested by the English words *laudatory, aquarium, convocation, cantata, aéronaut?* Tell why each noun in 36 stands in the case in which it is found.

### LESSON III

558. What is the use of the personal endings in the inflection of a verb? Give the personal endings of the present tense. What does each mean? Inflect **convocō** in the present indicative active. If a verb ends in -**mus**, what is its subject? If it ends in -**s**? Say in Latin *it swims* and *she walks*. Spell the present stem of each verb in 39, c. How many conjugations of Latin verbs are there? How are they distinguished from each other? Give the present infinitive active of each verb in 39, c.

## LESSON IV

559. What three Latin cases have you learned? To which English case does each correspond? What is the usage of each case you have met? Inflect *fugō* in the present indicative active. Give the nominative, genitive, and accusative singular and plural of the Latin word for *daughter*. Express in Latin *whose land?* *whom does he see?* *what has he?* Give English words that appear to be derived from *liberō* and *portō*. Give the genitive and the accusative forms of the nouns in 45. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 46.

## LESSON V

560. Spell the present stem of the Latin verb meaning *see*. What endings do you add in the inflection of the present indicative active? Where is the vowel e of the present stem of the second conjugation short in the inflection of the present tense? Inflect *doceō*, *habeō*, *videō*, and *portō* in the present indicative active. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *fortune*, *expectation*, *piratical*, *export*, *monitor*? Why is the infinitive given with each verb in the vocabularies? What kind of clause is introduced by *quod*?

## LESSON VI

561. How many cases of Latin nouns have you learned? Name them. Give a usage of each case, and give the rule for the usage. With which Latin case have you used a preposition? What is the general character of the dative and of the ablative case? Give the dative and the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 55. What do you observe about the endings of the dative and the ablative plural? Explain the normal order of words in a Latin sentence. What is the effect of a change from the normal order of words? Give English words that appear to be derived from *fābula*, *dō*, and *nārrō*. Conjugate each verb in 49 in the present indicative active. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 61.

## LESSON VII

562. How many declensions of Latin nouns are there? What nouns belong to the first declension? What is the base of a noun? Give in their order the case endings of the first declension. How do you recognize a noun of this declension? Decline **rēgīna**, **pīrāta**, and **domīna**. What is the gender of most nouns of the first declension? Give five masculine nouns of this declension. What three case endings in this declension are the same? Say in Latin *in the fight, in the forests*. Give English words that appear to be derived from the words in 65.

## LESSON VIII

563. What is the case of the direct object in Latin? of the indirect object? for the *to* or *for* relation? for the *of* relation? How is the *in* or *on* relation expressed? What two genders are there in nouns of the second declension? What are the case endings of the second declension? Decline **domīnus** and **oppīdum**. Express in Latin *of the horses, in the garden, to the friends*. What cases are alike in the second declension? What four pairs of cases of neuter nouns in this declension are alike? What English words are suggested by **domīnus**? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 75.

## LESSON IX

564. Decline **bonūs**. Decline **pīlū magnum**. What is the rule for the agreement of adjectives? What is the normal position of an adjective? of an indirect object? How many declensions of adjectives are there? What adjectives precede their nouns? Decline **nautā validūs**. Give the ablative singular and plural of each noun in 82. Give the case endings of an adjective of the first and second declensions, reciting first the nominative endings for the three genders, then the genitive endings, and so on. What English words are suggested by **magnus**? Conjugate in the present indicative active each verb in 83.

## LESSON X

**565.** State the rule for the gender of nouns of the first declension. Is the ending of the adjective always the same as that of the noun with which it agrees? Why is **nauta bona** not correct? Express in Latin *you are a poet, your fortune is large, in Europe, to the kind goddess.* Decline **longus** and **puella parva**. Inflect **sum** and **dēmōnstrō** in the present indicative active. What kind of verb is **sum**? What are predicate nouns and adjectives? Give two uses of the nominative.

## LESSON XII

**566.** What cases of the second declension end in -*ō*? What cases end in -*is*? What two cases in the neuter plural end in -*a*? Decline **puer, ager, vir, praemium, and socius.** How do the English derivatives of these words help you to decline them? Point out the predicate nouns and adjectives in 101. How is the present stem of a verb found? Give English words that appear to be derived from the nouns of 100. What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the second declension? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 101.

## LESSON XIII

**567.** Decline **miser** and **vester**. Inflect **superō** in the present indicative active. How does the meaning of **tuus** differ from that of **vester**? What is an appositive? Find examples of an appositive in 96 and in 101. What is the rule for the case of an appositive? What is the rule for the agreement of an adjective? Say in Latin *for my friend Galba.* What English words appear to be derived from **miser, multus, and vocō?** What kind of clause begins with **quod** in sentence 7 of 105?

## LESSON XIV

**568.** Give two uses of the nominative and two of the dative, and one usage of each of the other cases. Give seven Latin adjectives that are accompanied by the dative. How do you say in

Latin *there is?* *there are?* Inflect **sum** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. Decline **servus, vir, filius**. What adjectives have you learned that keep **e** in their inflection? In what two ways have you used **amicus**? What is the rule for the dative with adjectives? Give English derivatives of **propinquus** and **proximus**.

## LESSON XV

**569.** Decline **lēgātus** and **scūtum**. Inflect **pugnō** and **compleō** in the imperfect indicative active. Give two uses of the ablative. Which use requires a preposition? By what sort of prepositional phrases is the ablative of means to be translated? What is the tense sign of the imperfect indicative active? Divide **exspectābāmus** in such a way as to show the stem, the tense sign, and the personal ending. Which personal ending of the imperfect is unlike that of the present? Express in Latin *by an oar, with water, by means of money*. What kind of action is expressed by the imperfect?

## LESSON XVI

**570.** Inflect **labōrō** and **teneō** in the future indicative active. Give three uses of the ablative, two of the dative, and one of the genitive. Which two cases are used with prepositions in Latin? Give two uses of the accusative. What preposition in Latin is used with two cases? What is the tense sign of the future indicative active? Translate **cum cūrā** in two ways. When may **cum** be omitted in phrases of manner? Say in Latin *with a sword* and *with zeal*. Give English derivatives of **labōrō**. Decline **aeger**.

## LESSON XVII

**571.** What forms are given as the principal parts of a verb? Give the principal parts of **laudō**. What are the present and the perfect stem of **laudō**? What tenses use the present stem in their inflection (as far as you have studied the verb)? What are the personal endings of the perfect indicative active? What tenses use the perfect stem in their inflection? Inflect **laudō** in the perfect

indicative active. What is the difference between the perfect definite and the perfect indefinite? Translate the perfect of **laudō** in both ways. Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 138.

### LESSON XVIII

**572.** Give four uses of the ablative. Which uses of the ablative take **cum**? Inflect **videō** in the perfect indicative active and **maneō** in the imperfect indicative active. Express in Latin *with the Romans, with danger, with a shield, in Italy, into Germany*. Decline **periculum** and **locus**. What are the perfect stems of the verbs in 139? Give English derivatives of **captīvus**, **causa**, and **locus**.

### LESSON XIX

**573.** What is a demonstrative? Give an example in English. In what ways is the demonstrative **is** used? Inflect **sum**, **hiemō**, and **maneō** in the tenses of the indicative active through the perfect. Express in Latin *she has been kind, they have been friends*. Decline **is** and **proximus**. What is the normal position of a modifying adjective? What is the normal position of **is** when it is an adjective? Tell the reason for the case of each noun and adjective in 150.

### LESSON XX

**574.** What is the difference in the action expressed by the imperfect and the perfect tense? What is the perfect stem of **sum**? Decline the interrogative pronoun **quis**. Decline the interrogative adjective **qui**. Express in Latin *whose horse? of those men, with that girl, with which spears?* Make a synopsis (671) of **sum** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Decline **animus** and **imperium**.

### LESSON XXI

**575.** Give the infinitives of **amō**, **moneō**, and **regō**. What letter of the infinitive needs to be especially noticed? Why? What are the perfect stems of **amō**, **moneō**, and **mittō**? Translate the third person

singular of the perfect indicative active of **dūcō** in two ways. What is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations? in the third? Inflect **mittō** in the indicative active through the perfect. Inflect **dūcō** and **emō** in the present and future indicative active. Give English derivatives of **dūcō** and **mittō**. Make a synopsis of **amō** in each person through the perfect indicative.

## LESSON XXIII

**576.** What three things must you know about each noun of the third declension to be able to decline it? What are the case endings of this declension? What case endings are the same? Decline **eques**, **dux**, **lapis**, and **caput**. Decline **rēx noster**. Make a synopsis of **mittō** in each person for the tenses you have studied. Give English derivatives of the words in 172.

## LESSON XXIV

**577.** What uses of the accusative and ablative cases have you now studied? What is the difference between phrases of place from which introduced by **ab**, **ex**, and **dē**? Give the rules for place from which and place to which. In what forms is the inflection of **capiō** unlike that of **regō**? Inflect **fugiō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active. Decline **mūrus** and **pēs**. Express in Latin *he fled toward the gate, he fled out of the gate, he fled away from the gate*. Give the genitive endings for the first three declensions; then the dative endings, and so on. From what Latin words are *pedal*, *mural*, and *dismiss* derived? Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 181.

## LESSON XXV

**578.** Give five uses of the ablative case, and illustrate each with a Latin phrase. Decline **homō bonus**, **quod vulnus**, and **corpus**. What English words are used to translate the ablative of cause? What uses of the ablative require a preposition? In what two uses of the ablative is **cum** employed? Inflect **doleō** in the present, imperfect,

future, and perfect indicative active. In what two ways may the dative case be used? What two ways are there of expressing a phrase introduced by *to*? Make a synopsis of *capiō* in each person through the perfect indicative active.

### LESSON XXVI

**579.** What are the regular case endings for nouns of the third declension of each gender? What nouns have i-stems? How do nouns with i-stems differ in declension from other nouns of the third declension? What is an enclitic? Give two examples. Decline *lapis*, *civis*, and *urbs*. Express in Latin *because of our courage*, *sons of these citizens*. From what Latin words are *civilize*, *finite*, *ignition*, *marine*, and *interurban* derived?

### LESSON XXVII

**580.** What preposition is used with both the accusative and the ablative case? Decline *fīnis* and *mare*. Decline *aeger*. What two meanings has *inter*? How do you say *with* and *because of* in Latin? What forms of adjectives are used as nouns? Say in Latin *among the allies*, *after the war*, *across the sea*, *against the soldiers*, *toward the province*, *through the cities*, *without a friend*.

### LESSON XXIX

**581.** Decline *audāx*, *brevis*, and *ācer*. Decline *omnēs Rōmāni*, *periculum commūne*, and *dux fortis*. What English words are derived from *gravis*, *omnis*, and *fortis*? What is the more common ending for the ablative singular of adjectives of the third declension? How can you tell from the vocabularies whether an adjective of the third declension has one, two, or three terminations? Express in Latin *for an eager man*, *with all the citizens*, *among the brave centurions*. Tell the reason for the case of each noun in 202.

### LESSON XXX

**582.** How can you tell a verb of the fourth conjugation from a verb in -iō of the third conjugation? How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ in inflection from verbs in -iō of the third conjugation?

Inflect *dēfendō* and *veniō* in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect indicative active, and make synopses of each. What are the present and perfect stems of the verbs in 213? Decline *flūmen* and *dux nōbilis*. What English words are derived from *paucī*, *nōbilis*, *audiō*, and *dēfendō*? What are the principal parts of *dūcō*, *mittō*, *capiō*, *fugiō*, and *iaciō*?

## LESSON XXXI

**583.** Give eight uses of the ablative case, two of the dative, and two of the accusative. Inflect *gerō* in all the tenses you have studied. Decline *ea aestās*, *secundus annus*, *nox*, and *tempus breve*. Express in Latin *within ten hours*, *at that time*, *during the second summer*. What is the rule for the expression of time when in Latin? From what Latin words are *perennial*, *decimate*, *primitive*, *extemporaneous*, and *belligerent* derived?

## LESSON XXXII

**584.** What auxiliary word must be used in translating the pluperfect? How are the pluperfect and future perfect tenses formed? Inflect *veniō*, *sum*, and *gerō* in these tenses. What is the Latin way of saying *the Roman people*? What is the perfect system of a verb? What is the difference in the meaning of *Gallus* and *Gallia*? What is the meaning of *fuerat*? of *habuerat*? Write a Latin sentence containing an ablative of cause, an ablative of accompaniment, and a pluperfect indicative active.

## LESSON XXXIII

**585.** In what two ways may a demonstrative be used? Distinguish between *is*, *hic*, and *ille*. Decline these words. Give the complete rules for place from which and place to which. Express in Latin *from Italy*, *from Rome*, *to Gaul*, *to Athens*. Make a synopsis of *gerō* in the third person singular and plural of the indicative active. From the derivation of the words what is the difference between a *society* and a *fraternity*?

## LESSON XXXV

**586.** What is the passive voice? What are the personal endings of the passive voice? In passive sentences how is the person doing the act expressed in Latin? How is the thing doing the act expressed? Inflect **superō** and **videō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative passive, and make synopses of each. In how many ways have you used the ablative case? How many of these uses employ **ā** or **ab**? How many employ **cum**? Express in Latin *they are overcome by weapons, they are overcome by the Gauls.* Where does the tense sign in the passive differ from the tense sign in the active?

## LESSON XXXVI

**587.** What is the antecedent of a relative pronoun? In what respects does a relative agree with its antecedent? In what case is a relative? Decline **qui**. Inflect **vāstō** in the active indicative, and make a synopsis of the third person singular and plural in the passive. Decline **vestrum cōnsilium, legiō pīma, and turris.** Express in Latin *the traders to whom I gave, the traders toward whom, among the mountains which I see, against those men whose sons are.* Give English derivatives from the words in 249.

## LESSON XXXVII

**588.** Decline **castra** and **cōsul Rōmānus.** Inflect **vincō** and **recipiō** in the present system active and passive. Make synopses in the third person singular and plural of **vincō**. What is the second person singular of the present passive of **gerō**? the second person singular of the future passive of **vincō**? What are the third persons plural of the present and future active and passive of **dūcō** and **iaciō**? From what Latin words are *pacific, consulate, reception, and victor* derived?

## LESSON XXXVIII

**589.** Decline the personal pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Decline the reflexive pronouns of the first, second, and third persons. Why is the nominative of reflexive pronouns not

needed? Express in Latin *his, her, their, to him, to himself, him, himself, to me, with us*. Inflect **interficiō** in the active and passive indicative through the perfect tense, and make synopses in the third person singular and plural. What is the position of **cum** when it is used with personal pronouns?

### LESSON XXXIX

**590.** Inflect **dicō** in the perfect system, and **impediō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **incitō** in the third person singular and of **praebeō** in the third person plural. Give English words derived from **dicō**, **impediō**, and **incitō**. What is the difference in meaning of the perfect indefinite and the imperfect? Decline **aedificium**. Tell the reason for the case of each noun, adjective, and relative pronoun in 275.

### LESSON XL

**591.** What kind of word is **suus**? When should it be used? When may it be omitted? How do you say *his, her, its, their*, when they are not reflexive? What kind of words are followed by an ablative of separation? Give six verbs that may be followed by this ablative. What prepositions are used with the ablative of separation? What other ablative is of the same nature as the ablative of separation? Inflect **dēsistō** in the indicative active, and **interclūdō** in the indicative passive. Give English derivatives from **privō**, **prohibeō**, and **dēsistō**.

### LESSON XLI

**592.** What tenses of the verb belong to the present system? to the perfect system? to the participial system? Point out six uses of the ablative in 290. Inflect **gerō** throughout the indicative passive. Decline **impedimentum**, **imperātor**, and **mora brevis**. How do **concilium** and **cōnsilium** differ in meaning? Why does a participle change its endings?

### LESSON XLII

**593.** What are the case endings of the fourth declension? What is the rule for the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? What exceptions are there to this rule? Decline **lacus**, **adventus**, **domus**, and

**cornū.** Inflect **mūniō** in the participial system, and make a synopsis in the third person plural active and passive. How are place from which and place to which expressed with the word **domus**? Give English words derived from **adventus**, **manus**, and **mūniō**.

### LESSON XLIII

**594.** What are the three degrees of comparison of adjectives? Compare **fortis** and **longus**. Decline the positive, comparative, and superlative of **gravis**. Inflect **petō** in the indicative active and passive. Make a synopsis of **faciō** in the first person plural of the active voice. Decline **senātus Rōmānus** and **iter longum**. How do you say in Latin *rather long, too new, very brave, I shall march, we were attacking?*

### LESSON XLIV

**595.** Compare **similis**, **dissimilis**, and **nōbilis**. Give two uses of the genitive and two of the dative case. What is a partitive genitive? Give an exception to the rule for the partitive genitive. Decline **pars** and **lītus angustum**. What adjectives are compared like **similis**? Compare **ācer**, and decline its comparative.

### LESSON XLVI

**596.** Compare **bonus**, **summus**, **peior**, **plūrimus**, **minus**, and **maiōrem**, and decline each in the comparative degree. How is the comparative of **multus** used? What does **summus mōns** mean? Give English words that are derived from the words in 316. Give all the ways in which you have used each case.

### LESSON XLVII

**597.** What do adverbs modify? What is the regular way of forming adverbs from adjectives? What cases of adjectives are used as adverbs? Give examples. Form and compare an adverb from an adjective of the first and second declensions; from an adjective of the third declension of one ending. Form and compare adverbs from **ācer**, **miser**, and **bonūs**. Decline **multitūdō**. Inflect **dō** throughout

the indicative. Inflect **praemittō** in the participial system. Make a synopsis of **relinquō** in the third person plural. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns in 329.

## LESSON XLVIII.

**598.** What are the case endings for each declension in the nominative singular? in the genitive singular? in the other cases? What is the gender of nouns of the fourth declension? of the fifth? Give the case endings of the fifth declension. Decline **diēs**, **rēs**, and **aciēs**. Inflect **pōnō** in the present and the future indicative active, and **instruō** in the present system. Make a synopsis of **pōnō** in the third person singular. Give three uses of the accusative case. How is time during which expressed? How is duration of time expressed?

## LESSON L

**599.** What tenses has the subjunctive? What vowels characterize the present subjunctive of the several conjugations? Inflect the present subjunctive active and passive of **laudō**, **videō**, **gerō**, **recipiō**, **audiō**, and **sum**. To which system of the verb does the present subjunctive belong? How is purpose expressed in English? How in Latin? When is **ut** used in purpose clauses? When is **nē** used? Translate **venit ut videat** in five ways. Are purpose clauses independent or dependent? Are they adjectives, adverbs, or nouns in nature?

## LESSON LI

**600.** How is the imperfect subjunctive formed? Inflect the present and the imperfect subjunctive active and passive of **portō**, **terreō**, **mittō**, **iaciō**, and **mūniō**. To which system does the imperfect subjunctive belong? What do you understand by sequence of tenses? What are the primary tenses? What are the secondary tenses? Give the rules for the sequence of tenses, and for the tense of the subjunctive in purpose clauses. Translate **vēnit ut vidēret** in as many ways as you can. Tell the reason for the tense of each subjunctive in 353.

## LESSON LII

**601.** Explain the difference between a substantive clause of purpose and an adverbial clause of purpose. Give an example of each. With what verbs are substantive clauses of purpose found? What is the rule for result clauses? What words in the independent clause indicate that a result clause will follow? Inflect *agō* in the present system. What English words are derived from *agō* and *imperō*?

## LESSON LIV

**602.** What is an indirect question? In what mood is its verb? State when each tense may be used. How is the perfect subjunctive formed in the active voice? in the passive? Inflect *rogō* in all the tenses of the subjunctive active. To which system do the perfect and the pluperfect passive subjunctive belong? Inflect *audiō* in all tenses of that system. Make a synopsis of *rogō* in the third person singular. Express in Latin *I know who is fighting, I knew who had fought.* Tell the reason for the mood and tense of each subjunctive in 375.

## LESSON LV

**603.** Count in Latin to ten. What are cardinals? What are ordinals? Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, and *mille*. How is *mille* used? What is the difference between the possessive and the objective genitive? Give examples of each. Inflect the subjunctive active of *discēdō*. Decline *passus* and *dexter*. What Latin words are suggested by *timorous*, *million*, *unicorn*, *dual*, *dexterity*, *memory*? Give all the English words you can think of that are derived from *ūnus*.

## LESSON LVI

**604.** Decline *aeger* and *neuter*. Decline *magnus* and *nūllus*. What are the ten irregular adjectives of the first and second declensions? Give English derivatives from the words in 386. Say in Latin *which of the two do you see? one is a farmer, another is a slave, a third is a poet.*

## LESSON LVII

**605.** How many tenses has the infinitive mood? What are they? How is each formed? To which system of the verb does the perfect infinitive active belong? the perfect infinitive passive? the future infinitive active? How is the future active participle of a verb formed? What are the infinitives of *gerō*? What do they mean? What part of speech is an infinitive? Name two uses of the infinitive, and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. What is a complementary infinitive? What is the case of a predicate adjective after a complementary infinitive? What English words are suggested by *dēbeō*? Tell how each infinitive in 396 is used.

## LESSON LVIII

**606.** Mention three uses of the infinitive mood. Say in Latin *I desire to learn the way* and *I desire you to learn the way*. What uses of the infinitive do these sentences illustrate? What kind of clause is used with *imperō*? with *iubeō*? What is an indirect statement? In what mood is its verb? When are the different tenses of this mood used in indirect statements? What is an indirect question? In what mood is the verb of an indirect question? When are the different tenses of this mood used in indirect questions? When *sē* and *suus* occur in indirect statements, to what do they frequently refer? Express in Latin *Cæsar was a general*; then express it indirectly after *I know*, *I knew*, and *I shall know*. Give English derivatives from the words in 403. Make a synopsis of *iubeō* in the third person singular. Give the infinitives of *iubeō* and of *cognoscō*. Explain the reason for the tense of each infinitive in 404.

## LESSON LX

**607.** Give the meanings of *is*, *idem*, *hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*. Of what is *idem* compounded? What part of *idem* remains unchanged in declension? How is the accusative singular masculine written? Pronounce the neuter nominative singular. What does *ipse* do in a sentence? Inflect *possum* throughout and make synopses. What usage

of the infinitive generally accompanies **possum**? What English words are derived from **nihil**, **putō**, **respondeō**, and **nūntiō**?

### LESSON LXI

**608.** Name four indefinite pronouns. Decline **quīdam** and **aliquis**. Name seven kinds of pronouns, giving an example of each. Review the declension of the various pronouns. Give the usages that you have learned for the several cases of nouns. Illustrate each by a brief Latin sentence.

### LESSON LXII

**609.** Recite the rule for the dative with compounds. Give some compound verbs with which the dative is used. What is the double dative? Inflect **dēsum** in all moods. Name a compound verb which takes both an accusative and a dative. What Latin words are suggested by the English words *munitions*, *prefect*, *subsidize*, *occurrence*? Illustrate the dative of purpose by a Latin sentence. Tell the reason for the case of the nouns and for the mood and tense of the subjunctives in 430.

### LESSON LXIII

**610.** Inflect **volō** and **nōlō**. Make a synopsis of each in the third person singular and plural. Give the rule for the dative with special intransitive verbs, and name verbs followed by such a dative. Say in Latin in two ways *Cæsar ordered the men to come into the camp*. Decline **mulier**, **sōl**, and **occāsus**. Inflect **resistō** in the present subjunctive and the future indicative active. Explain sequence of tenses. What tenses are used in purpose clauses, and when?

### LESSON LXV

**611.** How is the present participle formed? the future active participle? the future passive participle? Give the participles of **gerō** and their meanings. Decline **fugiēns**. What part of speech is a participle? What is the rule for the agreement of participles? Explain the tenses of participles. Translate **Gallī territi ex agris**

fugiēbant in six ways. Give English words derived from *commoveō* and *reducō*. Inflect *commoveō* in the present system. Give the infinitives and the participles of *reducō*.

## LESSON LXVII

**612.** What is an ablative absolute? In what three ways is it formed? Give examples. Which participles are used in making the ablative absolute, and what time do they express? Translate *bellō factō* in five ways. Express in Latin *having captured the town they freed the captives*. Decline *dēditiō* and *rīpa*. What does *media urbs* mean? Give the rule for the ablative absolute.

## LESSON LXVIII

**613.** Name two parts of the verb which are verbal nouns. Decline the gerunds of *iaciō* and of *mittō*. What is used in place of the nominative of the gerund? Translate *ad petendum*. What other ways of expressing the same idea are there in Latin? Inflect *eō* throughout. Make synopses in each person. Decline *nōmen* and *spatium*. Give English words suggested by the Latin words of 463. Give the infinitives and the participles of *ōrō*, with their meanings.

## LESSON LXIX

**614.** What other name has the gerundive? What part of speech is a gerund? What part of speech is a gerundive? Decline the gerund and the gerundive of *videō*. Name two uses of the gerundive. Express in Latin *for the purpose of capturing the city* and *the signal had to be given*. Decline *vīs*. Inflect *augeō* in the indicative active, *conveniō* in the subjunctive active, and *ferō* throughout, and give synopses of each. State what you know about the uses of participles.

## LESSON LXXI

**615.** What is a deponent verb? What active forms has a deponent verb? Inflect *cōnor* throughout. Give a Latin sentence containing an ablative of specification. What uses of the ablative case do you

know? What English words are suggested by **sequor**, **hortor**, and **experior**? Make a synopsis of **sequor** in the third person singular.

### LESSON LXXII

**616.** Inflect **faciō** in the active and the passive voice. Make a synopsis of **vereor** in the third person plural. What is a clause? What clauses thus far studied have had a verb in the subjunctive? in the infinitive? Recite the rule for temporal clauses introduced by **cum**. Say in Latin *I was informed by you, you informed me.*

### LESSON LXXIV

**617.** What substantive clauses have you studied? In which mood are their verbs? Give the rule for **quod** clauses of fact. Say in Latin *that road, as we have shown, was more difficult*. Decline **lēgātiō**. Inflect **ēgredior** throughout. Make synopses of **cōgō**. Give English words suggested by the words in 498.

### LESSON LXXV

**618.** What is the rule for the main verb of a statement that is given indirectly? for the subordinate verb of such a statement? What determines the sequence of tenses in indirect statements? Compare **celeriter** and decline **initium**. Inflect **mōrō** and **revertor** throughout. What uses do you know for each case of nouns (512)? How have you used the subjunctive mood (513)? the infinitive (513)? the participle (513)?

## APPENDIX I

### RULES OF SYNTAX

NOTE. These rules are here numbered consecutively for the convenience of teachers and pupils. The number in parentheses following a rule is its section number.

#### 619. Agreement.

1. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (29).
2. A predicate noun agrees in case with the subject of the verb (87).
3. A predicate adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the verb (88).
4. An appositive agrees in case with the noun which it explains (94).
5. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case (79).
6. A predicate adjective used with a complementary infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case with the subject of the main verb (394, b).
7. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on the way it is used in its own clause (248).

#### 620. Nominative Case.

8. The subject of a verb is in the nominative case (28).

#### 621. Genitive Case.

9. The word denoting the owner or possessor is in the genitive case (44).
10. Words denoting a part may have with them a genitive of the whole from which the part is taken (309).

11. Some nouns of action and feeling may have with them a genitive to express the object of the action or feeling implied in the nouns (381).

12. The genitive denotes that of which something consists or is made (p. 79, note 1)

### 622. Dative Case.

13. The indirect object of a verb is in the dative case (57).

14. Certain adjectives meaning *near*, *fit*, *friendly*, *pleasing*, *like*, and their opposites, may be accompanied by a dative to show the person or the thing toward which the quality of the adjective is directed (111).

15. Some verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **dē**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, and **super**, take a dative of the indirect object. Transitive compounds may take both an accusative and a dative (425).

16. The dative is used to denote the purpose for which a thing serves (427).

17. The dative is used to denote the person (or, rarely, the thing) affected by the action or situation expressed by the verb (428).

18. Most verbs meaning *believe*, *favor*, *help*, *please*, *trust*, and their opposites, also *command*, *obey*, *pardon*, *persuade*, *resist*, *serve*, *spare*, and the like, take a dative of the indirect object (433).

### 623. Accusative Case.

19. The object of a verb is in the accusative case (33).

20. Place *to which* is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**; but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, b).

21. The accusative is used with certain prepositions (193).

22. Extent of time or of space is expressed by the accusative (333).

23. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative (399).

### 624. Ablative Case.

24. Place *where* is commonly expressed by a phrase consisting of a preposition, usually **in**, with the ablative case (59).

25. The means by which an action is accomplished is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (122).

26. The ablative with **cum** is used with abstract nouns to denote the manner of an action; but **cum** may be omitted if an adjective modifies the noun of the phrase (129).

27. The ablative with **cum** is used to show accompaniment (143).

28. Place *from which* is usually expressed by the ablative with **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**); but with the names of towns, and with **domus**, the preposition is omitted (230, *a*).

29. The ablative without a preposition is used to express cause (185).

30. The ablative is used with certain prepositions (194).

31. The time at which or within which a thing happens is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (219).

32. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab** (243).

33. Words signifying *privation*, *removal*, or *separation* are followed by the ablative without a preposition, or with the prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, **ē** (**ex**) (282).

34. The degree of difference is expressed by the ablative (321).

35. The ablative of a noun or pronoun, with a participle, a noun, or an adjective in agreement, is used to express *time*, *cause*, *concession*, *condition*, or other relations (455).

36. The ablative without a preposition is used to denote in what respect something is true (481).

### 625. Adverbial Clauses.

37. The cause of an action may be expressed by a dependent clause introduced by **quod** (51).

38. The subjunctive is used with **ut** or **nē** in a dependent clause to express the purpose of the action stated in the independent clause (344).

39. The subjunctive is used with *ut* or *ut nōn* in a dependent clause to express the result of the action stated in the independent clause (358).

40. Temporal clauses referring to past time, when introduced by *cum*, have their verb in the indicative if they fix the time of an action, but in the subjunctive if they describe the circumstances of an action (488).

41. Adverbial clauses introduced by *quā* and *ut* (= *as*) have their verbs in the indicative (497).

### 626. Adjective Clauses.

42. A relative clause modifies its antecedent as an adjective modifying its noun (247, b).

### 627. Substantive Clauses.

43. Verbs meaning *ask*, *command*, *persuade*, and *urge* may have for their object a clause of purpose with its verb in the subjunctive (356).

44. An indirect question, with its verb in the subjunctive, may be used as the subject or the object of another verb (372, b).

45. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the subject of another verb (393).

46. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used as the object of another verb (393).

47. An infinitive with subject accusative may be used with verbs meaning *say*, *think*, *know*, *perceive*, and the like, to express an indirect statement (401).

48. The indicative is used with *quod* in a substantive clause to state something which is regarded as a fact (496).

### 628. Participles, the Gerund, and the Gerundive.

49. A participle may be used as an adjective to modify a noun; or it may express the idea that might otherwise be expressed by a clause of *time*, *concession*, *cause*, or *condition*, or by a *relative* clause (443–445).

50. The gerund is a verbal noun used in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular, with the constructions of regular nouns (461).

51. When a gerund with an object might be used, the gerundive is the more usual construction. The gerundive is a verbal adjective in agreement with a noun (471, 472).

52. The gerund or the gerundive with **ad** or **causā** may be used to express the purpose of an action (461, 472).

53. The gerundive is used with the forms of the verb **sum** to express necessary action (473).

### 629. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statements.

54. The verbs of the subordinate clauses of an indirect statement are in the subjunctive (502).

## FORMATION OF LATIN WORDS

During the first year of the study of Latin the pupil should learn the force of the prefixes and suffixes given below.

### 630. Prefixes.

**ā-** (*ab-, abs-*), *away from, from*  
**ad-**, *to, toward, against*  
**con-**, *together; completely*  
**dē-**, *down from; from*  
**ex- (ē-)**, *out from, out of; completely*  
**in-**, *in, into, on, toward*  
**in-**, *not; like English *un-*, *in-**  
**inter-**, *between*  
**per-**, *through; thoroughly*  
**prae-**, *in front of, in advance*  
**prō-**, *forward, forth, for*  
**re-** (*red-*), *back, again*  
**sub-** (*subs-*), *under, from under, up*  
**trāns-** (*trā-*), *across, through*

**ab + dūcō = abdūcō**, *lead away*  
**ad + dūcō = addūcō**, *lead to*  
**con + dūcō = condūcō**, *lead together*  
**dē + dūcō = dēdūcō**, *lead down*  
**ē + dūcō = ēdūcō**, *lead out*.  
**in + dūcō = indūcō**, *lead in, lead on*  
**in + amīcus = inimīcus**, *unfriendly*  
**inter + cēdō = intercēdō**, *go between*  
**per + dūcō = perdūcō**, *lead through*  
**prae + mittō = praemittō**, *send ahead*  
**prō + dūcō = prōdūcō**, *lead forth*  
**re + dūcō = redūcō**, *lead back*  
**su(b)s + teneō = sustineō**, *hold up, sustain*  
**trā + dūcō = trādūcō**, *lead across*

**631.** Explain the formation of the following verbs, and give the meaning of each :

|             |            |           |           |           |
|-------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| appropinquō | cognōscō   | incolō    | īnstruō   | persuādeō |
| convocō     | dēpōnō     | sustineō  | conlocō   | addūcō    |
| exspectō    | reddō      | reperiō   | cōnstituō | redūcō    |
| dēmōnstrō   | dēsum      | respondeō | ēdūcō     | suscipiō  |
| compleō     | coniciō    | recipiō   | trādō     | accēdō    |
| perturbō    | permittō   | impediō   | commoveō  | perficiō  |
| praebeō     | trānseō    | incitō    | praeficiō | ēgredior  |
| prohibeō    | prōgredior | expugnō   | praestō   | cōgō      |
| dēsistō     | exīstimō   | perveniō  | praesum   | cōnsuēscō |
| accipiō     | cōfirmō    | praemittō | resistō   | revertor  |
| dēbeō       | dēfendō    | conveniō  | excēdō    | prōcēdō   |

**632. Suffixes.**

a. The suffixes **-tās**, **-tūs**, and **-ia**, when added to the stems of nouns, make other nouns denoting *condition* or *characteristic*:

cīvi (stem of *cīvis*, *citizen*) + **tās** = *cīvitās*, *citizenship* (the condition or characteristic of a citizen); *state*, *tribe*.

**vir** (weakened stem of *vir*, *man*) + **tūs** = *virtūs*, *manliness*, *valor* (the characteristic of a man).

b. The suffixes **-ia**, **-tia**, **-tās**, and **-tūdō**, when added to the stems of adjectives, make abstract nouns denoting *quality* or *condition*:

**alti** (weakened stem of *altus*, *high*) + **tūdō** = *altitūdō*, *height* (the quality or condition of being high).

c. The suffixes **-iō**, **-tiō**, **-tus**, and **-ium**, when added to the stems of verbs, make verbal nouns denoting an *act* or the *result of an act*:

**mūni** (stem of *mūniō*, *fortify*) + **tiō** = *mūnitiō*, *a fortifying*, *a fortification* (the act of fortifying, or the result of the act of fortifying).

**633. Explain the formation of the following nouns:**

|            |           |            |             |          |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|----------|
| victōria   | nātiō     | aedificium | celeritās   | dēditiō  |
| praemium   | cōnsilium | adventus   | difficultās | ēruptiō  |
| studium    | legiō     | exercitus  | mūnitiō     | altitūdō |
| imperium   | multitūdō | equitātus  | praesidium  | facultās |
| virtūs     | cīvitās   | cōspectus  | subsidiū    | lēgātiō  |
| conloquium | tempestās | memoria    | occāsus     | condiciō |

## ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

**634. Suggestions for a Notebook.** In making a collection of the English words that are derived from the Latin words of the vocabularies, the pupil should keep the results of his work in a notebook. Such a book should contain, in addition to the list of derivatives, the definition of each derivative, and a brief sentence illustrating its use. A suggested form of arrangement for the notebook follows:

DERIVATIVES OF **Vocō**, *call*

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| vocō, vocāre, vocāvī,<br>vocātus | vocation, vocational, vocal, evoke, convocate, convocation,<br>vocative, revoke, invoke, vociferous, invocation  |
|                                  | vocation : a <i>calling</i> , occupation<br>vocational : pertaining to a vocation or <i>calling</i><br>vocal : pertaining to the voice<br>evoke : <i>call</i> out<br>convocate : <i>call</i> together<br>convocation : a <i>calling</i> together, an assembly<br>vocative : case of <i>calling</i> , case of address<br>revoke : <i>call</i> back<br>invoke : <i>call</i> upon, ask for<br>vociferous : of large <i>calling</i> power, with a loud voice<br>invocation : a <i>calling</i> upon, a prayer                         |
|                                  | vocation : The choice of a vocation is not always easy<br>vocational : Vocational guidance is often necessary<br>vocal : He is receiving vocal instruction<br>evoke : His remarks evoked applause<br>convocate : He will convocate the council<br>convocation : Convocation day is at hand<br>vocative : The vocative is not common in Cæsar<br>revoke : Their punishment will be revoked<br>invoke : The ancients invoked many gods<br>vociferous : The audience became vociferous<br>invocation : The invocation was then made |

**635.** The following verbs are especially worthy of study in the manner suggested above because of the large number of English words derived from them :

|        |                 |       |                |          |
|--------|-----------------|-------|----------------|----------|
| amō    | dūcō            | audiō | locō (conlocō) | nāvigō   |
| videō  | mittō           | dīcō  | cēdō           | pōnō     |
| habeō  | capiō           | vincō | parō           | cognōscō |
| doceō  | iaciō           | faciō | pugnō          | putō     |
| moneō  | sedeō (obsideō) | dō    | teneō          | moveō    |
| terreō | timeō           | agō   | veniō          | sūmō     |

The prefixes listed in 630, and also *ante*, *before*, *circum*, *around*, *ob*, *toward*, and *super*, *above*, usually are evident in the English derivatives of Latin words. But sometimes the prefix appears in a different spelling : thus,

- ab- appears as a-, abs-, as- (*abstain*)
- ad- appears as ac-, ag-, al-, ap-, ar-, as-, at- (*apparatus*)
- con- appears as com-, co-, col-, cor- (*composition*)
- in- appears as im-, ir-, il- (*impose*)
- ob- appears as oc-, of-, obs-, o- (*occur*)
- sub- appears as suc-, suf-, sug-, sup-, sur- (*suppose*)

## APPENDIX II

### DECLENSION, CONJUGATION, ETC.

#### NOUNS

**636.**

#### FIRST DECLENSION

| SINGULAR     |        | PLURAL       |          |
|--------------|--------|--------------|----------|
| CASE ENDINGS |        | CASE ENDINGS |          |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | hasta  | -a           | hastae   |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | hastae | -ae          | hastārum |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | hastae | -ae          | hastīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | hastam | -am          | hastās   |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | hastā  | -ā           | hastīs   |

**637.**

#### SECOND DECLENSION

| SINGULAR     |        | PLURAL       |          |
|--------------|--------|--------------|----------|
| CASE ENDINGS |        | CASE ENDINGS |          |
|              | MASC.  |              | MASC.    |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | hortus | -us          | hortī    |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | hortī  | -ī           | hortōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | hortō  | -ō           | hortīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | hortum | -um          | hortōs   |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | hortō  | -ō           | hortīs   |

| SINGULAR     |       | PLURAL       |         |
|--------------|-------|--------------|---------|
| CASE ENDINGS |       | CASE ENDINGS |         |
|              | NEUT. |              | NEUT.   |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | dōnum | -um          | dōna    |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | dōnī  | -ī           | dōnōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | dōnō  | -ō           | dōnīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | dōnum | -um          | dōna    |
| <i>Abl.</i>  | dōnō  | -ō           | dōnīs   |

## SINGULAR

|             |        |       |       |        |
|-------------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | puer   | ager  | vir   | filius |
| <i>Gen.</i> | puerī  | agrī  | virī  | filiī  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | puerō  | agrō  | virō  | filiō  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | puerum | agrum | virum | filiūm |
| <i>Abl.</i> | puerō  | agrō  | virō  | filiō  |

## PLURAL

|             |          |         |         |          |
|-------------|----------|---------|---------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | puerī    | agrī    | virī    | filiī    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | puerōrum | agrōrum | virōrum | filiōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | puerīs   | agrīs   | virīs   | filiīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | puerōs   | agrōs   | virōs   | filiōs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | puerīs   | agrīs   | virīs   | filiīs   |

## SINGULAR

|             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | proelium |
| <i>Gen.</i> | proelī   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | proeliō  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | proelium |
| <i>Abl.</i> | proeliō  |

## PLURAL

|            |
|------------|
| proelia    |
| proeliōrum |
| proeliīs   |
| proelia    |
| proeliīs   |

## 638.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

|             |       |         |          |         |
|-------------|-------|---------|----------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | rēx   | mīles   | virtūs   | caput   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | rēgis | mīlitis | virtūtis | capitis |
| <i>Dat.</i> | rēgī  | mīlitī  | virtūtī  | capitī  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | rēgem | mīlitem | virtūtem | caput   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | rēge  | mīlite  | virtūte  | capite  |

## CASE ENDINGS

| M. AND F. | N.  |
|-----------|-----|
| -s or —   | —   |
| -is       | -is |
| -ī        | -ī  |
| -em       | —   |
| -e        | -e  |

## PLURAL

|             |         |           |            |           |
|-------------|---------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | rēgēs   | mīlitēs   | virtūtēs   | capita    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | rēgum   | mīlitum   | virtūtum   | capitum   |
| <i>Dat.</i> | rēgibus | mīlitibus | virtūtibus | capitibus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | rēgēs   | mīlitēs   | virtūtēs   | capita    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | rēgibus | mīlitibus | virtūtibus | capitibus |

| —ēs   | -a    |
|-------|-------|
| -um   | -um   |
| -ibus | -ibus |
| -ēs   | -a    |
| -ibus | -ibus |

639.

*I*-STEMS

## SINGULAR

## CASE ENDINGS

## M. AND F. N.

|             |        |          |        |       |                 |
|-------------|--------|----------|--------|-------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hostis | cohors   | mōns   | mare  | -s (-is, -ēs) — |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hostis | cohortis | montis | maris | -is —           |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hostī  | cohortī  | montī  | marī  | -ī —            |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hostem | cohortem | montem | mare  | -em (-im) —     |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hoste  | cohorte  | monte  | marī  | -e (-ī) —       |

## PLURAL

|             |              |                |              |         |               |
|-------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|---------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | hostēs       | cohortēs       | montēs       | maria   | -ēs —ia       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | hostium      | cohortium      | montium      | marium  | -ium —ium     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | hostibus     | cohortibus     | montibus     | maribus | -ibus —ibus   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | hostīs (-ēs) | cohortīs (-ēs) | montīs (-ēs) | maria   | -īs (-ēs) —ia |
| <i>Abl.</i> | hostibus     | cohortibus     | montibus     | maribus | -ibus —ibus   |

## SING.

## PLUR.

## SING.

## PLUR.

|             |           |             |              |              |
|-------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ignis     | ignēs       | turris       | turrēs       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ignis     | ignium      | turris       | turrium      |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ignī      | ignibus     | turrī        | turribus     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ignem     | ignīs (-ēs) | turrim (-em) | turrīs (-ēs) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ignī (-e) | ignibus     | turrī (-e)   | turribus     |

640.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

## SINGULAR

## CASE ENDINGS

## CASE ENDINGS

## MASC.

## NEUT.

|             |                |          |        |     |
|-------------|----------------|----------|--------|-----|
| <i>Nom.</i> | exercitus      | -us      | cornū  | -ū  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | exercitūs      | -ūs      | cornūs | -ūs |
| <i>Dat.</i> | exercituī (-ū) | -ūī (-ū) | cornū  | -ū  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | exercitum      | -um      | cornū  | -ū  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | exercitū       | -ū       | cornū  | -ū  |

| PLURAL      |              |               |       | CASE ENDINGS | CASE ENDINGS |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|-------|--------------|--------------|
|             | CASE ENDINGS |               | MASC. |              | NEUT.        |
| <i>Nom.</i> | exercitūs    | -ūs           |       | cornua       | -ua          |
| <i>Gen.</i> | exercituum   | -uum          |       | cornuum      | -uum         |
| <i>Dat.</i> | exercitibus  | -ibus (-ubus) |       | cornibus     | -ibus        |
| <i>Acc.</i> | exercitūs    | -ūs           |       | cornua       | -ua          |
| <i>Abl.</i> | exercitibus  | -ibus (-ubus) |       | cornibus     | -ibus        |

## 641.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

CASE ENDINGS

|             | SING. | PLUR.  | SING. | PLUR. | SING. | PLUR. |
|-------------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | diēs  | diēs   | rēs   | rēs   | -ēs   | -ēs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | diēī  | diērum | rei   | rērum | -ēī   | -ērum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | diēī  | diēbus | rei   | rēbus | -ēī   | -ēbus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | diem  | diēs   | rem   | rēs   | -em   | -ēs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | diē   | diēbus | rē    | rēbus | -ē    | -ēbus |

## 642.

## SPECIAL PARADIGMS

SINGULAR

|             |      |            |          |     |
|-------------|------|------------|----------|-----|
| <i>Nom.</i> | deus | domus      | iter     | vīs |
| <i>Gen.</i> | deī  | domūs (-ī) | itineris | vīs |
| <i>Dat.</i> | deō  | domuī (-ō) | itinerī  | vī  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | deum | domum      | iter     | vim |
| <i>Abl.</i> | deō  | domō (-ū)  | itinere  | vī  |

PLURAL

|             |                  |                |            |             |
|-------------|------------------|----------------|------------|-------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | deī (diī, dī)    | domūs          | itinera    | vīrēs       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | deōrum (deum)    | domuum (-ōrum) | itinerum   | vīrium      |
| <i>Dat.</i> | deīs (diīs, dīs) | domibus        | itineribus | vīribus     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | deōs             | domōs (-ūs)    | itinera    | vīrīs (-ēs) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | deīs (diīs, dīs) | domibus        | itineribus | vīribus     |

SINGULAR

|             |          |
|-------------|----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Iuppiter |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Iovis    |
| <i>Dat.</i> | Iovī     |
| <i>Acc.</i> | Iovem    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | Iovē     |

## ADJECTIVES

## 643. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

## SINGULAR

|             | MASC.        | FEM.         | NEUT.        |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>bonus</i> | <i>bona</i>  | <i>bonum</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>bonī</i>  | <i>bonae</i> | <i>bonī</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>bonae</i> | <i>bonō</i>  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>bonum</i> | <i>bonam</i> | <i>bonum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>bonō</i>  | <i>bonā</i>  | <i>bonō</i>  |

## PLURAL

|             |                |                |                |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>bonī</i>    | <i>bonae</i>   | <i>bona</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>bonōrum</i> | <i>bonārum</i> | <i>bonōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>bonōs</i>   | <i>bonās</i>   | <i>bona</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   | <i>bonīs</i>   |

## SINGULAR

|             | MASC.          | FEM.           | NEUT.          |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>līber</i>   | <i>lībera</i>  | <i>līberum</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>līberī</i>  | <i>līberae</i> | <i>līberī</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>līberō</i>  | <i>līberae</i> | <i>līberō</i>  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>līberum</i> | <i>līberam</i> | <i>līberum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>līberō</i>  | <i>līberā</i>  | <i>līberō</i>  |

## PLURAL

|             |                  |                  |                  |
|-------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>līberī</i>    | <i>līberae</i>   | <i>lībera</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>līberōrum</i> | <i>līberārum</i> | <i>līberōrum</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>līberīs</i>   | <i>līberīs</i>   | <i>līberīs</i>   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>līberōs</i>   | <i>līberās</i>   | <i>lībera</i>    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>līberīs</i>   | <i>līberīs</i>   | <i>līberīs</i>   |

## SINGULAR

|             | MASC.          | FEM.           | NEUT.          |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | <i>noster</i>  | <i>nostra</i>  | <i>nostrum</i> |
| <i>Gen.</i> | <i>nostrī</i>  | <i>nostrae</i> | <i>nostrī</i>  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | <i>nostrō</i>  | <i>nostrae</i> | <i>nostrō</i>  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | <i>nostrum</i> | <i>nostram</i> | <i>nostrum</i> |
| <i>Abl.</i> | <i>nostrō</i>  | <i>nostrā</i>  | <i>nostrō</i>  |

| PLURAL      |           |           |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|             | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| <i>Nom.</i> | nostrī    | nostræ    | nostra    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | nostrōrum | nostrārum | nostrōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | nostrīs   | nostrīs   | nostrīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | nostrōs   | nostrās   | nostra    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | nostrīs   | nostrīs   | nostrīs   |

## 644.

## THIRD DECLENSION

| SINGULAR    |             |             | SINGULAR  |        |  |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------|--|
| M. AND F.   | N.          |             | M. AND F. | N.     |  |
| <i>Nom.</i> | audāx       | audāx       | brevis    | breve  |  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | audācis     | audācis     | brevis    | brevis |  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | audācī      | audācī      | brevī     | brevī  |  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | audācēm     | audāx       | brevem    | breve  |  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | audācī (-e) | audācī (-e) | brevī     | brevī  |  |

| PLURAL      |               |           | PLURAL       |          |       |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|----------|-------|
| MASC.       | FEM.          | NEUT.     | MASC.        | FEM.     | NEUT. |
| <i>Nom.</i> | audācēs       | audācia   | brevēs       | brevia   |       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | audācium      | audācium  | brevium      | brevium  |       |
| <i>Dat.</i> | audācibus     | audācibus | brevibus     | brevibus |       |
| <i>Acc.</i> | audācīs (-ēs) | audācia   | brevīs (-ēs) | brevia   |       |
| <i>Abl.</i> | audācibus     | audācibus | brevibus     | brevibus |       |

| SINGULAR    |       |       | PLURAL |             |         |
|-------------|-------|-------|--------|-------------|---------|
| MASC.       | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.        | NEUT.   |
| <i>Nom.</i> | ācer  | ācris | ācre   | ācrēs       | ācria   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ācris | ācris | ācris  | ācrium      | ācrium  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ācī   | ācī   | ācī    | ācribus     | ācribus |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ācrem | ācrem | ācre   | ācrīs (-ēs) | ācria   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ācī   | ācī   | ācī    | ācribus     | ācribus |

## 645.

## PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLES

| SINGULAR    |             |             | PLURAL        |           |  |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-----------|--|
| M. AND F.   | N.          |             | M. AND F.     | N.        |  |
| <i>Nom.</i> | amāns       | amāns       | amantēs       | amantia   |  |
| <i>Gen.</i> | amantis     | amantis     | amantium      | amantium  |  |
| <i>Dat.</i> | amantī      | amantī      | amantibus     | amantibus |  |
| <i>Acc.</i> | amantem     | amāns       | amantīs (-ēs) | amantia   |  |
| <i>Abl.</i> | amante (-ī) | amante (-ī) | amantibus     | amantibus |  |

|      | SINGULAR   |            | PLURAL       |          |
|------|------------|------------|--------------|----------|
|      | M. AND F.  | N.         | M. AND F.    | N.       |
| Nom. | iēns       | iēns       | euntēs       | euntia   |
| Gen. | euntis     | euntis     | euntium      | euntium  |
| Dat. | euntī      | euntī      | euntibus     | euntibus |
| Acc. | euntem     | iēns       | euntis (-ēs) | euntia   |
| Abl. | eunte (-ī) | eunte (-ī) | euntibus     | euntibus |

## 646.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

|      | SINGULAR   |        |        | PLURAL      |         |         |
|------|------------|--------|--------|-------------|---------|---------|
|      | MASC.      | FEM.   | NEUT.  | MASC.       | FEM.    | NEUT.   |
| Nom. | alius      | alia   | aliud  | aliī        | aliae   | alia    |
| Gen. | alīus      | alīus  | alīus  | aliōrum     | aliārum | aliōrum |
| Dat. | aliī       | aliī   | aliī   | aliīs       | aliīs   | aliīs   |
| Acc. | alium      | aliam  | aliud  | aliōs       | aliās   | alia    |
| Abl. | aliō       | aliā   | aliō   | aliīs       | aliīs   | aliīs   |
|      | MASC.      | FEM.   | NEUT.  | M. AND F.   |         | N.      |
| Nom. | ūnus       | ūna    | ūnum   | trēs        |         | tria    |
| Gen. | ūniūs      | ūniūs  | ūniūs  | trium       |         | trium   |
| Dat. | ūnī        | ūnī    | ūnī    | tribus      |         | tribus  |
| Acc. | ūnum       | ūnam   | ūnum   | trīs (trēs) |         | tria    |
| Abl. | ūnō        | ūnā    | ūnō    | tribus      |         | tribus  |
|      | MASC.      | FEM.   | NEUT.  | SING.       | PLUR.   |         |
| Nom. | duo        | duae   | duo    | mīlle       |         | mīlia   |
| Gen. | duōrum     | duārum | duōrum | mīlle       |         | mīlium  |
| Dat. | duōbus     | duābus | duōbus | mīlle       |         | mīlibus |
| Acc. | duōs (duo) | duās   | duo    | mīlle       |         | mīlia   |
| Abl. | duōbus     | duābus | duōbus | mīlle       |         | mīlibus |

## 647.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

| POSITIVE | COMPARATIVE        | SUPERLATIVE           |
|----------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| lātus    | lātior, lātius     | lātissimus, -a, -um   |
| brevis   | brevior, brevius   | brevissimus, -a, -um  |
| audāx    | audācior, audācius | audācissimus, -a, -um |
| miser    | miserior, miserius | miserrius, -a, -um    |
| ācer     | ācrior, ācrius     | ācerrius, -a, -um     |

## 648.

## DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

## SINGULAR

## M. AND F.

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | lātiōr       |
| <i>Gen.</i> | lātiōris     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | lātiōrī      |
| <i>Acc.</i> | lātiōrem     |
| <i>Abl.</i> | lātiōre (-ī) |

## N.

|              |
|--------------|
| lātiōs       |
| lātiōris     |
| lātiōrī      |
| lātiōs       |
| lātiōre (-ī) |

## PLURAL

## M. AND F.

|                |
|----------------|
| lātiōrēs       |
| lātiōrum       |
| lātiōribus     |
| lātiōrēs (-īs) |
| lātiōribus     |

## N.

|            |
|------------|
| lātiōra    |
| lātiōrum   |
| lātiōribus |
| lātiōra    |
| lātiōribus |

## M. AND F.

## N.

|             |        |
|-------------|--------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | plūs   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | plūris |
| <i>Dat.</i> | —      |
| <i>Acc.</i> | plūs   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | plūre  |

## M. AND F.

## N.

|              |
|--------------|
| plūrēs       |
| plūrium      |
| plūribus     |
| plūrīs (-ēs) |
| plūra        |

|          |
|----------|
| plūra    |
| plūrium  |
| plūribus |
| plūra    |
| plūribus |

## 649.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON

## POSITIVE

|                 |
|-----------------|
| bonus, -a, -um  |
| malus, -a, -um  |
| magnus, -a, -um |
| multus, -a, -um |
| multī, -ae, -a  |
| parvus, -a, -um |
| facilis, -e     |
| difficilis, -e  |
| similis, -e     |
| dissimilis, -e  |

*exterus, outward**inferus, below**posterus, following**superus, above*

## COMPARATIVE

|                   |
|-------------------|
| melior, melius    |
| peior, peius      |
| maiōr, maius      |
| —, plūs           |
| plūrēs, plūra     |
| minor, minus      |
| faciliōr, -ius    |
| difficiliōr, -ius |
| similiōr, -ius    |
| dissimiliōr, -ius |

*exterior, outer,**exterior**inferior, lower**posterior, later**superior, higher*

## SUPERLATIVE

|                        |
|------------------------|
| optimus, -a, -um       |
| pessimus, -a, -um      |
| maximus, -a, -um       |
| plūrimus, -a, -um      |
| plūrimī, -ae, -a,      |
| minimus, -a, -um       |
| facillimus, -a, -um    |
| difficillimus, -a, -um |
| simillimus, -a, -um    |
| dissimillimus, -a, -um |
| extrēmus } outermost,  |
| extimus } last         |
| infimus } lowest       |
| īmus }                 |
| postrēmus } last       |
| postumus }             |
| suprēmus } highest     |
| summus }               |

## POSITIVE

- [*cis, citrā, on this side*]
- [*in, intrā, in, within*]
- [*prae, prō, before*]
- [*prope, near*]
- [*ultrā, beyond*]

## COMPARATIVE

- citerior, hither*
- interior, inner*
- prior, former*
- propior, nearer*
- ulterior, farther*

## SUPERLATIVE

- citimus, hithermost*
- intimus, inmost*
- prīmus, first*
- proximus, next*
- ultimus, farthest*

## 650.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

## POSITIVE

- cārē (cārus)*
- miserē (miser)*
- āriter (ācer)*
- facile (facilis)*
- bene (bonus)*
- male (malus)*
- multum (multus)*
- parum, little*
- diū, long, a long time*
- saepe, often*

## COMPARATIVE

- cārius*
- miserius*
- ācrius*
- facilius*
- melius*
- peius*
- plūs*
- minus*
- diūtius*
- saepius*

## SUPERLATIVE

- cārissimē*
- miserrimē*
- ācerimē*
- facillimē*
- optimē*
- pessimē*
- plūrimum*
- minimē*
- diūtissimē*
- saepissimē*

## 651.

## NUMERALS

## CARDINALS

1. *ūnus, -a, -um*
2. *duo, duae, duo*
3. *trēs, tria*
4. *quattuor*
5. *quīnque*
6. *sex*
7. *septem*
8. *octō*
9. *novem*
10. *decem*
11. *ūndecim*
12. *duodecim*
13. *tredecim*
14. *quattuordecim*

## ORDINALS

- prīmus, -a, -um*
- secundus (or alter)*
- tertius*
- quārtus*
- quīntus*
- sextus*
- septimus*
- octāvus*
- nōnus*
- decimus*
- ūndecimus*
- duodecimus*
- tertius decimus*
- quārtus decimus*

## CARDINALS

15. quīndecim  
 16. sēdecim  
 17. septendecim  
 18. duodēvīgintī  
 19. ūndēvīgintī  
 20. vīgintī  
 21. { vīgintī ūnus *or*  
     { ūnus et vīgintī  
 22. { vīgintī duo *or*  
     { duo et vīgintī  
 28. duodētrīgintā  
 29. ūndētrīgintā  
 30. trīgintā  
 40. quadrāgintā  
 50. quīnquāgintā  
 60. sexāgintā  
 70. septuāgintā  
 80. octōgintā  
 90. nōnāgintā  
 100. centum  
 101. { centum ūnus *or*  
     { centum et ūnus  
 200. ducentī, -ae, -a  
 300. trecentī  
 400. quadrīgentī  
 500. quīngentī  
 600. sescentī  
 700. septingentī  
 800. octingentī  
 900. nōngentī  
 1000. mīlle  
 2000. duo mīlia  
 100,000. centum mīlia

## ORDINALS

- quīntus decimus  
 sextus decimus  
 septimus decimus  
 duodēvīcēnsimus  
 ūndēvīcēnsimus  
 vīcēnsimus  
 { vīcēnsimus prīmus *or*  
     { ūnus et vīcēnsimus  
 { vīcēnsimus secundus *or*  
     { alter et vīcēnsimus  
 duodētrīcēnsimus  
 ūndētrīcēnsimus  
 trīcēnsimus  
 quadrāgēnsimus  
 quīnquāgēnsimus  
 sexāgēnsimus  
 septuāgēnsimus  
 octōgēnsimus  
 nōnāgēnsimus  
 centēnsimus  
 { centēnsimus prīmus *or*  
     { centēnsimus et prīmus  
 ducentēnsimus  
 trecentēnsimus  
 quadrīgentēnsimus  
 quīngentēnsimus  
 sescentēnsimus  
 septingentēnsimus  
 octingentēnsimus  
 nōngentēnsimus  
 mīllēnsimus  
 bis mīllēnsimus  
 centiēns mīllēnsimus

## PRONOUNS

## 652.

## PERSONAL

|      | SING.         | PLUR.                | SING.          | PLUR.                  | SING.         | PLUR.                  |
|------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| Nom. | ego, <i>I</i> | nōs, <i>we</i>       | tū, <i>you</i> | vōs, <i>you</i>        |               |                        |
| Gen. | meī           | nostrū (-trī)        | tuī            | vestrū (-trī)          |               |                        |
| Dat. | mihi          | nōbīs                | tībi           | vōbīs                  |               |                        |
| Acc. | mē            | nōs                  | tē             | vōs                    |               |                        |
| Abl. | mē            | nōbīs                | tē             | vōbīs                  |               |                        |
|      | SING.         | PLUR.                | SING.          | PLUR.                  | SING.         | PLUR.                  |
| Nom. | is, <i>he</i> | iī (eī), <i>they</i> | ea, <i>she</i> | eae, <i>they</i>       | id, <i>it</i> | ea, <i>they</i>        |
| Gen. | eius,         | eōrum,<br><i>his</i> | eius,          | eārum,<br><i>their</i> | eius,         | eōrum,<br><i>their</i> |
| Dat. | eī            | iīs (eīs)            | eī             | iīs (eīs)              | eī            | iīs (eīs)              |
| Acc. | eum           | eōs                  | eam            | eās                    | id            | ea                     |
| Abl. | eō            | iīs (eīs)            | eā             | iīs (eīs)              | eō            | iīs (eīs)              |

a. *Hic* (654) and *ille* (654) are also used as pronouns of the third person.

## 653.

## REFLEXIVE

|      | SING.                           | PLUR.                                 | SING.                             | PLUR.                                  | SING.   | PLUR.   |
|------|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|---|---|
| Nom. | —                               | —                                     | —                                 | —                                      | —   | —   |
| Gen. | meī, <i>of</i><br><i>myself</i> | nostrī, <i>of</i><br><i>ourselves</i> | tuī, <i>of</i><br><i>yourself</i> | vestrī, <i>of</i><br><i>yourselves</i> | suī, <i>of him-</i><br><i>self, herself, them-</i><br><i>itself</i> | suī, <i>of</i><br><i>himself, herself, them-</i><br><i>selves</i> |
| Dat. | mihi                            | nōbīs                                 | tībi                              | vōbīs                                  | sībi  | sībi  |
| Acc. | mē                              | nōs                                   | tē                                | vōs                                    | sē (sēsē)   | sē (sēsē)   |
| Abl. | mē                              | nōbīs                                 | tē                                | vōbīs                                  | sē (sēsē)   | sē (sēsē)   |

## 654.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

|      | SINGULAR |       |       | PLURAL |       |       |
|------|----------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|
|      | MASC.    | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.  | NEUT. |
| Nom. | hic      | haec  | hoc   | hī     | hae   | haec  |
| Gen. | huius    | huius | huius | hōrum  | hārum | hōrum |
| Dat. | huic     | huic  | huic  | hīs    | hīs   | hīs   |
| Acc. | hunc     | hanc  | hoc   | hōs    | hās   | haec  |
| Abl. | hōc      | hāc   | hōc   | hīs    | hīs   | hīs   |

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

## MASC.

## FEM.

## NEUT.

## MASC.

## FEM.

## NEUT.

|             |        |        |        |         |         |         |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ille   | illa   | illud  | illi    | illae   | illa    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | illius | illius | illius | illorum | illarum | illorum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | illī   | illī   | illī   | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | illum  | illam  | illud  | illōs   | illās   | illa    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | illō   | illā   | illō   | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |

|             |      |      |      |           |           |           |
|-------------|------|------|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | is   | ea   | id   | iī (eī)   | eae       | ea        |
| <i>Gen.</i> | eius | eius | eius | eōrum     | eārum     | eōrum     |
| <i>Dat.</i> | eī   | eī   | eī   | iīs (eīs) | iīs (eīs) | iīs (eīs) |
| <i>Acc.</i> | eum  | eam  | id   | eōs       | eās       | ea        |
| <i>Abl.</i> | eō   | eā   | eō   | iīs (eīs) | iīs (eīs) | iīs (eīs) |

|             |        |        |        |         |         |         |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | iste   | ista   | istud  | istī    | istae   | ista    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | istius | istius | istius | istōrum | istārum | istōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | istī   | istī   | istī   | istīs   | istīs   | istīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | istum  | istam  | istud  | istōs   | istās   | ista    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | istō   | istā   | istō   | istīs   | istīs   | istīs   |

|             |         |         |         |                    |                  |                  |
|-------------|---------|---------|---------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | īdem    | e'adēm  | idem    | { īidēm<br>eīdēm   | eaēdēm           | e'adēm           |
| <i>Gen.</i> | eiusdem | eiusdem | eiusdem | eōrundēm           | eārundēm         | eōrundēm         |
| <i>Dat.</i> | eīdēm   | eīdēm   | eīdēm   | { īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm | īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm | īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm |
| <i>Acc.</i> | eundēm  | eandēm  | idem    | eōsdēm             | eāsdēm           | e'adēm           |
| <i>Abl.</i> | eōdēm   | eādēm   | eōdēm   | { īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm | īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm | īīsdēm<br>eīsdēm |

|             |        |        |        |         |         |         |
|-------------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | ipse   | ipsa   | ipsum  | ipsī    | ipsae   | ipsa    |
| <i>Gen.</i> | ipsīus | ipsīus | ipsīus | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| <i>Dat.</i> | ipsī   | ipsī   | ipsī   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   |
| <i>Acc.</i> | ipsum  | ipsam  | ipsum  | ipsōs   | ipsās   | ipsa    |
| <i>Abl.</i> | ipsō   | ipsā   | ipsō   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   |

## 655.

## RELATIVE

## SINGULAR

|      | MASC. | FEM.  | NEUT. | MASC.  | FEM.   | PLURAL |
|------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | qui   | quae  | quod  | qui    | quae   | quae   |
| Gen. | cuius | cuius | cuius | quorum | quarum | quorum |
| Dat. | cui   | cui   | cui   | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| Acc. | quem  | quam  | quod  | quos   | quas   | quae   |
| Abl. | quō   | quā   | quō   | quibus | quibus | quibus |

## 656.

## INTERROGATIVE

## SINGULAR

|      | MASC.      | FEM.  | NEUT.       | MASC.  | FEM.   | PLURAL |
|------|------------|-------|-------------|--------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | quis (qui) | quae  | quid (quod) | qui    | quae   | quae   |
| Gen. | cuius      | cuius | cuius       | quorum | quarum | quorum |
| Dat. | cui        | cui   | cui         | quibus | quibus | quibus |
| Acc. | quem       | quam  | quid (quod) | quos   | quas   | quae   |
| Abl. | quō        | quā   | quō         | quibus | quibus | quibus |

## 657.

## INDEFINITE

## SINGULAR

|      | MASC.            | FEM.    | NEUT.             |
|------|------------------|---------|-------------------|
| Nom. | aliquis (aliqui) | aliqua  | aliquid (aliquod) |
| Gen. | alicius          | alicius | alicius           |
| Dat. | alicui           | alicui  | alicui            |
| Acc. | aliquem          | aliquam | aliquid (aliquod) |
| Abl. | aliquō           | aliquā  | aliquō            |

## PLURAL

|      | aliquī    | aliquae   | aliqua    |
|------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Gen. | aliquōrum | aliquārum | aliquōrum |
| Dat. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |
| Acc. | aliquōs   | aliquās   | aliqua    |
| Abl. | aliquibus | aliquibus | aliquibus |

## SINGULAR

|      | quidam   | quaedam  | quiddam (quoddam) |
|------|----------|----------|-------------------|
| Gen. | cuiusdam | cuiusdam | cuiusdam          |
| Dat. | cuidam   | cuidam   | cuidam            |
| Acc. | quendam  | quandam  | quiddam (quoddam) |
| Abl. | quōdam   | quādam   | quōdam            |

|             | PLURAL    |           |           |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
|             | MASC.     | FEM.      | NEUT.     |
| <i>Nom.</i> | quīdam    | quaedam   | quaedam   |
| <i>Gen.</i> | quōrundam | quārundam | quōrundam |
| <i>Dat.</i> | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdām |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quōsdam   | quāsdam   | quaedam   |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quibusdam | quibusdam | quibusdam |

|             | SINGULAR |          |                      |
|-------------|----------|----------|----------------------|
|             | MASC.    | FEM.     | NEUT.                |
| <i>Nom.</i> | quisque  | quaeque  | quidque<br>(quodque) |
| <i>Gen.</i> | cuiusque | cuiusque | cuiusque             |
| <i>Dat.</i> | cuique   | cuique   | cuiquam              |
| <i>Acc.</i> | quemque  | quamque  | quidque<br>(quodque) |
| <i>Abl.</i> | quōque   | quāque   | quōquam              |

*Plural rare*

*Plural missing*

## REGULAR VERBS

## 658. FIRST CONJUGATION — Ā-Verbs

*amō, love*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *a'mō, amā're, amā'vī, amā'tus*Pres. Stem *amā-*      Perf. Stem *amāv-*      Part. Stem *amāt-*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

*I love, am loving, do love, etc.*

|              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| <i>a'mō</i>  | <i>amā'mus</i> |
| <i>a'mās</i> | <i>amā'tis</i> |
| <i>a'mat</i> | <i>amāmant</i> |

## PRESENT

## PASSIVE VOICE

*I am loved, etc.*

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>a'mor</i>   | <i>amā'mur</i>  |
| <i>amāris</i>  | <i>amā'minī</i> |
| <i>amā'tur</i> | <i>aman'tur</i> |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I loved, was loving, did love, etc.**I was loved, etc.*

|                |                    |                   |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>amā'bam</i> | <i>amā'bā'mus</i>  | <i>amā'bar</i>    | <i>amā'bā'mur</i>  |
| <i>amā'bās</i> | <i>amā'bā'tis</i>  | <i>amā'bā'ris</i> | <i>amā'bā'minī</i> |
| <i>amā'bāt</i> | <i>amā'bā'bant</i> | <i>amā'bā'tur</i> | <i>amā'bān'tur</i> |

## APPENDIX II

267

## FUTURE

*I shall love, etc.*

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| amā'bō  | amā'bimus |
| amā'bis | amā'bitis |
| amā'bit | amā'bunt  |

*I shall be loved, etc.*

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| amā'bor   | amā'bimur   |
| amā'beris | amā'bī'minī |
| amā'bitur | amā'bun'tur |

## PERFECT

*I have loved, loved, did love, etc.*

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| amā'vī     | amā'vimus   |
| amā'vis'ti | amā'vis'tis |
| amā'vit    | amā've'runt |

*I have been (was) loved, etc.*

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| amā'tus | sum    |
| es      | sumus  |
| est     | sumtis |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had loved, etc.*

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| amā'veram | amā'verā'mus |
| amā'verās | amā'verā'tis |
| amā'verat | amā'verant   |

*I had been loved, etc.*

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| amā'tus | erām   |
| erās    | erāmus |
| erat    | erātis |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have loved, etc.*

|           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| amā'verō  | amā've'rīmus |
| amā'veris | amā've'ritis |
| amā'verit | amā'verint   |

*I shall have been loved, etc.*

|         |        |
|---------|--------|
| amā'tus | erō    |
| eris    | erimus |
| erit    | eritis |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|       |         |         |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|
| a'mem | amē'mus | a'mer   | amē'mur  |
| a'mēs | amē'tis | amē'ris | amē'minī |
| a'met | a'ment  | amē'tur | amen'tur |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

|         |           |            |            |
|---------|-----------|------------|------------|
| amā'rem | amārē'mus | amā'rē'rēr | amārē'mur  |
| amā'rēs | amārē'tis | amārē'ris  | amārē'minī |
| amā'ret | amā'rēnt  | amārē'tur  | amāren'tur |

## PERFECT

|           |             |         |     |
|-----------|-------------|---------|-----|
| amā'verim | amāverī'mus | amā'tus | sim |
| amā'veris | amāverī'tis | amā'tus | sīs |
| amā'verit | amāverint   | amā'tus | sit |

|        |       |
|--------|-------|
| amā'tī | sīmus |
| estis  | sītis |
| sunt   | sint  |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

|            |              |        |       |        |         |
|------------|--------------|--------|-------|--------|---------|
| amāvis'sem | amāvissē'mus | amātus | essem | amā'ti | essēmus |
| amāvis'sēs | amāvissē'tis |        | essēs |        | essētis |
| amāvis'set | amāvis'sent  |        | esset |        | essent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

a'mā, *love thou*  
amā'te, *love ye*

amā're, *be thou loved*  
amā'mini, *be ye loved*

## FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*  
amātō, *he shall love*  
amātōte, *you shall love*  
amāntō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*  
amātor, *he shall be loved*

amantor, *they shall be loved*

## INFINITIVE

PRES. amā're, *to love*

amā'ri, *to be loved*

PERF. amāvis'se, *to have loved*

amā'tus esse, *to have been loved*

FUT. amātū'rūs esse, *to be about to  
love*

[amā'tum irī, *to be about to be  
loved*]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. a'māns, -antis, *loving*

PRES. —————

FUT. amātū'rūs, -a, -um, *about to  
love*

GER.<sup>1</sup> aman'dus, -a, -um, *to be loved*  
PERF. amā'tus, -a, -um, *having been  
loved; loved*

PERF. —————

## GERUND

Nom. —————

Gen. aman'di, *of loving*

Dat. aman'dō, *for loving*

Acc. aman'dum, *loving*

Abl. aman'dō, *by loving*

## SUPINE

Acc. [amātūm, *to love*]

Abl. [amātū, *to love, in the loving*]

<sup>1</sup> Gerundive, sometimes called future passive participle.

## 659.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

*moneō, advise*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *mo'neō, monē're, mo'nūī, mo'nitus*

*Pres. Stem monē-*

*Perf. Stem monu-*

*Part. Stem monit-*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

## PASSIVE VOICE

*I advise, etc.*

*I am advised, etc.*

|               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>mo'neō</i> | <i>monē'mus</i> |
| <i>mo'nēs</i> | <i>monē'tis</i> |
| <i>mo'net</i> | <i>mo'nent</i>  |

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>mo'neor</i>  | <i>monē'mur</i>  |
| <i>monē'ris</i> | <i>monē'mini</i> |
| <i>monē'tur</i> | <i>monen'tur</i> |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was advising, etc.*

*I was advised, etc.*

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>monē'bam</i> | <i>monēbā'mus</i> |
| <i>monē'bās</i> | <i>monēbā'tis</i> |
| <i>monē'bat</i> | <i>monē'bant</i>  |

## FUTURE

*I shall advise, etc.*

*I shall be advised, etc.*

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| <i>monē'bō</i>  | <i>monē'bimus</i> |
| <i>monē'bīs</i> | <i>monē'bītis</i> |
| <i>monē'bīt</i> | <i>monē'bunt</i>  |

## PERFECT

*I have advised, I advised, etc.*

*I have been (was) advised, etc.*

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| <i>mo'nūī</i>    | <i>monu'imus</i>  |
| <i>monuis'tī</i> | <i>monuis'tis</i> |
| <i>mo'nuit</i>   | <i>monuē'runt</i> |

|                 |            |
|-----------------|------------|
| <i>mo'nitus</i> | <i>sum</i> |
|                 | <i>es</i>  |
|                 | <i>est</i> |

|                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| <i>mo'nītī</i> | <i>sumus</i> |
|                | <i>estis</i> |
|                | <i>sunt</i>  |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had advised, etc.*

*I had been advised, etc.*

|                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| <i>monu'eram</i> | <i>monuerā'mus</i> |
| <i>monu'erās</i> | <i>monuerā'tis</i> |
| <i>monu'erat</i> | <i>monu'erant</i>  |

|                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| <i>mo'nitus</i> | <i>eram</i> |
|                 | <i>erās</i> |
|                 | <i>erat</i> |

|                |               |
|----------------|---------------|
| <i>mo'nītī</i> | <i>erāmus</i> |
|                | <i>erātis</i> |
|                | <i>erant</i>  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have advised, etc.*

|           |             |
|-----------|-------------|
| monu'erō  | monue'rimus |
| monu'eris | monue'ritis |
| monu'erit | monu'erint  |

*I shall have been advised, etc.*

|          |      |        |
|----------|------|--------|
| mo'nitus | erō  | erimus |
|          | eris | eritis |
|          | erit | erunt  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|         |           |           |            |
|---------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| mo'neam | moneā'mus | mo'near   | moneā'mur  |
| mo'neās | moneā'tis | moneā'ris | moneā'mini |
| mo'neat | mo'neant  | moneā'tur | monean'tur |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

|          |            |            |             |
|----------|------------|------------|-------------|
| monē'rem | monērē'mus | monē'rer   | monērē'mur  |
| monē'rēs | monērē'tis | monērē'ris | monērē'mini |
| monē'ret | monē'rent  | monērē'tur | monēren'tur |

## PERFECT

|           |             |          |     |       |
|-----------|-------------|----------|-----|-------|
| monu'erim | monuerī'mus | mo'nitus | sim | sīmus |
| monu'eris | monuerī'tis |          | sīs | sītis |
| monu'erit | monu'erint  |          | sit | sint  |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

|            |               |          |       |         |
|------------|---------------|----------|-------|---------|
| monuis'sem | monuissē'mus  | mo'nitus | essem | essēmus |
| monuis'sēs | monuissē'tis  |          | essēs | essētis |
| monuis'set | monuissē'sent |          | esset | essent  |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

mo'nē, advise thou  
monē'te, advise ye

monē're, be thou advised  
monē'mini, be ye advised

## FUTURE

monētō, thou shalt advise  
monētō, he shall advise  
monētōte, you shall advise  
monentō, they shall advise

monētor, thou shalt be advised  
monētor, he shall be advised

---

monentor, they shall be advised

## INFINITIVE

|  |   |
|--|---|
| PRES. monē're, <i>to advise</i>                    | monē'ri, <i>to be advised</i>                     |
| PERF. monuis'se, <i>to have advised</i>            | mo'nitus esse, <i>to have been advised</i>        |
| FUT. monitū'rus esse, <i>to be about to advise</i> | [mo'nitum irī, <i>to be about to be advised</i> ] |

## PARTICIPLES

|  |  |
|--|--|
| PRES. mo'nēns, -entis, <i>advising</i>           | PRES. _____  |
| FUT. monitū'rus, -a, -um, <i>about to advise</i> | GER. monen'dus, -a, -um, <i>to be advised</i>                |
| PERF. _____                                      | PERF. mo'nitus, -a, -um, <i>having been advised, advised</i> |

## GERUND

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Nom. _____                         |  |
| Gen. monen'di, <i>of advising</i>  |  |
| Dat. monen'dō, <i>for advising</i> |  |
| Acc. monen'dum, <i>advising</i>    |  |
| Abl. monen'dō, <i>by advising</i>  |  |

## SUPINE

|   |  |
|---|--|
| Acc. [monitum, <i>to advise</i> ]                 |  |
| Abl. [monitū, <i>to advise, in the advising</i> ] |  |

## 660.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — Ē-Verbs

*regō, rule*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *re'gō, re'gere, rē'xi, rēct'us*Pres. Stem *rege-*Perf. Stem *rēx-*Part. Stem *rēct-*

## ACTIVE VOICE

*I rule, etc.*

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| re'gō  | re'gimus |
| re'gis | re'gitis |
| re'git | re'gunt  |

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## PASSIVE VOICE

*I am ruled, etc.*

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| re'gor   | re'gimur  |
| re'geris | regi'mini |
| re'gitur | regun'tur |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was ruling, etc.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| regē'bam | regēbā'mus |
| regē'bās | regēbā'tis |
| regē'bat | regē'bant  |

*I was ruled, etc.*

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| regē'bar   | regēbā'mur  |
| regēbā'ris | regēbā'minī |
| regēbā'tur | regēban'tur |

## FUTURE

*I shall rule, etc.*

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| re'gam | regē'mus |
| re'gēs | regē'tis |
| re'get | re'gent  |

*I shall be ruled, etc.*

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| re'gar   | regē'mur  |
| regē'ris | regē'minī |
| regē'tur | regen'tur |

## PERFECT

*I have ruled, etc.*

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| rē'xi    | rē'ximus  |
| rēxis'ti | rēxis'tis |
| rē'xit   | rēxē'runt |

*I have been ruled, etc.*

|         |     |        |       |
|---------|-----|--------|-------|
| rēc'tus | sum | rēc'ti | sumus |
|         | es  |        | estis |
|         | est |        | sunt  |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had ruled, etc.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| rē'xeram | rēxerā'mus |
| rē'xerās | rēxerā'tis |
| rē'xerat | rē'xerant  |

*I had been ruled, etc.*

|         |      |        |        |
|---------|------|--------|--------|
| rēc'tus | eram | rēc'ti | erāmus |
|         | erās |        | erātis |
|         | erat |        | erant  |

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have ruled, etc.*

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| rē'xerō  | rēxe'rimus |
| rē'xeris | rēxe'ritis |
| rē'xerit | rē'xerint  |

*I shall have been ruled, etc.*

|         |      |        |        |
|---------|------|--------|--------|
| rēc'tus | erō  | rēc'ti | erimus |
|         | eris |        | eritis |
|         | erit |        | erunt  |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

|        |          |
|--------|----------|
| re'gam | regā'mus |
| re'gās | regā'tis |
| re'gat | re'gant  |

|          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| re'gar   | regā'mur  |
| regā'ris | regā'minī |
| regā'tur | regan'tur |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

|          |            |
|----------|------------|
| re'gerem | regerē'mus |
| re'gerēs | regerē'tis |
| re'geret | re'gerent  |

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| re'gerer   | regerē'mur  |
| regerē'ris | regerē'minī |
| regerē'tur | regeren'tur |

## PERFECT

|          |            |         |                   |        |                        |
|----------|------------|---------|-------------------|--------|------------------------|
| rē'xerim | rēxerī'mus | rēc'tus | sim<br>sīs<br>sit | rēc'tī | sīmus<br>sītis<br>sint |
| rē'xeris | rēxerī'tis |         |                   |        |                        |
| rē'xerit | rē'xerint  |         |                   |        |                        |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

|           |             |         |                         |        |                              |
|-----------|-------------|---------|-------------------------|--------|------------------------------|
| rēxis'sem | rēxisse'mus | rēc'tus | essem<br>essēs<br>esset | rēc'tī | essēmus<br>essētis<br>essent |
| rēxis'sēs | rēxisse'tis |         |                         |        |                              |
| rēxis'set | rēxis'sent  |         |                         |        |                              |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| re'ge, rule thou | re'gere, be thou ruled |
| re'gite, rule ye | regi'minī, be ye ruled |

## FUTURE

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| regitō, thou shalt rule  | regitor, thou shalt be ruled  |
| regitō, he shall rule    | regitor, he shall be ruled    |
| regitōte, ye shall rule  |                               |
| reguntō, they shall rule | reguntor, they shall be ruled |

## INFINITIVE

|  |  |
|--|--|
| PRES. re'gere, to rule                   | re'gī, to be ruled                     |
| PERF. rēxis'se, to have ruled            | rēc'tus esse, to have been ruled       |
| FUT. rēctū'rūs esse, to be about to rule | [rēc'tum īrī, to be about to be ruled] |

## PARTICIPLES

|  |  |
|--|--|
| PRES. re'gēns, -entis, ruling          | PRES. _____                                      |
| FUT. rēctū'rūs, -a, -um, about to rule | GER. regen'dus, -a, -um, to be ruled             |
| PERF. _____                            | PERF. rēc'tus, -a, -um, having been ruled, ruled |

## GERUND

|      |                      |
|------|----------------------|
| Nom. | _____                |
| Gen. | regen'dī, of ruling  |
| Dat. | regen'dō, for ruling |
| Acc. | regen'dūm, ruling    |
| Abl. | regen'dō, by ruling  |

## SUPINE

|      |                                 |
|------|---------------------------------|
| Acc. | [rēctūm, to rule]               |
| Abl. | [rēctū, to rule, in the ruling] |

## 661. THIRD CONJUGATION — Verbs in -iō

*capiō, take*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ca'piō, ca'pere, cē'pī, cap'tus*

*Pres. Stem cape-*

*Perf. Stem cēp-*

*Part. Stem capt-*

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PASSIVE VOICE

*I take, etc.*

PRESENT

*I am taken, etc.*

*ca'piō*

*ca'pimus*

*ca'pior*

*ca'pimur*

*ca'pis*

*ca'pitis*

*ca'peris*

*capi'minī*

*ca'pit*

*ca'piunt*

*ca'pitur*

*capiun'tur*

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was taking, etc.*

*I was taken, etc.*

*capiē'bam*

*capiēbā'mus*

*capiē'bar*

*capiēbā'mur*

*capiē'bās*

*capiēbā'tis*

*capiēbā'ris*

*capiēbā'minī*

*capiē'bat*

*capiē'bant*

*capiēbā'tur*

*capiēban'tur*

FUTURE

*I shall take, etc.*

*I shall be taken, etc.*

*ca'piam*

*capiē'mus*

*ca'piar*

*capiē'mur*

*ca'piēs*

*capiē'tis*

*capiē'ris*

*capiē'minī*

*ca'piet*

*ca'pient*

*capiē'tur*

*capien'tur*

PERFECT

*cē'pī, cēpis'tī, cē'pit, etc.*

*cap'tus sum, es, est, etc.*

PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*cē'peram, cē'perās, cē'perat, etc.*

*cap'tus eram, erās, erat, etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

*cē'perō, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc.*

*cap'tus erō, eris, erit, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

*ca'piam, ca'piās, ca'piat, etc.*

*ca'piar, -iā'ris, -iā'tur, etc.*

IMPERFECT (PAST)

*ca'perem, ca'perēs, ca'peret, etc.*

*ca'perer, -erē'ris, -erē'tur, etc.*

## PERFECT

cē'perim, cē'peris, cē'perit, etc. cap'tus sim, sīs, sit, etc.

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

cēpis'sem, cēpis'sēs, cēpis'set, etc. cap'tus essem, essēs, esset, etc.

## IMPERATIVE

PRES. ca'pe, take thou  
ca'pite, take ye

FUT. capitō, thou shalt take, etc. capitor, thou shalt be taken, etc.

## INFINITIVE

PRES. ca'pere, to take ca'pī, to be taken

PERF. cēpis'se, to have taken cap'tus esse, to have been taken

FUT. captū'rūs esse, to be about to [cap'tum īrī, to be about to be  
take taken]

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. ca'piēns, -ientis, taking PRES. —————

FUT. captū'rūs, -a, -um, about to GER. capien'dus, -a, -um, to be taken  
take

PERF. ————— PERF. cap'tus, -a, -um, having been  
taken, taken

## GERUND

Gen. capien'dī, of taking, etc.

## SUPINE

Acc. [captum, to take]

Abl. [captū, to take, in the taking]

## 662.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION — I-Verbs

audiō, hear

PRINCIPAL PARTS: au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus

Pres. Stem audi-      Perf. Stem audiv-      Part. Stem audit-

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

I hear, etc.

## PASSIVE VOICE

I am heard, etc.

au'diō

audi'mus

au'dior

audī'mur

au'dis

audi'tis

audi'ris

audi'minī

au'dit

audi'unt

audi'tur

audiun'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

*I was hearing, etc.*audiē'bam  
audiē'bās  
audiē'bataudiē'bā'mus  
audiē'bā'tis  
audiē'bantaudiē'bar  
audiē'bā'ris  
audiē'bā'turaudiē'bā'mur  
audiē'bā'minī  
audiēban'tur*I shall hear, etc.*au'diam  
au'diēs  
au'dietaudiē'mus  
audiē'tis  
au'dient

## FUTURE

*I shall be heard, etc.*au'diar  
audiē'ris  
audiē'turaudiē'mur  
audiē'minī  
audien'tur*I have heard, etc.*audi'vī  
audivis'tī  
audi'vitaudī'vimus  
audīvis'tis  
audīvē'runt

## PERFECT

*I have been heard, etc.*audi'vī  
audivis'tī  
audi'vitsum  
es  
estsumus  
estis  
sunt

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

*I had heard, etc.*audi'veram  
audi'verās  
audi'verataudī'verā'mus  
audīverā'tis  
audi'verantaudi'vī  
audivis'tī  
audi'viterāmus  
erātis  
erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.*audi'verō  
audi'veris  
audi'veritaudī'verimus  
audī'veritis  
audi'verint*I shall have been heard, etc.*audi'vī  
audivis'tī  
audi'viterō  
eris  
eriterimus  
eritis  
erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

au'diam  
au'diās  
au'diataudiā'mus  
audiā'tis  
au'diantau'diar  
audiā'ris  
audiā'turaudiā'mur  
audiā'minī  
audian'tur

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

audi'rem  
audi'rēs  
audi'retaudirē'mus  
audirē'tis  
audi'rentaudi'rer  
audirē'ris  
audirē'turaudirē'mur  
audirē'minī  
audirēn'tur

## PERFECT

|            |               |          |                   |                        |
|------------|---------------|----------|-------------------|------------------------|
| audi'verim | audi'veri'mus | audi'tus | sim<br>sīs<br>sit | sīmus<br>sītis<br>sint |
| audi'veris | audi'veri'tis |          |                   |                        |
| audi'verit | audi'verint   |          |                   |                        |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

|              |                |          |                         |                              |
|--------------|----------------|----------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| audi'vis'sem | audi'vissē'mus | audi'tus | essem<br>essēs<br>esset | essēmus<br>essētis<br>essent |
| audi'vis'sēs | audi'vissē'tis |          |                         |                              |
| audi'vis'set | audi'vis'sent  |          |                         |                              |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| au'dī, hear thou | audi're, be thou heard |
| audi'te, hear ye | audi'mini, be ye heard |

## FUTURE

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| auditō, thou shalt hear   | audi'tor, thou shalt be heard   |
| auditō, he shall hear     | audi'tor, he shall be heard     |
| auditōte, ye shall hear   |                                 |
| audiuntō, they shall hear | audiunctor, they shall be heard |

## INFINITIVE

|   |  |
|---|--|
| PRES. audi're, to hear                      | audi'rī, to be heard                       |
| PERF. audi'vis'se, to have heard            | audi'tus esse, to have been heard          |
| FUT. auditūrus esse, to be about to<br>hear | [audi'tum īrī, to be about to be<br>heard] |

## PARTICIPLES

|   |  |
|---|--|
| PRES. au'diēns, -ientis, hearing          | PRES. _____  |
| FUT. auditūrus, -a, -um, about to<br>hear | GER. audien'dus, -a, -um, to be<br>heard             |
| PERF. _____                               | PERF. audi'tus, -a, -um, having been<br>heard, heard |

## GERUND

Nom. \_\_\_\_\_

|      |                        |
|------|------------------------|
| Gen. | audien'dī, of hearing  |
| Dat. | audien'dō, for hearing |
| Acc. | audien'dum, hearing    |
| Abl. | audien'dō, by hearing  |

## SUPINE

|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| Acc. | [audi'tum, to hear]               |
| Abl. | [auditū, to hear, in the hearing] |

## IRREGULAR VERBS

663.

sum, *be*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: sum, esse, fu'ī, futū'rus

Pres. Stem es-

Perf. Stem fu-

Part. Stem fut-

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

sum, *I am*  
es, *you are*  
est, *he (she, it) is*

su'mus, *we are*  
es'tis, *you are*  
sunt, *they are*

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

e'ram, *I was*  
e'rās, *you were*  
e'rat, *he was*

erā'mus, *we were*  
erā'tis, *you were*  
e'runt, *they were*

## FUTURE

e'rō, *I shall be*  
e'ris, *you will be*  
e'rit, *he will be*

e'rimus, *we shall be*  
e'ritis, *you will be*  
e'runt, *they will be*

## PERFECT

fu'ī, *I have been, was*  
fuis'ti, *you have been, were*  
fu'it, *he has been, was*

fu'imus, *we have been, were*  
fuis'tis, *you have been, were*  
fu'erunt, *they have been, were*

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

fu'eram, *I had been*  
fu'erās, *you had been*  
fu'erat, *he had been*

fuerā'mus, *we had been*  
fuerā'tis, *you had been*  
fu'erant, *they had been*

## FUTURE PERFECT

fu'erō, *I shall have been*  
fu'eris, *you will have been*  
fu'erit, *he will have been*

fue'rimus, *we shall have been*  
fue'ritis, *you will have been*  
fu'erint, *they will have been*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

| SING. | PLUR.  |
|-------|--------|
| sim   | sī'mus |
| sīs   | sī'tis |
| sit   | sint   |

## IMPERFECT (PAST)

| SING.  | PLUR.    |
|--------|----------|
| es'sem | essē'mus |
| es'sēs | essē'tis |
| es'set | es'sent  |

## PERFECT

|         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| fu'erim | fuerī'mus |
| fu'eris | fuerī'tis |
| fu'erit | fuerint   |

## PLUPERFECT (PAST PERFECT)

|          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| fuis'sem | fuissē'mus  |
| fuis'sēs | fuissē'tis  |
| fuis'set | fuissē'sent |

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

es, be thou

es'te, be ye

## FUTURE

estō, thou shalt be

estō, he shall be

estōte, ye shall be

suntō, they shall be

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLE

PRES. es'se, to be

futū'rus, -a, -um, about to be

PERF. fuis'se, to have been

FUT. futū'rūs esse, or fo're, to be  
about to be

## 664.

possum, be able, can

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potui, —

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

|       | SING.    | PLUR.      | SING.     | PLUR.       |
|-------|----------|------------|-----------|-------------|
| PRES. | possum   | possumus   | possim    | possīmus    |
|       | potes    | potestis   | possīs    | possītis    |
|       | potest   | possunt    | possit    | possint     |
| IMPF. | poteram  | poterāmus  | possem    | possēmus    |
| FUT.  | poterō   | poterimus  | —         | —           |
| PERF. | potuī    | potuimus   | potuerim  | potuerīmus  |
| PLUP. | potueram | potuerāmus | potuissem | potuissēmus |
| F. P. | potuerō  | potuerimus | —         | —           |

## INFINITIVE

PRES. posse

PERF. potuisse

## 665.

volō, nōlō, mālō

PRINCIPAL PARTS : *{ volō, velle, volūī, ——, be willing, will, wish  
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, be unwilling, will not  
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, be more willing, prefer*

## INDICATIVE

## SINGULAR

|            |          |        |
|------------|----------|--------|
| PRES. volō | nōlō     | mālō   |
| vīs        | nōn vīs  | māvīs  |
| vult       | nōn vult | māvult |

## PLURAL

|                         |                    |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| volumus                 | nōlumus            | mālumus            |
| vultis                  | nōn vultis         | māvultis           |
| volunt                  | nōlunt             | mālunt             |
| IMPF. volēbam           | nōlēbam            | mālēbam            |
| FUT. volam, volēs, etc. | nōlam, nōlēs, etc. | mālam, mālēs, etc. |
| PERF. volūī             | nōluī              | māluī              |
| PLUP. volueram          | nōlueram           | mālueram           |
| F. P. voluerō           | nōluerō            | māluerō            |

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## SINGULAR

|             |       |       |
|-------------|-------|-------|
| PRES. velim | nōlim | mālim |
| velīs       | nōlīs | mālīs |
| velit       | nōlit | mālit |

## PLURAL

|                 |           |           |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------|
| velīmus         | nōlīmus   | mālīmus   |
| velītis         | nōlītis   | mālītis   |
| velint          | nōlint    | mālint    |
| IMPF. vellem    | nōllem    | māllem    |
| PERF. voluerim  | nōluerim  | māluerim  |
| PLUP. voluissem | nōluissem | māluissem |

## IMPERATIVE

|          |              |    |
|----------|--------------|----|
| PRES. —— | nōlī         | —— |
|          | nōlīte       |    |
| FUT. ——  | nōlītō, etc. | —— |

## INFINITIVE

|       |          |          |          |
|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| PRES. | velle    | nōlle    | mālle    |
| PERF. | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

## PARTICIPLE

|       |        |        |   |
|-------|--------|--------|---|
| PRES. | volēns | nōlēns | — |
|-------|--------|--------|---|

**666.**      *ferō, bear, carry, endure*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*

Pres. Stem *fer-*      Perf. Stem *tul-*      Part. Stem *lāt-*

## INDICATIVE

## ACTIVE

|       |         |         |            |          |
|-------|---------|---------|------------|----------|
| PRES. | ferō    | ferimus | feror      | ferimur  |
|       | fers    | fertis  | ferris     | feriminī |
|       | fert    | ferunt  | fertur     | feſuntur |
| IMPF. | ferēbam |         | ferēbar    |          |
| FUT.  | feram   |         | ferar      |          |
| PERF. | tulī    |         | lātus sum  |          |
| PLUP. | tuleram |         | lātus eram |          |
| F.P.  | tulerō  |         | lātus erō  |          |

## PASSIVE

|             |          |             |
|-------------|----------|-------------|
| SUBJUNCTIVE |          |             |
| PRES.       | feram    | ferar       |
| IMPF.       | ferrem   | ferrer      |
| PERF.       | tulerim  | lātus sim   |
| PLUP.       | tulissem | lātus essem |

## IMPERATIVE

## ACTIVE

|       |       |         |        |          |
|-------|-------|---------|--------|----------|
| PRES. | fer   | ferte   | ferre  | feriminī |
| FUT.  | fertō | fertōte | fertor |          |
|       | fertō | feruntō | fertor | feruntor |

## PASSIVE

## INFINITIVE

|       |              |             |
|-------|--------------|-------------|
| PRES. | ferre        | ferī        |
| PERF. | tulisse      | lātus esse  |
| FUT.  | lātūrus esse | [lātūm īrī] |

## PARTICIPLES

|        |          |         |          |
|--------|----------|---------|----------|
| PRES.  | ferēns   | PRES.   | —        |
| FUT.   | lātūrus  | GER.    | ferendus |
| PERF.  | —        | PERF.   | lātus    |
| GERUND |          | SUPINE  |          |
| Gen.   | ferendī  |         |          |
| Dat.   | ferendō  |         |          |
| Acc.   | ferendum | [lātum] |          |
| Abl.   | ferendō  | [lātū]  |          |

667.

eō, go

PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus

Pres. stem ī-      Perf. stem ī- (īv-)      Part. stem it-

| INDICATIVE |       | SUBJUNCTIVE | IMPERATIVE |                  |
|------------|-------|-------------|------------|------------------|
| PRES.      | eō    | īmus        | eam        | ī                |
|            | īs    | ītis        |            | īte              |
|            | it    | eunt        |            |                  |
| IMPF.      | ībam  |             | īrem       |                  |
| FUT.       | ībō   |             | —          | { ītō      ītōte |
| PERF.      | iī    |             | ierim      | īto      euntō   |
| PLUP.      | ieram |             | īssem      |                  |
| F. P.      | ierō  |             | —          |                  |

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLES

|       |             |                    |
|-------|-------------|--------------------|
| PRES. | īre         | iēns, euntis (645) |
| PERF. | īsse        | itum               |
| FUT.  | itūrus esse | itūrus             |

## GERUND

## SUPINE

|      |        |        |
|------|--------|--------|
| Gen. | eundī  |        |
| Dat. | eundō  |        |
| Acc. | eundum | [itum] |
| Abl. | eundō  | [itū]  |

668.

*fiō, be made, become, happen*PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*

| INDICATIVE |                       | SUBJUNCTIVE           | IMPERATIVE  |             |
|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------|-------------|
| PRES.      | <i>fiō</i>            | <i>fīmus</i>          | <i>fīam</i> | <i>fī</i>   |
|            | <i>fiſ</i>            | <i>fītis</i>          |             | <i>fīte</i> |
|            | <i>fit</i>            | <i>fiunt</i>          |             |             |
| IMPF.      | <i>fiēbam</i>         | <i>fierem</i>         |             |             |
| FUT.       | <i>fiam</i>           | —                     |             |             |
| PERF.      | <i>factus sum</i>     | <i>factus sim</i>     |             |             |
| PLUP.      | <i>factus eram</i>    | <i>factus essem</i>   |             |             |
| F. P.      | <i>factus erō</i>     | —                     |             |             |
| INFINITIVE |                       | PARTICIPLES           |             |             |
| PRES.      | <i>fierī</i>          | GER. <i>faciendus</i> |             |             |
| PERF.      | <i>factus esse</i>    | PERF. <i>factus</i>   |             |             |
| FUT.       | [ <i>factum irī</i> ] |                       |             |             |

669.

DEPONENT VERBS

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| PRINCIPAL PARTS: | I. <i>hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum, urge</i>             |
|                  | II. <i>vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear</i>              |
|                  | III. <i>sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow</i>            |
|                  | IV. <i>potior, potīrī, potītus sum, get possession of</i> |

## INDICATIVE

|       |                      |                     |                     |                     |
|-------|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| PRES. | <i>hortor</i>        | <i>vereor</i>       | <i>sequor</i>       | <i>potior</i>       |
|       | <i>hortāris</i>      | <i>verēris</i>      | <i>sequeris</i>     | <i>potīris</i>      |
|       | <i>hortātūr</i>      | <i>verētur</i>      | <i>sequitur</i>     | <i>potītūr</i>      |
|       | <i>hortāmūr</i>      | <i>verēmūr</i>      | <i>sequimūr</i>     | <i>potīmūr</i>      |
|       | <i>hortāminī</i>     | <i>verēminī</i>     | <i>sequimīnī</i>    | <i>potīminī</i>     |
|       | <i>hortantur</i>     | <i>verentur</i>     | <i>sequuntur</i>    | <i>potiuntur</i>    |
| IMPF. | <i>hortābar</i>      | <i>verēbar</i>      | <i>sequēbar</i>     | <i>potiēbar</i>     |
| FUT.  | <i>hortābor</i>      | <i>verēbor</i>      | <i>sequar</i>       | <i>potiar</i>       |
| PERF. | <i>hortātus sum</i>  | <i>veritus sum</i>  | <i>secūtus sum</i>  | <i>potītus sum</i>  |
| PLUP. | <i>hortātus eram</i> | <i>veritus eram</i> | <i>secūtus eram</i> | <i>potītus eram</i> |
| F. P. | <i>hortātus erō</i>  | <i>veritus erō</i>  | <i>secūtus erō</i>  | <i>potītus erō</i>  |

| SUBJUNCTIVE          |                |                |                |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| PRES. horter         | verear         | sequar         | potiar         |
| IMPF. hortärer       | verērer        | sequerer       | potirer        |
| PERF. hortātus sim   | veritus sim    | secūtus sim    | potitus sim    |
| PLUP. hortātus essem | veritus essem  | secūtus essem  | potitus essem  |
| IMPERATIVE           |                |                |                |
| PRES. hortāre        | verēre         | sequere        | potire         |
| FUT. hortātor        | verētor        | sequitor       | potitor        |
| INFINITIVE           |                |                |                |
| PRES. hortārī        | verērī         | sequī          | potirī         |
| PERF. hortātus esse  | veritus esse   | secūtus esse   | potitus esse   |
| FUT. hortātūrus esse | veritūrus esse | secūtūrus esse | potitūrus esse |
| PARTICIPLES          |                |                |                |
| PRES. hortāns        | verēns         | sequēns        | potiēns        |
| FUT. hortātūrus      | veritūrus      | secūtūrus      | potitūrus      |
| PERF. hortātus       | veritus        | secūtus        | potitus        |
| GER. hortandus       | verendus       | sequendus      | potiendus      |
| GERUND               |                |                |                |
| hortandī, etc.       | verendī, etc.  | sequendī, etc. | potiendī, etc. |
| SUPINE               |                |                |                |
| [hortātum, -tū]      | [veritum, -tū] | [secūtum, -tū] | [potitum, -tū] |

## 670. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

## INDICATIVE

- PRES. amandus sum, *I am to be, must be, loved*  
 IMPF. amandus eram, *I was to be, had to be, loved*  
 FUT. amandus erō, *I shall have to be loved*  
 PERF. amandus fuī, *I was to be, had to be, loved*  
 PLUP. amandus fueram, *I had had to be loved*  
 F. P. amandus fuerō, *I shall have had to be loved*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

- PRES. amandus sim  
 IMPF. amandus éssem  
 PERF. amandus fuerim  
 PLUP. amandus fuisse

## INFINITIVE

PRES. amandus esse, *to have to be loved*

PERF. amandus fuisse, *to have had to be loved*

So in the other conjugations:

monendus sum, *I am to be, must be, advised*

regendus sum, *I am to be, must be, ruled*

capiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, taken*

audiendus sum, *I am to be, must be, heard*

etc.

## 671.

## SYNOPSIS OF THE VERB

The synopsis of a verb is a summary of the conjugation of that verb made by stating in succession the forms for some particular person and number.

The following is a synopsis of *amō* in the third person singular, arranged by stems. The infinitives, participles, etc. are added to complete each system.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus*

*Pres. Stem amā-*      *Perf. Stem amāv-*      *Part. Stem amāt-*

PRESENT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PRESENT STEM

| ACTIVE               | INDICATIVE | PASSIVE          |
|----------------------|------------|------------------|
| PRES. <i>ama-t</i>   |            | <i>amā-tur</i>   |
| IMPF. <i>amā-bat</i> |            | <i>amā-bātūr</i> |
| FUT. <i>amā-bit</i>  |            | <i>amā-bitūr</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE

|                      |             |                  |
|----------------------|-------------|------------------|
| PRES. <i>ame-t</i>   | SUBJUNCTIVE | <i>amē-tur</i>   |
| IMPF. <i>amā-ret</i> |             | <i>amā-rētūr</i> |

INFINITIVE

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| PRES. <i>amā-re</i> | <i>amā-rī</i> |
|---------------------|---------------|

PARTICIPLE

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| PRES. <i>amā-ns</i> | <i>GER. ama-nđus</i> |
|---------------------|----------------------|

GERUND

*ama-nđī*

## PERFECT SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PERFECT STEM

| INDICATIVE      | SUBJUNCTIVE |
|-----------------|-------------|
| PERF. amāv-it   | amāv-erit   |
| PLUP. amāv-erat | amāv-isset  |
| F. P. amāv-erit | —           |
| INFINITIVE      |             |
| PERF. amāv-isse |             |

## PARTICIPIAL SYSTEM, BASED ON THE PARTICIPIAL STEM

| INDICATIVE          | SUBJUNCTIVE   |
|---------------------|---------------|
| PERF. amāt-us est   | amāt-us sit   |
| PLUP. amāt-us erat  | amāt-us esset |
| F. P. amāt-us erit  | —             |
| INFINITIVE          |               |
| PERF. —             | amāt-us esse  |
| FUT. amāt-ūrus esse | [amāt-um īrī] |
| PARTICIPLE          |               |
| FUT. amāt-ūrus      | PERF. amāt-us |
| SUPINE              |               |
| [amāt-um]           |               |
| [amāt-ū]            |               |

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary words inclosed in brackets (except in the case of compounds with one or both parts changed in form) are sometimes primitives, sometimes cognates.

Translations inclosed within parentheses are not intended to be used as such. They are inserted to show literal meanings.

Abbreviations are generally self-explanatory. Cf. (*confer*) = compare; irr. = irregular.

Words printed in SMALL CAPITALS are at once derivatives and definitions: as, ABDUCT, under **abducō**. Many other more or less remotely derived words, not definitions, are added in *italic* in parentheses: as, (*Accident*), under **accidō**.

It will be seen that comparisons of words in reference to meaning are much more frequent than is usual in special vocabularies. This has been done from the conviction that the pupils should make such comparisons frequently from the outset.

ā (ab), *prep. with abl.*, from, by,  
off

ab-dō, abdere, abdidi, abditus [-dō,  
put], hide, conceal

ab-dūcō, abducere, abdūxi, abductus,  
lead away, take off; ABDUCT

ab-eō, abiēre, abiī, abitūrus, go from,  
go off, go away

ab-iciō, abicere, abiēci, abiectus  
[-iaciō], throw off, throw down,  
cast away. (*Abject*)

ab-ripiō, abripere, abripui, abreptus  
[-rapiō], snatch away, carry off

abs-cidō, abscidere, abscidi, abscisus  
[ab(s)-caedō], cut off

abs-trahō, abstrahere, abstrāxi, abs-  
trāctus [ab(s)-], drag away, draw  
off. (*Abstract*)

ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be  
away, be ABSENT, be distant, be  
off; *with ā and abl.*

ac, *conj.*, see atque

ac-cēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessūrus  
[ad-], go or come near, approach.  
(*Accession*.) Cf. adeō and appro-  
pinquō

ac-cendō, accendere, accendī, accē-  
sus [ad-candeō, shine], kindle, set  
fire to, light; inflame

ac-cidō, accidere, accidi, — [ad-  
cadō, fall], fall upon, fall out,  
happen. (*Accident*.) Cf. ēveniō  
and fiō

ac-cipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus  
[ad-capiō], (take to), receive, AC-  
CEPT

ac-currō, *accurrere, accurrī* (*accu-*  
*currī*), *accursūrus* [*ad-*], run up,  
 run toward

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, keen;  
 active, EAGER. (*Acrid*)  
*acervus*, -ī, *m.*, pile, heap, mass  
*aciēs*, -ēī, *f.* [*ācer*], edge; line, line  
 of battle, battle array

Ācrisius, Ācrisī, *m.*, ACRISIUS, grandfather of Perseus

ācriter, *adv.* [*ācer*], sharply, EAGERLY,  
 spiritedly, fiercely

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward, near,  
 up to; *with gerund or gerundīve*,  
 to, for; ad hunc modum, after  
 this manner; *as adv.*, about  
*ad-aequō*, *adaequāre, adaequāvī, ad-*  
*aequātus*, become EQUAL to,  
 EQUAL. (*Adequate*)

adclīvis, -e, *adj.*, sloping toward,  
 rising, ascending. (*Acclivity*)

ad-dūcō, *addūcere, addūxī, adductus*,  
 lead to, influence. (*Adduce*)

ad-eō, *adire, adiī, aditus*, go to, approach, visit. Cf. *accēdō* and *ap-*  
*propinquō*

ad-ferō, *adferre, attulī, adlātus*, bear to, bring, render

ad-ficiō, *adficere, adfēcī, adfectus* [-*faciō*], AFFECT, influence; afflict, oppress

ad-gredior, *adgredī, adgressus sum* [-*gradior*, go], approach, attack. (*Aggressive*)

ad-hibeō, *adhibere, adhibui, adhibi-*

tus

[-*habeō*], apply, employ, use  
*ad-hūc*, *adv.*, hitherto, as yet, still  
*ad-iciō*, *adicere, adiēcī, adiectus*

[-*iaciō*], add. (*Adjective*)

aditus, -ūs, *m.* [*adeō*], approach, way of access. Cf. *adventus*

ad-iungō, *adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnc-*

tus

, join to. (*Adjunct*)  
*ad-ligō*, *adligāre, adligāvī, adligātus*,

bind to, bind  
*admīrātīō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*admīror*], ADMI-

RATION, astonishment, wonder  
*ad-mīrōr*, *admīrārī, admīrātus sum*

[-*admīratiō*], wonder at, ADMIRE  
*ad-mittō*, *admittere, admīsī, admis-*

sus

, permit, allow; give rein to.  
 (*Admit*)

admōtus, see *admoveō*

ad-moveō, *admovēre, admōvī, ad-*

mōtus

, (move to), apply, employ  
*ad-nectō*, *adnectere, adnexuī* (*adnexī*),

adnexus, tie to, fasten to, attach.

(*Annex*)

ad-olēscō, *adolēscere, adulēvī, adul-*

tus

, grow up. (*Adult*)  
*ad-ōrō*, *adōrāre, adōrāvī, adōrātus*,

pray to, worship, ADORE  
*ad-spiciō*, *adspicere, adspexī, adspec-*

tus

[-*speciō*, look], look at, look upon, behold. (*Aspect*)  
*ad-stō*, *adstāre, adstītī, —*, stand

near  
*ad-sum*, *adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus*, be present, be here; *with dat.*

*Aduatuciī, -ōrum, m. plur.*, the ADU-

ATUCI, a Gallic tribe  
*adulēscēns*, -ēntis, *m. and f.* [*ado-*

*lēscō*], youth, young person. (*Ado-*

*lescence*.) Cf. *iuvenis*  
*adultus*, see *adolēscō*  
*advectus*, see *advehō*  
*ad-vehō*, *advehere, advexī, advectus*,

carry to, bring on, bring

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival.  
*(Advent.) Cf. aditus*  
adversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, turned toward, opposite, in front, ADVERSE  
adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against  
aedēs (aedis), -is, *f.*, building, temple;  
*plur.*, house  
aedificium, aedificī, *n.* [*aedificō*], building. (*Edifice*)  
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātus [*aedēs-faciō*], build. (*Edify*)  
aeger, aegra, aegrum, *adj.*, sick, weak, feeble  
aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, EQUAL  
āer, āeris, *m.* (*acc. āera*), AIR  
aes, aeris, *n.*, copper, bronze  
aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer  
aetās, -ātis, *f.*, life, AGE  
Aethiopēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the ETHIOPIANS  
Aetna, -ae, *f.*, AETNA, a mountain in Sicily  
Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, AFRICA  
Āfricānus, -ī, *m.*, AFRICANUS  
ager, agrī, *m.*, field, territory, land  
agger, -eris, *m.*, mound, rampart  
Āgis, -idis, *m.*, AGIS, a king of Sparta  
agmēn, -inis, *n.* [*agō*], (the thing led), army, host, column  
agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, drive, lead, bring up; ACT, do; treat; celebrate; pass (life)  
agricola, -ae, *m.* [*ager-colō*], farmer, husbandman  
āla, -ae, *f.*, wing  
Alba, -ae, *f.*, ALBA, an ancient city of Italy

Albānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ALBAN; *as noun*, an ALBAN, inhabitant of Alba  
albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white  
Alcmēna, -ae, *f.*, ALCMENA, the mother of Hercules  
aliās, *adv.* [*alius*], elsewhere, at another time  
aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*alius*], another's; unfavorable. (*Alien*)  
ali-quandō, *adv.* [*alius*], at some time; formerly, once. *Cf. ōlim*  
aliquis (-qui), -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. *pron.* and *adj.*, some one, some, any  
alius, -a, -ud, *adj.* and *pron.*, another, other, else; aliis . . . aliis, one . . . another. (*Alias.*) *Cf. ceterī*  
Allobrogēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the ALLOBROGES, a tribe of Gaul  
Alpēs, -ium, *f. plur.*, the ALPS  
altāria, -ium, *n. plur.*, ALTAR  
alter, -era, -erum, *adj.* and *pron.*, the one, the other (of two); second; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other. (*Alternative*)  
altitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*altus*], height  
altum, -ī, *n.* [*altus*], the sea  
altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep  
alveus, -ī, *m.*, hollow vessel, tub, trough  
Ambarī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the AMBARRI, a tribe of Gaul, near the Hædui  
ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātūrus, walk, take a walk. (*Perambulate*)  
āmentia, -ae, *f.*, want of reason, madness

amicitia, -ae, *f.* [*amicus*], friendship  
 amicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*amō*], friendly; as noun, friend. (*Amiable*)  
 ā-mittō, āmittere, āmisi, āmissus, send away; lose  
 amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus [*amor*], love, like, be fond of  
 amor, -ōris, *f.* [*amō*], love  
 ā-moveō, āmovēre, āmōvī, āmōtus, move away, put aside  
 ampliō, ampliāre, ampliāvī, ampliātus [*amplus*], increase, extend. (*Ampliative*)  
 amplus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ampliō*], large, wide; honorable. (*Ample, Amplify*)  
**Amūlius, Amūlī, *m.*, AMULIUS**, father of Rhea Silvia  
 an, *conj.*, or  
 ancilla, -ae, *f.*, maidservant  
 ancora, -ae, *f.*, ANCHOR  
**Ancus Mārcius, Ancī Mārcī, *m.*, ANCUS MARCIUS**, one of the seven kings of Rome  
**Andromeda, -ae, *f.*, ANDROMEDA**  
 anguis, -is, *m. and f.*, serpent, snake  
 angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow. (*Anguish*)  
 anima, -ae, *f.* [*animus*], breath, soul, life. (*Animate*)  
 anim-advertō, animadvertere, animadvertī, animadversus [*animus-*], turn the mind to, notice  
 animus, -ī, *m.* [*anima*], mind, soul, spirit, disposition. Cf. mēns  
 annōna, -ae, *f.* [*annus*], (the year's supply), provisions; price (of provisions), market; scarcity  
 annus, -ī, *m.*, year. (*Annual*)

ante, *adv.*, and *prep.* with *acc.*, before  
 anteā, *adv.* [*ante*], before  
 ante-cēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessūrus, go before. (*Antecedent*)  
**Antemnātēs, -ium, *m. plur.***, the inhabitants of Antemnæ  
 ante-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before  
 antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ante*], old, ancient. (*Antiquity*)  
 antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave  
 anxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, troubled.  
**ANXIOUS**  
 aperiō, aperire, aperiū, apertus, open  
**Apollō, -inis, *m.*, APOLLO**, a god of the Greeks  
 appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātus [*ad-*], address, call, name. (*Appeal*) Cf. vocō  
 ap-pellō, appellere, appuli, appulsus [*ad-*], (drive to); nāvem appellere, land, put in  
 ap-prehendō, apprehendere, apprehendī, apprehēnsus [*ad-*], seize. (*Apprehend*)  
 ap-propinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātūrus [*ad-*], approach, come near to. Cf. adeō and accēdō  
 aptō, aptāre, aptāvī, aptātus, fit. (*Adapt*)  
 apud, *prep.* with *acc.*, with, by, near, among  
 aqua, -ae, *f.*, water. (*Aquatic*)  
**Aquilēia, -ae, *f.*, AQUILEIA**, a city at the head of the Adriatic  
**Aquitānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.***, the AQUITANI, a tribe of Gaul

- āra, -ae, *f.*, altar  
 Arar, -aris, *m.*, the Saône, a river of Gaul, flowing into the Rhone  
 arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, think, suppose. (*Arbitrator.*) Cf. existimō and putō  
 arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree  
 arca, -ae, *f.*, box, chest, ARK  
 arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow. (*Arc*)  
 Ardea, -ae, *f.*, ARDEA, a city of Italy  
 arduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, steep; difficult, ARDUOUS  
 Argī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, ARGOS, a city of Greece  
 Aristotelēs, -is, *m.*, ARISTOTLE, a Greek philosopher  
 arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.* [*armō*], ARMS, weapons, ARMOR  
 armō, armāre, armāvī, armātus [*arma*], ARM, equip  
 ar-ripiō, arripere, arripūi, arreptus [*ad-rapiō*], seize, snatch  
 Arrūns, Arruntis, *m.*, ARRUNS, a son of Tarquinius Superbus  
 ars, artis, *f.*, ART, skill  
 a-scendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus [*ad-scandō*, climb], climb to, mount, ASCEND  
 ascēnsus, -ūs, *m.* [*ascendō*], a going up, ASCENT  
 at, *conj.*, but. Cf. sed and autem  
 Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, ATHENS  
 Atlās, -antis, *m.*, ATLAS, one of the Titans  
 at-que, *conj.*, used before vowels and consonants, ac before consonants only [*ad-*], and also, and especially, and; as. Cf. et and -que  
 atrōx, -ōcis, *adj.*, savage, fierce, severe. (*Atrocious.*) Cf. saevus and trux  
 at-tonitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ad-*], thunderstruck, astounded, awe-struck  
 auctōritās, -ātis, *f.*, power, AUTHORITY, influence  
 audācia, -ae, *f.* [*audāx*], daring, boldness, AUDACITY  
 audāx, -ācis, *adj.*, daring, bold. (*Audacious*)  
 audiō, audīre, audīvī (audiō), audītus, hear, listen. (*Audience*)  
 au-ferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus [*ab(s)-*], bear off, carry away, take away. (*Ablative*)  
 augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus [*auxiliū*], increase, enlarge. (*Augment*)  
 aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*aurum*], of gold, golden  
 aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold  
 aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or. Cf. vel  
 autem, *conj.* (*never used as the first word*), but, however, moreover, now. Cf. sed  
 auxiliō, auxiliārī, auxiliātus sum [*auxiliū*], give help, aid, assist, succor  
 auxiliū, auxiliī, *n.* [*augeō*], help, aid, support. (*Auxiliary*)  
 Aventīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, AVENTINE, of the AVENTINE (one of the hills of Rome)  
 ā-vertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversus, turn away, turn aside, AVERT, remove  
 avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather

barbarus, -ī, *m.*, BARBARIAN  
 Belgæ, -ārum, *m. plur.*, the BEL-  
     GIANS or BELGÆ, a Gallic tribe  
 bellum, -ī, *n.*, war. (*Belligerent*)  
 bēlua, -ae, *f.*, beast, monster  
 bene, *adv.* [*bonus*], well  
 beneficium, benefici, *n.* [*bene-faciō*],  
     kindness, service, BENEFIT  
 bibō, bibere, bibī, —, drink. (*Im-  
     bibe*)  
 bis, *adv.*, twice  
 bonitās, -ātis, *f.* [*bonus*], fertility,  
     goodness  
 bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good, kind  
 brevis, -e, *adj.*, short, BRIEF  
 Britannia, -ae, *f.*, BRITAIN  
 Britannus, -ī, *m.*, a BRITON, in-  
     habitant of Britannia  
 Bruttiī or Brittiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*,  
     the BRUTTII, a people of southern  
     Italy  
 Brūtus, -ī, *m.*, BRUTUS, a Roman  
     surname

C., abbreviation for Gāius, Caius  
 caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind  
 caedō, caedere, cecidī, caesus, cut;  
     kill. (*Suicide*)  
 Caelius, -a, -um, *adj.*, CÆLIAN  
 caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky, heaven, heavens  
 Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the in-  
     habitants of Cænina  
 Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caius Julius  
     CÆSAR, a famous Roman  
 cale-faciō, calefacere, calefēcī, cale-  
     factus [*caleō-*, be hot], make hot,  
     heat  
 Campānia, -ae, *f.*, CAMPANIA, a dis-  
     trict of Italy

canis, -is, *m. and f.*, dog. (*Canine*)  
 Cannæ, -ārum, *f. plur.*, CANNÆ, a  
     town of southern Italy  
 cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātus  
     sing. (*Chant*)  
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, take  
     seize, CAPTURE; form  
 Capitōlium, Capitōlī, *n.*, the CAP-  
     ITOL, temple of Jupiter at Rome  
     the CAPITOLINE Hill  
 captīva, -ae, *f.* [*capiō*], CAPTIVE  
     prisoner  
 captīvus, -ī, *m.* [*capiō*], CAPTIVE  
     prisoner  
 Capua, -ae, *f.*, CAPUA, a city in  
     Italy  
 caput, -itis, *n.*, head; person  
     (*Capital*)  
 careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, be ir-  
     want of, lack, want; with abl.  
     (*Caret*)  
 carō, carnis, *f.*, flesh. (*Carnal*)  
 carrus, -ī, *m.*, wagon, CART, CAR  
 cārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dear, precious  
 casa, -ae, *f.*, hut, cottage  
 Cassivellaunus, -ī, *m.*, CASSIVEL-  
     LAUNUS, a British chief  
 castellum, -ī, *n.* [*diminutive of*  
     *castrum*, fortress], redoubt, strong-  
     hold. (*Castle*)  
 Casticus, -ī, *m.*, CASTICUS, a Gallic  
     chief  
 castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*, camp.  
     (*Chester*)  
 cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, a falling; chance;  
     misfortune, loss. (*Case*)  
 cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail.  
 causa, -ae, *f.*, CAUSE, reason; causā  
     after a genitive, for the sake

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, give way, retire. (*Secede*)  
 celeber, -bris, -bre, *adj.* [*celebrō*], frequented, visited; renowned, CELEBRATED  
 celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī, celebrātus [*celeber*], frequent, throng. (*Celebrate*)  
 celer, -eris, -ere, *adj.*, swift, quick  
 celeritās, -ātis, *f.* [*celer*], swiftness, speed, quickness, CELERITY  
 celeriter, *adv.* [*celer*], swiftly, quickly  
 cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātus, CONCEAL  
 cēna, -ae, *f.* [*cēnō*], dinner, meal  
 Cēnaeum, -ī, *n.*, CENÆUM, a promontory on the island of Eubcea  
 cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātus [*cēna*], dine, take a meal  
 cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, a CENSUS  
 centaurus, -ī, *m.*, CENTAUR, a fabled monster, half man, half horse  
 centum, *adj.*, *indecl.*, hundred. (*Cent*)  
 centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*, CENTURION, an underofficer in the Roman army  
 Cēpheus, -ī, *m.*, CEPHEUS, father of Andromeda  
 cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax. (*Cerate*)  
 certāmen, -inis, *n.*, strife, contest  
 certē, *adv.* [*certus*], really, surely, CERTAINLY  
 certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fixed, determined, CERTAIN, sure; certiōrem faciō, (make more certain), inform  
 cēterī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, plur., the rest, the remaining, the others. Cf. *alius*  
 cibus, -ī, *m.*, food  
 Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, CICERO, a famous Roman orator

Cineās, -ae, *m.*, CINEAS, a friend of Pyrrhus  
 cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround, encircle, gird  
 circiter, *adv.*, about  
 circuitus, -ūs, *m.* [*circum-eō*], (a going round), circumference, CIRCUIT  
 circum, *prep. with acc.*, around  
 circum-arō, circumarāre, circumarāvī, —, plough around  
 circum-dō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus, place around, surround, inclose  
 circum-mūniō, circummūnire, circummūnīvī, circummūnītus, wall around, surround, fortify, blockade  
 circum-stō, circumstāre, circumstetī (circumstitti), —, stand around, surround. (*Circumstance*)  
 circum-veniō, circumvenīre, circumvenī, circumventus, surround, CIRCUMVENT  
 circus, -ī, *m.*, the CIRCUS at Rome, in which chariot races and other contests were held  
 Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (this side the Alps), CISALPINE  
 citerior, -ius, *adj.*, comp., hither, nearer  
 cithara, -ae, *f.*, lyre  
 citrā, *prep. with acc.*, this side of  
 cīvis, -is, *m. and f.*, citizen. (*Civil*)  
 cīvitās, -ātis, *f.* [*cīvis*], (body of citizens), state; citizenship. (*City*)  
 clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, cry, shout; barking. (*Clamor*)  
 clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, CLEAR, loud; renowned, famous. (*Clarion*)

claudō, claudere, clausi, clausus,  
     shut, CLOSE. (*Clause*)  
 cloāca, -ae, f., sewer  
 Cloelia, -ae, f., CLÆLIA, a noble  
     Roman maiden  
 Cocles, -itis, m., (blind in one eye),  
     COCLLES, surname of Horatius  
 coepī, coepisse, coeptus (*defective*;  
     *tenses from present stem wanting*), began  
 co-erceō, coercere, coercui, coercitus  
     [co(m)-arceō, keep off], keep back,  
     check, restrain. (*Coerce*)  
 cōgitō, cōgitare, cōgitavi, cōgitā-  
     tus, consider thoroughly, reflect.  
     (*Cogitation*)  
 cognōmen, -inis, n. [co(m)-(g)nōmen],  
     surname, COGNOMEN  
 co-gnōscō, cognoscere, cognōvī, co-  
     gnitus [co(m)-(g)nōscō, know],  
     learn, RECOGNIZE, know, under-  
     stand  
 cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctus [co(m)-  
     agō], (drive together), collect,  
     drive, compel  
 cohors, -hortis, f., COHORT, a divi-  
     sion of the Roman army  
 Collātinus, -ī, m., COLLATINUS, a  
     Roman  
 col-ligō, colligere, collēgi, collēctus  
     [com-legō], COLLECT, gather to-  
     gether  
 collis, -is, m., hill. Cf. mōns  
 collum, -ī, n., neck. (*Collar*)  
 colō, colere, colui, cultus, care for,  
     CULTIVATE, till; honor. Cf.  
     agricola and incola  
 com- (col-, con-, cor-, co-, cō-), *prim-*  
     *itive form of cum, a prefix*

    denoting completeness or union,  
     sometimes intensive  
 comes, -itis, m. and f. [com-eō]  
     comrade, companion  
 comitium, comiti, n. [com-eō], (place  
     of assembling), the COMITIUM, a  
     part of the Roman Forum  
 commēatus, -ūs, m., supplies, pro-  
     visions  
 com-mittō, committere, commisi-  
     commissus, intrust, COMMIT; proe-  
     lium committere, join battle, en-  
     gage. (*Commission*)  
 com-moveō, commovēre, commōvi-  
     commōtus, (put in violent motion)  
     shake, disturb, agitate, move  
     (*Commotion*)  
 commūnis, -e, adj., COMMON, gen-  
     eral. (*Community*)  
 com-pāreō, compārēre, compārui  
     —, APPEAR  
 com-pellō, compellere, compuli, com-  
     pulsus, (drive together), force  
     COMPEL. (*Compulsion*)  
 com-periō, comperire, comperi, com-  
     pertus [-pariō, bring forth], find  
     out, learn  
 com-plector, complecti, complexus  
     sum, embrace  
 com-pleō, complēre, complēvi, com-  
     plētus, fill out, fill up, cover  
     (*Complete*)  
 com-plūrēs, -a (-ia), adj., plur., very  
     many, many, a number  
 com-primō, comprimere, compressi-  
     compressus [-premō, press], PRESS  
     together, grasp; check, suppress  
     (*Compress*)  
 compulsus, see compellō

- con-, see com-
- cōnātūs, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnor*], attempt
- cōn-cēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, allow, grant, permit. (*Concede*)
- concilium, concili, *n.*, COUNCIL, assembly
- con-citō, concitare, concitāvī, concitātus, rouse up, rouse, spur on
- con-currō, concurrere, concurri, concurrus, run together, rush together, rally, gather. (*Course*)
- condiciō, -ōnis, *f.* [*con-dīcō*], (a talking together), agreement, CONDITION, terms
- con-dō, condere, condidī, conditus [-dō, put], conceal, hide; found, establish. Cf. cēlō
- con-dōnō, condōnāre, condōnāvī, condōnātus, give up, surrender; forgive, pardon, CONDONE
- cō-nectō, cōnectere, cōnexūi, cōnexus [co(m)-], bind together; join, tie. (*Connect*)
- cōn-ferō, cōferrere, contulī, conlātus, bring together, collect; sē cōn-ferre, betake one's self
- cōnfertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crowded, thick, dense
- cōn-ficiō, cōnfictere, cōnfēcī, cōnfec-tus [-faciō], make, accomplish, carry out, finish; weaken, wear out
- cōn-firmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātus, make FIRM, strengthen, steady. (*Confirm*)
- cōn-fugiō, cōfugere, cōfūgī, ——, flee for refuge, flee
- con-iō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectus [-iaciō], throw together; throw, put, hurl, cast. (*Conjecture*)
- con-iungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctus, join together, unite. (*Conjunction*)
- coniūnx, -iugis, *m. and f.* [*coniungō*], husband, wife. (*Conjugal*)
- coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*coniūrō*], conspiracy
- con-iūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātus, unite by oath, conspire. (*Conjure*)
- con-locō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātus, place, station. Cf. pōnō
- conloquium, conloquī, *n.* [*con-lo-quor*], (a talking together), conversation, conference, COLLOQUY
- cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, endeavor, attempt, try. (*Conative*)
- cōn-scendō, cōnsendere, cōnsendī, cōnsēnsus [-scandō, climb], climb up, mount, go on board
- cōn-scribō, cōnscribēre, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptus, ènlist, enrol, levy. (*Conscription*)
- cōn-secrō, cōnsecrāre, cōnsecrāvī, cōnsecrātus [-sacrō, make sacred], deify, CONSECRATE
- cōn-sequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, overtake. (*Consecutive*)
- cōn-servō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātus, PRESERVE, save. (*Conserve*)
- Cōnsidius, Cōnsidī, *m.*, CONSIDIUS, an officer of Cæsar
- cōnsilium, cōnsili, *n.* [*cōsulō*], advice, COUNSEL, prudence, wisdom; plan, design

cōn-sistō, cōnsistere, cōnstītī, —, stand firm, take one's stand, halt; depend, rest. (*Consist*)  
cōnspectus, -ūs, *m.*, look, view, sight  
cōn-stituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus [-statuō, set up], establish, determine, fix, decide, resolve. (*Constitution*)  
cōn-suēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētus, accustom; become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed, be wont  
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, *f.* [*cōnsuēscō*], custom, habit  
cōnsul, -ulīs, *m.*, CONSUL  
cōnsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnsul*], CONSULSHIP  
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsulūi, cōnsultus [*cōnsilium*], take counsel, CONSULT  
cōn-sūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsumpsī, cōnsumptus, use up, spend, pass, CONSUME  
con-tegō, contegere, contēxī, contēctus, cover  
con-temnō, contemnere, contempstī, contemptus, despise, CONTEMN. (*Contempt*)  
con-tendō, contendere, contendī, contentus, strain, struggle, strive, hasten. (*Contend.*) Cf. mātūrō and properō  
contentiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*contendō*], struggle, exertion. (*Contention*)  
continēns, -entis, *f.* [*contineō*], mainland, CONTINENT  
continenter, *adv.* [*contineō*], continuously  
con-tineō, continēre, continūi, contentus [-teneō], hold together,

keep together, hold, CONTAIN  
(*Contents*)  
con-tingō, contingere, contigī, contāctus [-tangō, touch], fall to one's lot. (*Contact*)  
continuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*contineō*], CONTINUOUS, successive  
contrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, against, CONTRARY TO  
con-veniō, convenire, convēnī, con-ventūrūs, come together, assemble, meet; CONVENE. (*Convention*)  
conventus, -ūs, *m.* [*conveniō*], gathering, assembly, meeting  
con-vocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātus, call together, summon, CONVOKE  
cōpia, -ae, *f.* [*co(m)-ops*], abundance, wealth, plenty; plur., troops, forces. (*Copious*)  
cōram, *adv.*, face to face, in person  
Corinthus, -ī, *f.*, CORINTH  
Coriolānus, -ī, *m.*, CORIOLANUS, a famous Roman warrior  
Coriolī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, CORIOLI, an ancient town in Italy  
Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, CORNELIA, a Roman name  
cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn  
corōna, -ae, *f.*, CROWN. (*Coronet*)  
corpus, -ōris, *n.*, body. (*Corpse*)  
cor-ripiō, corripere, corripui, correp-tus [*com-rapiō*], seize, take hold of  
cotidiānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cotidie*], daily  
cotidiē, *adv.* [*quot-dīes*], daily  
crātēra, -ae, *f.*, mixing bowl, bowl  
crēber, -bra, -brum, *adj.*, thick, numerous, frequent

crēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, to be believed,  
CREDIBLE  
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crēditus, believe, think, suppose. (*Credit*)  
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātus, make,  
CREATE; choose, elect  
Crēta, -ae, *f.*, CRETE, an island southeast of Greece  
cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture  
Crustumīni, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the inhabitants of Crustumerium  
cubiculum, -ī, *n.* [*cubō*, lie], bedchamber  
cum, *conj.*, when  
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with  
cūnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, cradle  
cūnctus, -a, -um, *adj.*, all together, all. Cf. omnis, tōtus, and ūniversus  
cupidē, *adv.* [*cupidus*], eagerly  
cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [*cupidus*], longing, desire. (*Cupidity*)  
cupidius, *adv.* [*cupidē*], too eagerly  
cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*cupiō*], desirous, fond  
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (*cupiī*), cupītus, desire, be eager for. Cf. volō  
cūr, *adv.*, why, wherefore  
cūra, -ae, *f.* [*cūrō*], care, anxiety  
Curius, Curi, *m.*, CURIUS, a Roman name  
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī, cūrātus [*cūra*], care for, take care; *with gerundive*, have (a thing done)  
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursūrus [*currus*], run  
cursus, -ūs, *m.* [*currō*], COURSE, race-COURSE  
custōdiō, custōdīre, custōdīvī (custōdīl), custōditus [*custōs*], guard, protect, defend

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.* [*custōdiō*], guardian, keeper. (*Custodian*)  
Cyclops, -ōpis, *m.*, (round eye), a CYCLOPS, one of a fabulous race of giants on the coast of Sicily  
Daedalus, -ī, *m.*, DÆDALUS, father of Icarus  
damnō, damnāre, damnāvī, damnātus [*damnum*], condemn, sentence, doom  
damnūm, -ī, *n.* [*damnō*], hurt, harm, damage, loss  
Danaē, -ēs, *f.*, DANAE, mother of Perseus  
dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; about, concerning, of; *of time*, in, during, for  
dea, -ae, *f.* [*deus*], goddess  
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitus [*dē-habeō*], owe, ought, must, should  
dēbitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dēbeō*], owed; due, appropriate. (*Debit, Debt*)  
decem, *adj., indecl.*, ten  
dē-cidō, dēcidere, dēcidī, — [*-cadō*, fall], fall down, fall off  
decimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*decem*], tenth. (*Decimal*)  
dē-cipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī, dēceptus [*-capiō*], DECEIVE  
Decius, Decī, *m.*, DECIUS, a Roman name  
dēditicius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*dēdō*], surrendered; *masc. plur. as noun*, prisoners of war, subjects  
dēditiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*dēdō*], (a giving up), surrender  
dē-dō, dēdere, dēdidi, dēditus [-dō, put], give up, surrender

dē-dūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxi, dēductus, lead down, lead off, escort, bring to. (*Deduct*)  
 dē-fendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus, (strike off from), DEFEND, protect  
 dē-ferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, (bring down), report  
 dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., tired out, weary, very tired  
 Dēianīra, -ae, f., DEIANIRA, wife of Hercules  
 dē-iciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus [-iaciō], throw down, let fall; disappoint; *pass.*, slip, stumble. (*Rejected*)  
 dēiectus, *see* dēiciō  
 de-inde, *adv.*, (from thence), then, afterwards, next  
 dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātus, DELIGHT, please. (*Delectable*)  
 dē-ligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus [-legō], pick out, choose, SELECT  
 Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur., DELPHI, a town in Greece  
 Delphicus, -a, -um, adj., of DELPHI, DELPHIC  
 dē-migrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigratūrus, MIGRATE from; remove, go away. Cf. abeō  
 dē-mittō, dēmittere, dēmisi, dēmissus, (send down), let down, let go, lose  
 dē-mōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstratūrus, point out, show, describe. (*Demonstrate*)  
 dēmum, *adv.*, at length, at last; tum dēmum, not till then

dēnique, *adv.*, at last, finally; in short, in fact  
 dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., thick, DENSE  
 Dentātus, -ī, m., DENTATUS, a Roman name  
 dē-pellō, dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus, drive out, drive away, remove, banish  
 dē-plōrō, dēplōrāre, dēplōrāvī, dēplōrātus, lament, DEPLORE  
 dē-pōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put down, lay aside, abandon. (*Deposit*)  
 dēpositus, *see* dēpōnō  
 dēpulsus, *see* dēpellō  
 dē-scendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēnsūrus [-scandō, climb], (climb down), come down, DESCEND  
 dē-scribō, dēscribere, dēscriptī, dēscriptus, mark off, divide. (*Describe*)  
 dē-serō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus, abandon, DESERT  
 dēsertus, *see* dēserō  
 dē-siliō, dēsilire, dēsiluī, dēsultūrus [-saliō, jump], jump down, leap down  
 dē-sistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, (stand off or apart), leave off, cease; DESIST  
 dēspectus, -ūs, m., (a looking down upon), view, PROSPECT  
 dē-spērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātus, be hopeless, DESPAIR  
 dē-spoliō, dēspoliāre, dēspoliāvī, dēspoliātus, rob, deprive, DESPOIL  
 dē-sum, deesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be from, be wanting, lack; *with dat.*

- dē-super, *adv.*, down from above  
 dē-trahō, dētrahere, dētrāxī, dē-  
 trāctus, draw off, throw off, re-  
 move. (*Detract*)
- deus, -ī, *m.*, god. (*Deity*)
- dē-vorō, dēvorāre, dēvorāvī, dēvorā-  
 tus, swallow up, DEVOUR, gulp  
 down
- dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right (hand).  
 (*Dexterous*)
- dextra, -ae, *f.* [*dexter*], right hand
- dī-, see dis-
- dīcō, dicere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell,  
 speak; appoint. (*Dictum*)
- dīes, -ēī, *m.*, day
- dīf-ficilis, -e, *adj.* [*dis-facilis*], hard,  
 DIFFICULT
- dīfficultās, -ātis, *f.* [*difficilis*], DIFFI-  
 CULTY
- dīgnitās, -ātis, *f.*, rank. (*Dignity*)
- dīligenter, *adv.* [*diligentia*], DILI-  
 GENTLY, industriously
- dīligentia, -ae, *f.* [*diligenter*], DILI-  
 GENCE, carefulness, industry
- dīmicō, dīmicāre, dīmicāvī, dīmicā-  
 tūrus, fight, contend. Cf. pugnō
- dī-mittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissus,  
 send off, DISMISS; let slip, let go by
- dis- (dī-), a prefix denoting separa-  
 tion, asunder, apart, in different  
 directions. Cf. dīmittō, discēdō,
- dissimilis, dīvellō
- dis-cēdō, discēdere, discessī, disces-  
 sūrus, depart, withdraw, go off.  
 Cf. abeō
- discō, discere, didicī, discitūrus, learn.  
 (*Disciple*)
- discrīmen, -inis, *n.*, risk, danger,  
 crisis. Cf. periculum.
- dis-pliceō, displicēre, displicui, dis-  
 plicitūrus [-placeō], DISPLEASE
- dis-similis, -e, *adj.*, unlike, DIS-  
 SIMILAR
- dīū, *adv.*, for a long time, long
- dīūturnitās, -ātis, *f.* [dīū], length,  
 duration
- dī-vellō, dīvellere, dīvellī, dīvulsus,  
 tear asunder, tear apart
- dīversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, (turned away),  
 separate, different, DIVERSE
- Dīvicō, -ōnis, *m.*, DIVICO, a chief  
 of the Helvetians
- dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisus,  
 DIVIDE, apportion. (*Division*)
- dīvinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the gods,  
 DIVINE
- dīvulsus, see dīvellō
- dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, offer;  
 put. Cf. dōnō
- doceō, docēre, docui, doctus, teach,  
 show. (*Docile, Doctor*)
- doleō, dolēre, dolui, dolitūrus [*dolor*],  
 grieve, be sorry. (*Condole*)
- dolor, -ōris, *m.* [*doleō*], pain, grief.  
 (*Dolorous*)
- dolus, -ī, *m.*, deceit, trick, fraud,  
 cunning
- domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*domus*],  
 DOMESTIC
- domī, see domus
- domina, -ae, *f.* [*dominus*], mistress, lady
- dominus, -ī, *m.* [*domus*], lord, mas-  
 ter, owner. (*Dominate*)
- domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; domī,  
 at home. (*Domestic*)
- dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus [*dō-  
 num*], give, present. (*Donate*.)  
 Cf. dō

dōnum, -ī, *n.* [*dō*], gift, present  
 dormiō, dormire, dormīvī (*dormiī*),  
 dormītus, sleep. (*Dormitory*)  
 dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, DRAGON  
 ducentī, -ae, -a, *adj.*, two hundred  
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus [*dux*], lead,  
 draw; derive. (*Duct*)  
 dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; until  
 Dumnorīx, -īgis, *m.*, DUMNORIX, a  
 leader of the Hædui  
 duo, duae, duo, *adj.*, two. (*Dual*)  
 duo-decim [-decem], *adj.*, *indecl.*,  
 twelve  
 duplex, -icis, *adj.* [*duo*], twofold,  
 double  
 duplīcō, duplīcāre, duplīcāvī, duplī-  
 cātus [*duplex*], double. (*Duplicate*)  
 dux, ducis, *m. and f.* [*dūcō*], leader,  
 general. (*Duke*) Cf. imperātor  
 ē, see ex  
 ē-dō, ēdere, ēdidi, ēditus [-dō, put],  
 put forth, raise, utter. (*Edit*)  
 ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātus,  
 bring up, train, EDUCATE  
 ē-dūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead  
 out, lead forth, bring away;  
 draw  
 ef-ficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus [*ex-  
 faciō*], bring about, EFFECT, ac-  
 complish  
 ef-flō, efflāre, efflāvī, efflātus [*ex-*],  
 (blow out), breathe out  
 ef-fundō, effundere, effūdī, effūsus  
 [*ex-*], pour forth, pour out, shed.  
 (*Effusion*)  
 effūsus, see effundō.  
 ego, *pers. pron.*, I; *plur.* nōs, we.  
 (*Egotist*)

ē-gredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum [-gra-  
 dior, go], go out, go forth; in  
 terram ēgressus, having gone  
 ashore. (*Egress*.) Cf. exēō  
 ēgregiē, *adv.*, remarkably, excellently  
 ēgressus, see ēgredior  
 elephantus, -ī, *m.*, ELEPHANT  
 ē-ligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus [-legō],  
 pick out, choose, SELECT. (*Elect*)  
 ē-mittō, ēmittere, ēmisi, ēmissus,  
 send forth, let loose, let out.  
 (*Emit*)  
 emō, emere, ēmī, ēemptus, (take),  
 buy  
 enim, *conj.* (*never the first word*),  
 for; indeed, in fact. Cf. nam  
 Ennius, Ennī, *m.*, ENNIUS, an early  
 Latin poet  
 ē-nūntiō, ēnūntiāre, ēnūntiāvī, ēnūn-  
 tiātus, proclaim, ANNOUNCE, re-  
 veal, utter. (*Enunciate*)  
 eō, īre, iī (īvī), itūrus, go  
 eō, *adv.* [*is*], to that place, thither,  
 there  
 Ēpirus, -ī, *f.*, EPIRUS, a division of  
 Greece  
 epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter, EPISTLE  
 eques, -itis, *m.* [*equus*], horseman,  
 knight  
 equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [*eques*], (of  
 horsemen), EQUESTRIAN  
 equitātus, -ūs, *m.* [*eques*], (body of  
 horsemen), cavalry  
 equus, -ī, *m.*, horse. (*Equine*)  
 ergō, *adv.*, therefore  
 errō, errāre, errāvī, errātūrus, wander,  
 ERR  
 ērudiō, ērudire, ērudivī (*érudiī*), ēru-  
 dītus, instruct. (*Eruditē*)

ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a bursting forth), sally. (*Eruption*)

Ēsquīlinus, -ī, *m.*, the ESQUILINE, one of the hills of Rome

et, *conj.*, and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and. Cf. atque (ac) and -que

etiam, *adv. and conj.* [*et-iam*], (and now), also, even. Cf. quoque

Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the ETRUSCANS, people of Etruria, in Italy

et-sī, *conj.*, although

Eunomus, -ī, *m.*, EUNOMUS, a boy who was killed by Hercules

Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, EUROPE

Eurystheus, -ī, *m.*, EURYSTHEUS, king of Tiryns, in Greece

Eurytus, -ī, *m.*, EURYTUS, father of Iole

ē-vādō, ēvādēre, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus, (go out), get away, escape. (*Evade*)

ē-veniō, ēvenire, ēvēnī, ēventūrus, (come out), fall out, happen, turn out. (*Event.*) Cf. accidō and fiō

ex (ē), *prep. with abl.*, out of, from, of, off, on; in accordance with

examīnātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*anima*], 'breathless, out of breath, exhausted

ex-cēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessūrus, go out, go forth, depart. (*Exceed*)

ex-citō, excitāre, excitāvī, excitātus, (call out), rouse, arouse, wake. (*Excite*)

ex-clāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvī, exclāmātus, cry out, EXCLAIM

excursiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a running out), sally, sortie. (*Excursion*)

exemplum, -ī, *n.*, sample, EXAMPLE, warning

ex-eō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus, go out, go forth, come out. (*Exit.*) Cf. ēgredior

exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus, EXERCISE, train

exercitatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*exerceō*], exercise, training

exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [*exerceō*], (the thing trained), army

ex-igō, exigere, exēgī, exāctus [-agō], drive out, expel. (*Exact*)

existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātus, . think, judge, consider, suppose. Cf. arbitrō and putō

exitium, exitī, *n.* [*exeō*], ruin, destruction

ex-pellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus, drive out, EXPEL. (*Expulsion*)

ex-perior, experīrī, expertus sum [*periculum*], try, test; EXPERIENCE. Cf. tentō

expertus, see experior

ex-piō, expiāre, expiāvī, expiātus, make amends for, EXPIATE

explōrātor, -ōris, *m.* [*explōrō*], scout, spy

ex-plōrō, explōrāre, explōrāvī, explōrātus [*explōrātor*], examine, EXPLORE, investigate

ex-pōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus, set forth, explain, relate; EXPOSE

expositus, see expōnō

ex-pugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātus, take by storm, take, capture. Cf. oppugnō

- expulsus, *see expellō*  
 ex-spectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī,  
 exspectātus, (look out for), await,  
 wait for, wait, EXPECT  
 ex-struō, exstruere, exstrūxī, ex-  
 strūctus, (heap up), build, erect,  
 CONSTRUCT  
 extrā, prep. with acc., outside,  
 beyond  
 ex-trahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extrāc-  
 tus, draw out, drag out. (*Extract*)  
 extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl., outer-  
 most, last, farthest; end of; EX-  
 TREME  
 exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtus, take off,  
 put off
- faber, -brī, m., workman, artisan,  
 smith  
 Fabricius, Fabricī, m., FABRICIUS, a  
 famous Roman general  
 fābula, -ae, f., story, tale, FABLE  
 facile, adv. [*facilis*], easily  
 facilis, -e, adj. [*faciō*], (that can be  
 done), easy to do, easy. (*Faci-  
 lity*)  
 faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, do, make;  
 form, perform  
 factum, -i, n. [*faciō*], act, deed,  
 action. (*Fact*)  
 facultās, -ātis, f. [*facilis*], power,  
 opportunity, chance. (*Faculty*)  
 falx, falcis, f., curved sword  
 fāma, -ae, f., rumor, report; FAME,  
 renown  
 famēs, -is, f., hunger, FAMINE  
 fātum, -i, n., FATE  
 Faustulus, -i, m., FAUSTULUS, a  
 shepherd
- faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, be  
 favorable to, FAVOR, befriend;  
 with dat.  
 fēlēs, -is, f., cat. (*Feline*)  
 fēliciter, adv. [*fēlix*], luckily, fortu-  
 nately, successfully  
 fēlix, -īcis, adj., lucky, fortunate,  
 happy. (*Felicity*)  
 fēmina, -ae, f., woman. (*Feminine*).  
 Cf. mulier  
 ferē, adv., nearly, for the most part,  
 almost, about  
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, bring;  
 report, say. Cf. portō and  
 tolerō  
 ferrum, -ī, n., iron; sword. Cf.  
 gladius  
 Fidēnātēs, -ium, m. plur., the in-  
 habitants of Fidenæ  
 fidēs, -ei, f., trust, confidence. (*Fi-  
 delity*)  
 figūra, -ae, f. [*fi(n)gō*], shape, form,  
 FIGURE  
 filia, -ae, f. [*filius*], daughter  
 filius, filī, m. [*filia*], son. (*Filial*)  
 fingō, fingere, finxi, fictus, fashion,  
 devise. (*Feign, Fiction*)  
 fīnis, -is, m., end, border; plur.,  
 territories. (*Final*)  
 fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. [*fīnis*], bor-  
 dering on; masc. plur. as noun,  
 neighbors  
 fīō, fieri, factus sum (*supplies pass.*  
 to faciō), be made, be done, be-  
 come, happen. Cf. accidō and  
 ēveniō  
 firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, FIRM  
 flagrāns, -antis, adj., flaming, blaz-  
 ing, burning. (*Flagrant*)

flūmen, -inis, *n.* [*fluō*], (that which flows), river, stream  
 fluō, fluere, flūxi, fluxūrus, flow  
 focius, -ī, *m.* [*focus*], sacrificial hearth, fire pan, brazier  
 focus, -ī, *m.*, hearth. (*Focus*, *Fuel*)  
 foedus, -eris, *n.*, league, treaty, alliance. (*Federal*)  
 fore, *for* futūrum esse  
 fors, fortis, *f.*, chance, luck  
 forte, *adv.* [*fors*], by chance, perhaps  
 fortis, -e, *adj.*, strong, brave, courageous. (*Fortitude*) Cf. validus  
 fortiter, *adv.* [*fortis*], bravely, courageously  
 fortūna, -ae, *f.* [*fors*], FORTUNE, good FORTUNE  
 fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch, trench, FOSSE; canal  
 frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother. (*Fraternal*)  
 fremitus, -ūs, *m.*, noise, roaring, roar  
 frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, brow. (*Front*)  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*frūmentum*], of grain  
 frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, corn, grain  
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain. (*Frustate*)  
 fuga, -ae, *f.* [*fugiō*], flight  
 fugiō, fugere, fūgi, fugitūrus [*fugō*, *fuga*], run away, flee; flee from. (*Fugitive*)  
 fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātus [*fuga*, *fugiō*], put to flight, rout  
 fūmus, -ī, *m.*, smoke. (*Fumes*)  
 furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, frenzy, FUROR  
 Gabiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, GABII, a city of Italy

Galba, -ae, *m.*, GALBA  
 galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet  
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, GAUL  
 Galicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, GALLIC  
 Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a GAUL  
 gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum (*semi-deponent*) [*gaudium*], be glad, rejoice  
 gaudium, gaudi, *n.* [*gaudeō*], JOY, gladness. Cf. laetitia  
 gāvisus, see gaudeō  
 geminus, -a, -um, *adj.*, twin-born, twin-  
 Genāva, -ae, *f.*, GENEVA  
 gēns, gentis, *f.* [*genus*], race, tribe, house, family. (*Gentile*, *Gentle*)  
 genus, -eris, *n.* [*gēns*], race, lineage; kind, class. (*Generous*)  
 Germānia, -ae, *f.*, GERMANY  
 Germānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, GERMAN; as noun, a GERMAN  
 gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on, wage (war); manage, do; wear; sē gerere, act, behave; pass., go on, take place  
 gigās, -antis, *m.*, GIANT  
 gladius, gladi, *m.*, sword. (*Gladiator*) Cf. ferrum  
 glōria, -ae, *f.*, GLORY, reputation  
 Gorgō, -onis, *f.*, a GORGON  
 Graeae, -ārum, *f. plur.*, the GRÆAE  
 Graecia, -ae, *f.*, GREECE  
 Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a GREEK  
 grāmen, -inis, *n.*, grass  
 grātia, -ae, *f.* [*grātus*], favor, kindness; plur., thanks, GRATITUDE  
 grātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*grātia*], acceptable, pleasing; GRATEFUL  
 gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, severe, serious. (*Grave*)

graviter, *adv.* [*gravis*], heavily, severely, vehemently, greatly  
 gravō, *gravare*, *gravāvī*, *gravātus* [*gravis*], oppress, burden, overcome. (*Aggravate*)  
 gustō, *gustare*, *gustāvī*, *gustātus*, taste, eat. (*Gustatory*)

habeō, *habēre*, *habui*, *habitūs*, have, hold, keep; *with ōrātiōnem*, make, deliver. (*Habit*)

habitō, *habitare*, *habitāvī*, *habitātus* [*frequentative of habeō*], *inhabit*; dwell, live. Cf. *incolō*

Haeduus, -a, -um, *adj.*, HÄDUAN; *masc. plur. as noun*, the HÄDUI, a tribe of Gaul

haereō, *haerēre*, *haesī*, *haesūrus*, stick, cling, be fixed; be perplexed, HESITATE. (*Adhere*)

Hammōn, -ōnis, *m.*, HAMMON, an Egyptian god, identified by the Romans with Jupiter

Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, HANNIBAL, a famous Carthaginian general

harēna, -ae, *f.*, sand, shore. (*Arena*)

hasta, -ae, *f.*, spear

haud, *adv.*, not. Cf. nōn

hauriō, *haurīre*, *hausī*, haustus, drink, drain. (*Exhaust*)

Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the HELVETII, a tribe of Gaul

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, HERCULES, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, famous for his strength

Hesperidēs, -um, *f. plur.*, the HESPERIDES, daughters of Atlas and Hesperis, and guardians of the golden apples

hesternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of yesterday, yester-

hiberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.* [*hiems*], winter quarters. (*Hibernate*)

hic, haec, hoc, *dem. adj. and pron.*, this, this of mine; *as pers. pron.*, he, she, it

hic, *adv.* [*hic*], here, hereupon

hiemō, *hiemāre*, *hiemāvī*, *hiemātūrus* [*hiems*], spend the winter

hiems, *hiemis*, *f.* [*hiemō*], winter; storm

hinc, *adv.* [*hic*], hence, from here

Hispānia, -ae, *f.*, SPAIN

Hispānus, -ī, *m.*, a SPANIARD

ho-diē, *adv.* [*hōc-dīē*], to-day

homō, -inis, *m. and f.* [*hūmānus*], (human being), man. Cf. vir

honestās, -ātis, *f.* [*honor*], honorable character, integrity, uprightness, HONESTY

honor, -ōris, *m.*, HONOR

hōra, -ae, *f.*, HOUR; in hōrās, from hour to hour, hourly

Horātius, Horātī, *m.*, HORATIUS (Cocles)

horribilis, -e, *adj.*, terrible, dreadful, HORRIBLE. Cf. *terribilis*

hortor, *hortārī*, *hortātus sum*, urge, entreat, EXHORT

hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden. (*Horticulture*)

hospitium, *hospitī*, *n.*, HOSPITALITY

hostis, -is, *m. and f.*, enemy. (*Hostile*.) Cf. *inimicus*

hūc, *adv.* [*hic*], hither

hūmānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*homō*], (pertaining to man), man's, HUMAN

humī, locative, on the ground. (*Exhume*)

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, — [iaciō], (be thrown), lie, lie dead. (*Adjacent*)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus [iaceō], throw, cast, hurl

iam, *adv.*, already, now, at last; nōn iam, no longer. Cf. nunc

Iāniculum, -ī, *n.*, the JANICULUM, one of the hills of Rome

ibi, *adv.* [*is*], in that place, there

Icarus, -ī, *m.*, ICARUS

ictus, -ūs, *m.*, stroke, blow

idem, eadem, idem, *dem. adj. and pron.* [*is*], same; idem quī, same as. (*Identical*)

idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, suitable

igitur, *conj.* (*seldom the first word*), therefore, then. Cf. itaque

ignis, -is, *m.*, fire. (*Ignite*)

ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī, ignōrātus, not know, be ignorant of. (*Ignore*)

i-gnōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-(g)nōtus*, known], unknown, unfamiliar, strange

ille, -a, -ud, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that (yonder); as *pers. pron.*, he, she, it

illīc, *adv.* [*ille*], there

illūc, *adv.* [*ille*], thither

immānitās, -ātis, *f.*, savageness, cruelty, barbarity

im-mineō, imminēre, imminuī, —

[*in-*], hang over, impend. (*Imminent*)

impedimentum, -ī, *n.* [*impediō*], hindrance; plur., baggage. (*Impediment*)

impediō, impedīre, impedīvī (*impeditiō*), impedītus [*in-pēs*], entangle, hamper, IMPEDE

im-pellō, impellere, impulī, impulsus [*in-*], move, induce, drive, IMPEL. (*Impulse*)

im-pendeō, impendēre, —, — [*in-*], overhang, IMPEND

imperātor, -ōris, *m.* [*imperō*], commander, general. (*Emperor*)

imperātum, -ī, *n.* [*imperō*], order, command. Cf. iussum

imperium, imperī, *n.* [*imperō*], command, rule, power. (*Empire*)

imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātus [*imperium*], order, command, demand; rule; with dat. of person. (*Imperative.*) Cf. iubeō

impetus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, assault. (*Impetuous*)

im-pleō, implēre, implēvī, implētus [*in-*], fill up, cover, fill

im-pōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus [*in-*], put in or on, place in or on; mount; IMPOSE; with dat. of person or place

impositus, see impōnō

impudēns, -entis, *adj.*, shameless, IMPUDENT

impulsus, see impellō

īmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl. of īferus in, *prep.* with acc., into, to, against, on, toward, for; with abl., IN, on, in case of

in-, prefix, into, on, toward, etc.; also in composition with nouns, adjectives, and participles, often having negative sense. Cf. Eng. un-, in-, not

in-cendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus [-candeō, shine], set fire to, burn. (*Incendiary*)

incēnsus, -a, -um, adj. [*incendō*], inflamed, hot, fiery. (*Incense*)

in-certus, -a, -um, adj., UNCERTAIN, doubtful

in-cidō, incidere, incidī, — [ -*cadō* ], fall], fall into; in īsāniām incidere, become insane. (*Incident*)

in-cipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus [-*capiō*], (take in hand), begin. (*Incipient*)

in-citō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātus, arouse, stir, INCITE

in-clūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus [-*claudō*], shut in, confine. (*Include*)

in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown incohō, incohāre, incohāvī, incohātus, begin. (*Inchoate*)

incola, -ae, m. and f. [*incolō*], inhabitant

in-colō, incolere, incoluī, — [ *incola* ], dwell in, inhabit; live, dwell. Cf. habitō

incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe

increpitō, increpitāre, —, —,

upbraid, taunt, abuse

inde, adv. [*is*], thence, thereupon indicō, indicāre, indicāvī, indicātus, inform, disclose, make known. (*Indicate*)

in-dicō, indicere, indīxī, indictus, proclaim, declare, appoint. (*Indict*)

in-dūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductus, lead to, draw to, INDUCE, persuade

induō, induēre, induī, indūtus, put on, clothe one's self in, clothe, wrap

in-eō, inīre, inīī (inīvī), initus, go in, enter; begin, form

in-fāns, -antis, adj., (not speaking); as noun, INFANT, baby

in-fēlix, -īcis, adj., unfortunate, unlucky, unhappy. (*Infelicitous*)

in-fērō, īferre, intulī, inlātus, (bear in or against), cause, bring on, inflict. (*Infer*)

(inferus), -a, -um, adj., low, below, underneath

in-festus, -a, -um, adj., hostile; as noun, enemy. (*Infest*)

in-ficiō, īficere, īfēcī, īfectus [-*faciō*], soak, imbue, stain. (*Infect*)

in-finītus, -a, -um, adj., many, countless. (*Infinite*)

ingēns, -entis, adj., huge, great. Cf. magnus

in-iciō, inicere, iniēcī, iniectus [-*iaciō*], throw on, cast on, put on. (*Inject*)

iniectus, see iniciō

in-imīcus, -a, -um, adj. [-*amicus*], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, ENEMY. (*Inimical*) Cf. hostis

in-īquus, -a, -um, adj. [-*aequus*], unequal; uneven, unfavorable

initium, initī, n. [*ineō*], beginning. (*Initial*)

iniūria, -ae, f. [*in-iūs*], wrong, harm, insult, INJURY

inopia, -ae, f., want, poverty, lack, need

in-rideō, inridēre, inrisī, inrisus, laugh at, mock, ridicule

īnsānia, -ae, *f.*, INSANITY, madness  
 īn-sideō, īsidēre, īsēdī, īsessūrus  
 [-*sedeō*], sit on  
 īnsolēns, -entis, *adj.*, arrogant, overbearing. (*Insolent*)  
 īn-spiciō, īspicere, īspexī, īspectus [-*speciō*, look], look into, look on, INSPECT  
 īn-stituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitutus [-*statuō*, set up], set up, fix, arrange. (*Institute*)  
 īstrūctus, *see* īstruō  
 īn-struō, īstruere, īstrūxī, īstrūctus, build in, form; INSTRUCT, train; prepare, provide  
 īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island. (*Peninsula*)  
 intel-legō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus [*inter-legō*], (choose between), learn, know, perceive, understand. (*Intellect.*) Cf. cognoscō  
 īn-tendō, intendere, intendī, intentus, (stretch out towards), bend, aim. (*Intend*)  
 inter, *prep.* with *acc.*, between, among, amid, during, while; inter sē, among themselves, together  
 īter-clūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus [-*claudō*], shut off, cut off  
 īter-dum, *adv.*, sometimes  
 īter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile  
 interfectus, *see* interficiō  
 īter-ficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus [-*faciō*], kill, slay, put to death. Cf. necō and occidō  
 īter-iciō, intericere, interiēcī, interiectus [-*iaciō*], place between; *pass.*, intervene. (*Interjection*)

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime. (*Interim*)  
 interior, -ius, *adj.*, comp., inner, INTERIOR  
 īter-mittō, ītermittere, ītermīsī, ītermīssus, (send between), leave off; *pass.*, intervene, pass. (*Intermittent*)  
 īter-rogō, īterrogāre, īterrogāvī, īterrogātus, ask, question. (*Interrogate*)  
 īter-rumpō, īterrumpere, īterrūpī, īterruptus, break down. (*Interrupt*)  
 īter-sum, īteresse, īterfuī, īterfutūrus, be between  
 ītervāllum, -ī, *n.*, space, INTERVAL  
 ītrō, intrāre, intrāvī, intrātus, go into, ENTER  
 ītroitus, -ūs, *m.* [*introeō*, go in], ENTRANCE  
 ītrō-mittō, ītrōmittere, ītrōmīsī, ītrōmissus, (send in), let in, ADMIT  
 īn-vādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus, come upon, attack, INVADE, take possession of  
 īn-veniō, īvenīre, invēnī, inventus, come upon, find, discover. (*Invent.*) Cf. reperiō  
 īn-vicem, *adv.*, in turn, mutually  
 īn-videō, īvidēre, īvidī, īvisūrus (look toward), be jealous of, ENVY  
 īvitō, īvitāre, īvitāvī, īvitātus, INVITE  
 Iolē, -ēs, *f.*, IOLE, daughter of Eurytus  
 īphiclēs, -is, *m.*, IPHICLES, brother of Hercules

*ipse*, -a, -um, *dem. adj. and pron.*, self, very

*īra*, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, IRE

*is*, ea, id, *dem. adj. and pron.*, that; *as pers. pron.*, he, she, it  
*iste*, -a, -ūd, *dem. adj. and pron.*

[*is*], that (of yours)

*ita*, *adv.*, so, thus. Cf. *sic* and *tam*

*Italia*, -ae, *f.*, ITALY

*ita-que*, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

Cf. *igitur*

*item*, *adv.* [*ita*], also, likewise

*iter*, *itineris*, *n.* [*eō*, go], way, journey, march, line of march. (*Itinerary*)

*iterum*, *adv.*, a second time, again. (*Iteration*)

*iubeō*, *iubēre*, *iussī*, *iussus*, bid, order, command. Cf. *imperō*

*iugum*, -ī, *n.* [*iungō*], yoke; ridge

*Iūlia*, -ae, *f.*, JULIA, a Roman name

*iunctus*, see *iungō*

*iungō*, *iungere*, *iūnxī*, *iunctus*, unite, JOIN, span, cross. (*Junction*)

*Iūnius*, *Iūni*, *m.*, JUNIUS, a Roman name

*Iūnō*, -ōnis, *f.*, JUNO, queen of the gods and wife of Jupiter

*Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, *m.*, JUPITER, the supreme deity of the Romans

*Iūra*, -ae, *m.*, JURA, a chain of mountains in Gaul

*iūrō*, *iūrāre*, *iūrāvī*, *iūrātūrus* [*iūs*], swear, take an oath. (*Abjure*)

*iūs*, *iūris*, *n.*, right, JUSTICE

*iussū*, *adv.* [*iubeō*], by order, by command of

*iussum*, -ī, *n.* [*iubeō*], order, command. Cf. *imperātum*

*iussus*, see *iubeō*

*iūstus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*iūs*], JUST

*iuenis*, -e, *adj.*, young; as noun, young man, youth. (*Juvenile*). Cf. *ādulēscēns*

*iuvō*, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtus*, help, aid

L., abbreviation for Lūcius

*Labiēnus*, -ī, *m.*, LABIENUS, a lieutenant in Cæsar's army

*labor*, -ōris, *m.* [*labōrō*], LABOR, toil. Cf. *opus* and *opera*

*labōrō*, *labōrāre*, *labōrāvī*, *labōrātūrus* [*labor*], work, toil; suffer. (*Elaborate*)

*lac*, *lactis*, *n.*, milk. (*Lacteal*)

*Lacaena*, -ae, *f.*, a Laconian woman, a woman of Sparta

*lacrima*, -ae, *f.*, tear. (*Lachrymal*)

*lacus*, -ūs, *m.*, LAKE, pool

*laetitia*, -ae, *f.* [*laetus*], joy, gladness

*laetus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, glad, merry, pleasant, joyful

*Laevinus*, -ī, *m.*, LÆVINUS, a Roman consul

*lambō*, *lambere*, —, —, lick, lap

*lamenta*, -ōrum, *n. plur.* [*lāmentor*], wailing, LAMENTS, LAMENTATION

*lāmentor*, *lāmentārī*, *lāmentātūs* sum [*lamenta*], wail, LAMENT

*lapis*, -idis, *m.*, stone, milestone. (*Lapidary*)

*lateō*, *latēre*, *latuī*, —, lurk, lie hid, be concealed. (*Latent*)

*Latinus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, LATIN; masc. plur. as noun, the LATINS

*lātitūdō*, -inis, *f.* [*lātus*], breadth, width. (*Latitude*)

*latrō*, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand

*lātus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, broad, wide

- laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, praise, LAUD. (*Laudatory*)
- lēctus, *see* legō
- lēgatiō, -ōnis, f. [*lēgātus*], embassy, LEGATION
- lēgātus, -ī, m. [*lēgatiō*], ambassador, deputy, lieutenant, LEGATUS. (*Legate*)
- legiō, -ōnis, f. [*legō*], (a gathering), LEGION
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, gather; se-LECT; read
- Lemannus, -ī, m., the Lake of Geneva
- lēnis, -e, adj.: [*lēniter*], soft, smooth, gentle, mild. (*Lenient*)
- lēniter, adv. [*lēnis*], gently, moderately
- Lentulus, -ī, m., LENTULUS, a Roman name
- Leōnidās, -ae, m., LEONIDAS, commander of the Greeks at Thermopylae
- lēx, lēgis, f., law. (*Legal*)
- libenter, adv., willingly, gladly
- liber, -brī, m., book. (*Library*)
- liber, -era, -erum, adj., free. (*Liberal*)
- liberī, -ōrum, m. plur. [*liber*], children
- lēberō, liberāre, liberāvī, liberātus [*liber*], set free, free, LIBERATE; with abl. of separation
- lēbērtās, -ātis, f. [*liber*], freedom, LIBERTY
- Lichās, -ae, m., LICHAS, an attendant of Hercules
- ligneus, -a, -um, adj., wooden
- lignum, -ī, n., wood; stake, stick
- Lingonēs, -um, m. plur., the LINGONES, a tribe in Gaul
- lingua, -ae, f., tongue, LANGUAGE
- Linus, -ī, m., LINUS, teacher of Hercules in music
- littera, -ae, f., a LETTER (of the alphabet); plur., LETTER, epistle. (*Literature*)
- lītus, -oris, n., shore. (*Littoral*)
- locō, locāre, locāvī, locātus [*locus*], place, put, set. (*Locate*)
- locus, -ī, m. (plur. locī, m., and loca, n.), place, position, situation; chance, opportunity. (*Local*)
- locūtus, *see* loquor
- longē, adv. [*longus*], far, far off, by far
- longinquo, -a, -um, adj. [*longus*], distant, remote, far away
- longitūdō, -inis, f., length. (*Longitude*)
- longus, -a, -um, adj., long, tedious
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk, say. (*Elocution, Eloquent*)
- Lūcānī, -ōrum, m. plur., the LUCAINIANS, a people of southern Italy
- lūdus, -ī, m., game, sport
- lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxi, —, mourn, mourn for
- lūmen, -inis, n. [*lūx*], light. (*Luminous*)
- lupa, -ae, f., she-wolf
- lūx, lūcis, f., light. (*Lucid*)
- M., abbreviation for Mārcus
- māchinātiō, -ōnis, f., contrivance, MACHINE, engine
- magicus, -a, -um, adj., MAGIC
- magis, adv. [*mag(nus)*], more, rather

magister, -trī, *m.* [*magis*], MASTER, teacher. (*Magistrate*)

magnificus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*magnus-faciō*], splendid, MAGNIFICENT

magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*magnus*], greatness, size, MAGNITUDE

magnopere, *adv.* [*abl. of magnum opus*], greatly, exceedingly, heartily

magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great, large; loud. (*Magnify*)

maior, -ius, *adj.*, comp. of magnus. (*Major*)

male, *adv.* [*malus*], badly, ill. (*Malevolent*)

mālō, mālle, māluī, — [ *magis-volō* ], be more willing, prefer, would rather

malum, -ī, *n.* [*malus*], bad thing, evil

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, evil

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātus [*manus-dō*], (put in hand), charge, COMMAND, intrust. ( *Mandate*)

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, stay, REMAIN, wait. (*Permanent*)

manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand; grappling hook; force, band. (*Manual*)

Mārcius, Mārcī, *m.*, MARCIUS, a Roman name

Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, MARCUS, a Roman first name

mare, -is, *n.*, sea. (*Marine*)

maritus, -ī, *m.*, husband. (*Marital*)

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, MARS, the god of war. (*Martial*)

māter, -trīs, *f.*, mother. (*Maternal*)

mātrimōnium, mātrimōnī, *n.* [*māter*], MATRIMONY, marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry

mātrōna, -ae, *f.* [*māter*], MATRON, woman

mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātus, hasten. (*Mature*.) Cf. properō and contendō

maximē, *adv.* [*maximus*], most, especially, greatly. Cf. praecipuē

maximus, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl. of magnus. (*Maximum*)

mē, see ego

medicus, -ī, *m.*, doctor, physician. (*Medicine*)

medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, middle of; in mediō, between (them); in medium, to the center. (*Medium*)

Medūsa, -ae, *f.*, MEDUSA, one of the Gorgons, slain by Perseus

melior, -ius, *adj.*, comp. of bonus, better. (*Ameliorate*)

membrum, -ī, *n.*, limb. (*Member*)

memoria, -ae, *f.* [*memorō*], MEMORY memorō, memorāre, memorāvī, memorātus [*memoria*], mention, relate, state. (*Commemorate*)

mēns, mentis, *f.*, mind. Cf. animus

mēnsa, -ae, *f.*, table

mēnsis, -is, *m.*, month

mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader, MERCHANT

Mercurius, Mercurī, *m.*, MERCURY, the messenger of the gods

mergō, mergere, mersī, mersus, sink. (*Merge*)

meritum, -ī, *n.*, thing deserved, deserts, MERIT

mersus, see mergō

meus, -a, -um, possess. *adj.* and pron., my, mine

- migrō, migrāre, migrāvī, migrātūrus, depart. (*Migrate*)
- mihi, see ego
- miles, -itis, *m.*, soldier. (*Military*)
- militāris, -e, *adj.* [*miles*], MILITARY
- mille, *adj.*, indecl. in sing.; in plur., mīlia, -ium, thousand; also (*superply passuum*), MILES
- Minerva, -ae, *f.*, MINERVA, the goddess of wisdom
- minimē, *adv.* [*minimus*], least, not at all, by no means
- minimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl. of parvus, least, very little. (*Minimum*)
- minor, -us, *adj.*, comp. of parvus, smaller, lesser. (*Minor, Minus*)
- minus, *adv.* [*minor*], less
- mīrāculum, -ī, *n.* [*mīror*], wonder, marvel, MIRACLE
- mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum [*mīrus*], wonder, wonder at, ADMIRE
- mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*mīror*], wonderful, extraordinary
- miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched, unhappy, MISERABLE
- miserē, *adv.* [*miser*], wretchedly, MISERABLY
- misericordia, -ae, *f.*, pity, compassion
- mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, send. (*Mission*)
- modo, *adv.* [*modus*], only; nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also
- modus, -ī, *m.*, way, manner. (*Mood*)
- moenia, -ium, *n. plur.* [*mūniō*], walls (of a city). Cf. mūrus
- moneō, monēre, monūī, monitus, remind, advise, warn. (*Monitor*)
- mōns, montis, *m.*, MOUNTAIN, hill. Cf. collis
- mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus, show, point out. (*Demonstrate*)
- mōnstrum, -ī, *n.*, MONSTER
- mora, -ae, *f.* [*moror*], delay
- moriō, morī, mortuus sum (*fut. part.* moritūrus) [*mors*], die. (*Mortuary*)
- moror, morārī, morātus sum [*mora*], retard, hinder, delay. (*Mortarium*)
- mors, mortis, *f.* [*morior*], death. (*Mortal.*) Cf. nex
- mōrtuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*morior*], dead
- mōs, mōris, *m.*, manner, habit, custom. (*Moral*)
- moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, MOVE
- mox, *adv.*, soon, presently
- Mūcius, Mūcī, *m.*, MUCIUS, a Roman name
- mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman. Cf. fēmina
- multitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*multus*], great number, MULTITUDE, quantity
- multō, *adv.* [*multus*], by much, much
- multum, *adv.* [*multus*], much
- multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; plur., many. (*Multiply*)
- mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (*mūnīi*), mūnītus [*moenia*], fortify, defend
- mūnītiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*mūnīō*], fortification, defense. (*Munitions*)
- mūnus, -eris, *n.*, duty, office
- mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall. (*Mural, Immure.*) Cf. moenia
- mūs, mūris, *m. and f.*, mouse
- Mūs, Mūris, *m.*, MUS, a Roman surname

- mūsica, -ae, f., MUSIC  
 mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātus,  
 change, alter. (*Mutation*)
- nam, *conj.*, for. *Cf.* enim  
 nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī, nārrātus,  
 tell, relate, NARRATE  
 nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born.  
 (*Native*)
- Nāsīca, -ae, m., NASICA, a Roman  
 surname
- nātiō, -ōnis, f., tribe, people, NATION  
 natō, natāre, natāvī, natātūrus [*frequentative of nō*], swim, float.  
 (*Natatorial*)
- nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor], (birth),  
 NATURE, character
- nātus, see nāscor
- nauta, -ae, m. [*for nāvita; nāvis*],  
 sailor. (*Nautical*)
- nāvigium, nāvigī, n. [nāvigō], boat  
 nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigā-  
 tus [nāvis-agō], sail, cruise, NAVI-  
 GATE
- nāvis, -is, f. (*acc.* -em, -im; *abl.* -ī,  
 -e), ship. (*Naval*)
- ne, interrog. adv., enclitic, sign of  
 a question
- nē, *conj.*, that not, that; lest; nē  
 . . . quidem, not even
- nec, see neque
- necessē, neut. adj., indecl., unavoidable,  
 NECESSARY
- necessitās, -ātis, f. [necessē], need,  
 NECESSITY
- necō, necāre, necāvī, necātus [nex],  
 kill, slay. *Cf.* interficiō and occidō
- negōtium, negōtī, n., business, labor.  
 (*Negotiate*)
- nēmō, -inī (*dat.*; *no gen. or abl.*), m.  
 and f. [nē-homō], no one, nobody,  
 no man
- Neptūnus, -ī, m., NEPTUNE, the god  
 of the sea
- ne-que or nec, *conj.*, and not, nor;  
 neque . . . neque, neither . . .  
 nor
- Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur., the NERVI,  
 a tribe of northeastern Gaul
- Nessus, -ī, m., NESSUS, a centaur  
 slain by Hercules
- neuter, -tra, -trum, *adj.* and *pron.*  
 [nē-uter], neither (of two). (*Neu-  
 tral*)
- nex, necis, f. [necō], death, slaughter,  
 murder. *Cf.* mors
- nihil, n., indecl., nothing; nihil cibī,  
 no food. (*Nihilist*)
- ni-si, *conj.*, if not, unless, except
- nix, nivis, f., snow
- nō, nāre, nāvī, —, swim
- nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōscō, know], well  
 known, celebrated; of high birth;  
 NOBLE
- nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [nōbilis], rank,  
 NOBILITY
- noceō, nocēre, nocūi, nocitūrus, do  
 harm to, hurt, injure; *with dat.*  
 (*Noxious*)
- noctū, adv. [nox], by night
- nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — [nē-volō], be  
 unwilling, will not, not wish
- nōmen, -inis, n. [nōscō, know], (that  
 by which a thing is known), name.  
 (*Nominal*)
- nōminō, nōmināre, nōmināvī, nōmi-  
 nātus [nōmen], name, call. (*Nomi-  
 nate*)

nōn, *adv.* [*nē-ūnum*], not; nōn iam, no longer; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also. (*Nonentity.*) Cf. haud  
 nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet  
 nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* and *pron.*, (not none), some, several  
 nōs, *see* ego  
 noster, -tra, -trum, possess. *adj.* and *pron.* [*nōs*], our, ours; nostri, our men. (*Nostrum*)  
 novem, *adj.*, *indecl.*, nine  
 novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new. (*Novelty*)  
 nox, noctis, *f.*, night. (*Nocturnal*)  
 nūbēs, -is, *f.*, cloud  
 nūllus, -a, -um, *adj.* and *pron.* [*nē-ūllus*], no, none, no one. (*Nullity*)  
 num, *interrog. adv.*, in an *indir. question*, whether  
 Numa Pompilius, Numae Pompiliī, *m.*, NUMA POMPILIUS, the second king of Rome  
 numerus, -ī, *m.*, NUMBER. (*Numerical*)  
 numquam, *adv.* [*nē-umquam*], never  
 nunc, *adv.*, now. (*Quidnunc.*) Cf. iam  
 nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātus [*nūntius*], report, ANNOUNCE. (*Annunciation*)  
 nūntius, nūntiī, *m.* [*nūntiō*], bearer of news, messenger. (*Nuncio*)  
 nūper, *adv.* [*for noviper; novus*], recently, lately  
 nymphā, -ae, *f.*, NYMPH  
 ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of  
 ob-, *prefix*, against, opposite

ob-iciō, obicere, obiēcī, obiectus [-iaciō], (throw in the way), throw between, interpose. (*Object*)  
 obiectus, *see* obiciō  
 oblātus, *see* offerō  
 obnoxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable to, exposed to. (*Obnoxious*)  
 obscūrō, obscūrāre, obscūrāvī, obscūrātus, darken, conceal. (*Obscure*)  
 obses, -idis, *m. and f.* [*ob-sedeō*], (one who sits or remains as a pledge), hostage  
 ob-sideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessus [-sedeō], (sit down against), besiege, beset, blockade. (*Obsess.*) Cf. oppugnō  
 obsolētus, -a, -um, *adj.*, old. (*Obsolete*)  
 ob-struō, obstruere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus, (build up against), block up, bar, barricade, OBSTRUCT  
 ob-stupefaciō, obstupefacere, obstupefēcī, obstupefactus, astonish, amaze, astound  
 ob-tineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus [-teneō], (hold against), possess, occupy, hold. (*Obtain*)  
 occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, chance, opportunity. (*Occasion.*) Cf. potestās  
 occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting (of the sun)  
 oc-cidō, occidēre, occidī, occisus [*ob-caedō*], cut down, slay, kill. Cf. interficiō and necō  
 occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātus [*ob-capiō*], take possession of, seize; OCCUPY  
 oc-currō, occurrere, occurrī, occursūrus [*ob-*], run toward; meet, fall in with. (*Occur*)

ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, OCEAN  
 Ocelum, -ī, *n.*, OCELUM, a town in  
     Cisalpine Gaul  
 octingentī, -ae, -a, *adj.* [*octō-centum*],  
     eight hundred  
 octō, *adj.*, *indecl.*, eight. (*Octave*)  
 octōgintā, *adj.*, *indecl.*, eighty  
 oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye. (*Ocular*)  
 odium, odi, *n.*, hatred, enmity.  
     (*Odium*)  
 Oeneus, -ī, *m.*, OENEUS, father of  
     Deianira  
 Oeta, -ae, *f.*, ΟETA, a mountain in  
     Greece  
 of-fendō, offendere, offendī, offēnsus  
     [*ob-*], strike against; come on,  
     find. (*Offend*)  
 of-ferō, offerre, obtuli, oblātus [*ob-*],  
     OFFER, present  
 officina, -ae, *f.*, workshop, laboratory  
 officium, officī, *n.*, duty, task. (*Office*)  
 ōlim, *adv.* [*olle, old form of ille*], (at  
     that time); formerly, once; once  
     upon a time. Cf. aliquandō  
 Olympus, -ī, *m.*, OLYMPUS, a moun-  
     tain in Greece, the abode of the  
     gods  
 o-mittō, omittere, omīsī, omissus  
     [*ob-*], let go by, disregard, neglect,  
     OMIT  
 omnīnō, *adv.* [*omnis*], wholly, alto-  
     gether, entirely  
 omnis, -e, *adj.*, whole, all, every.  
     (*Omnipresent*.) Cf. cūnctus, tōtus,  
     and ūniversus  
 opera, -ae, *f.* [*opus*], labor, care, work.  
     (*Opera*.) Cf. labor and opus  
 oppidānus, -ī, *m.* [*oppidum*], townsman  
 oppidum, -ī, *n.*, town, stronghold

op-primō, opprimere, oppressī, op-  
     pressus [*ob-premō*, press], over-  
     come, crush, OPPRESS  
 op-pugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī,  
     oppugnātus [*ob-*], attack, assault,  
     besiege. Cf. expugnō and obsideō  
     (ops), opis, *f.*, aid, help. Cf. auxilium  
     optimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, superl. of  
     bonus, best. (*Optimist*)  
 opus, -eris, *n.*, work, labor. (*Oper-  
     ate*.) Cf. labor  
 ōrāculum, -ī, *n.* [*ōrō*], ORACLE  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [*ōrō*], speech, plea;  
     ORATION  
 orbis, -is, *m.*, circle, ORB, world;  
     orbis terrārum, earth, world. (*Or-  
     bit*)  
 orbō, orbāre, orbāvī, orbātus, deprive,  
     bereave  
 ōrdinō, ōrdināre, ōrdināvī, ōrdinātus  
     [*ōrdō*], plan, arrange. (*Coördi-  
     nate, Ordain*)  
 ōrdō, -inis, *m.*, rank, ORDER; ex  
     ōrdine, in succession, one after  
     another; extrā ōrdinem, out of  
     the ranks. (*Extraordinary*)  
 Orgetorīx, -īgis, *m.*, ORGETORIX, a  
     Helvetian chief  
 orior, orīrī, ortus sum, arise, spring,  
     descend (from); ortā lūce, at day-  
     break  
 ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī, ōrnātus, adORN,  
     ORNAMENT, deck  
 ōrō, ōrāre, ōrāvī, ōrātus, (speak), beg,  
     pray, entreat, plead. (*Oratory*)  
 ortus, see orior  
 os-tendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostend-  
     tus [*ob(s)-*], stretch out; show,  
     display. (*Ostensible*)

- ōstium, ōstī, *n.*, mouth  
ovis, -is, *f.*, sheep
- P., abbreviation for Pūblius
- pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātus, subdue, PACify
- paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost
- palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling school, gymnasium
- Palātinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, PALATINE, of the PALATINE (one of the hills of Rome)
- pālus, -ī, *m.*, stake, PALE
- palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh
- parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, PARENT
- pārēō, pārēre, pārūi, —, (come forth, appear), be obedient to, obey; *with dat.*
- pariter, *adv.*, equally; pariter ac, equally with, as well as.
- parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus, make ready, PREPARE for, PREPARE
- pars, partis, *f.*, PART, share; direction, side. (*Partial*)
- parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough
- parvulus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*diminutive of parvus*], very small, slight, insignificant
- parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little
- passus, see patior
- passus, -ūs, *m.* [*pateō*], (a stretching out of the feet in walking), step, PACE; mille passuum, MILE
- pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, (feeder), shepherd. (*Pastor*)
- pate-faciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus [*pateō*], (make open), open, throw open
- pateō, patēre, patuī, —, lie open, be open, be exposed; extend. (*Patent*)
- pater, -tris, *m.*, father. (*Paternal*)
- patior, patī, passus sum, bear, suffer, allow, permit. (*Patient, Passive*)
- patria, -ae, *f.* [*pater*], native land, country. (*Patriotism*)
- patrimōnium, patrimōni, *n.* [*pater*], property. (*Patrimony*)
- paucus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*generally plur.*), few, little. (*Paucity*)
- paulō, *adv.*, by a little, little
- paululum, *adv.* [*diminutive of paulum*], a very little, somewhat
- paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat
- pauper, pauperis, *adj.*, POOR. (*Pauper*)
- paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [*pauper*], want, POVERTY
- pavor, -ōris, *m.*, fear, dread, alarm. Cf. terror and timor
- pāx, pācis, *f.*, PEACE. (*Pacify*)
- pectus, -oris, *n.*, breast. (*Pectoral*)
- pecūnia, -ae, *f.* [*pecus*], money. (*Pecuniary*)
- pecus, -oris, *n.*, cattle, flock
- pedes, -itis, *m.* [*pēs*], foot soldier
- peditātus, -ūs, *m.* [*pedes*], infantry
- peior, -ius, *adj.*, comp. of malus, worse
- pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, beat, drive, defeat. (*Expel, Pulse*)
- per, *prep. with acc.*; through, by, by means of, on account of. (*Percentage*)
- peragrō, peragrāre, peragrāvī, peragrātus [*per agrum*], wander through, pass over, traverse. Cf. perlūstrō

per-cipiō, percipere, percēpī, perceptus [-capiō], PERCEIVE, feel. (*Perception.*) Cf. sentiō

percussus, see percutiō

per-cutīō, percutere, percussī, percussus [-quatiō, strike], hit, strike, run through. (*Percussion*)

per-dō, perdere, perdidī, perditus [-dō, put], lose. (*Perdition.*) Cf. āmittō

per-dūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus, lead through, CONDUCT, bring; construct

per-ficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus [-faciō], accomplish; PERFECT

perfrāctus, see perfringō

per-fringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus [-frangō, break], break to pieces, shatter, completely wreck  
pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctūrus [*per-regō*], go on, proceed, hasten.  
Cf. prōcēdō and prōgredior

perīculum, -ī, n. [*exprior*], trial, attempt; risk, danger, PERIL

per-lūstrō, perlūstrāre, perlūstrāvī, perlūstrātus, wander through, view all over, examine, survey.  
Cf. peragrō

per-maneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsūrus, REMAIN

per-mittō, permittere, permisi, permisus, allow, grant, suffer, PERMIT; yield, give up; with dat. of person. (*Permission*)

per-moveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtus, excite

per-scrībō, perscrībere, perscrīpsī, perscriptus, write at length, DESCRIBE fully

Persēs, -ae, m., a PERSIAN

Perseus, -ī, m., PERSEUS, a hero of Greek mythology

perspectus, see perspiciō

per-spiciō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus [-speciō, look], (see through), see clearly, ascertain. (*Perspective*)

per-suādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsus, PERSUADE; with dat. of person. (*Persuasion*)

per-terreō, perterrēre, perterrui, perterritus, thoroughly frighten, alarm

pertinācia, -ae, f., perseverance; obstinacy, PERTINACITY

per-tineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, [-teneō], extend, PERTAIN TO

pertrāctus, see pertrahō

per-trahō, pertrahere, pertrāxī, pertrāctus, (drag through), drag, drag along

per-turbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātus, DISTURB, arouse. (*Perturbation*)

per-veniō, pervenire, pervēnī, per-ventūrus, come up, arrive, reach  
pēs, pedis, m., foot; pedem referre, retreat, fall back. (*Pedal*)

pessimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of malus, worst. (*Pessimist*)

petō, petere, petivī (petiī), petitus, seek, demand, ask for, ask, beg; attack. (*Petition.*) Cf. postulō, quaerō, and rogō

pilum, -ī, n., javelin. (*Pile-driver*)

pinguis, -e, adj., fat, heavy

pīrāta, -ae, m., PIRATE

piscātor, -ōris, m., fisherman. (*Piscatorial*)

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitūrus,  
PLEASE; with dat. (*Placid*)

plānitiēs, -ēi, f., (a flatness), level  
ground, PLAIN

plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people,  
PLEBEIANS

plōrō, plōrāre, plōrāvī, plōrātus, be-  
wail, lament, grieve. (*Deplore*)

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of  
multus, most, very many; plūri-  
mum posse, be very powerful,  
have most influence

plūs, plūris, adj., comp. of multus,  
more; plur., more, many. (*Plural*)

poena, -ae, f. [*puniō*], fine, punish-  
ment; poenās dare, suffer punish-  
ment. (*Penalty, Subpœna*)

Poenus, -i, m., a Carthaginian

poēta, -ae, m., POET

polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum,  
promise; rarely as pass., be  
promised

Polydectēs, -is, m., POLYDECTES, a  
king of Seriphos

Polyphēmus, -i, m., POLYPHEMUS, a  
Cyclops

pōmum, -i, n., apple. (*Pomology*)

pondus, -eris, n., weight, bulk.  
(*Ponderous*)

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, put,  
place, set, set up, pitch (camp);  
pass., lie. (*Position, Postpone*)

pōns, pontis, m., bridge. (*Pontoon*)

populor, populāri, populātus sum,  
lay waste, devastate, plunder, pil-  
lage. (*Depopulate*)

populus, -i, m., PEOPLE. (*Populous*)

Porsena, -ae, m., PORSENA, a king  
of Clusium, in Etruria

porta, -ae, f., gate, door. (*Portal*)

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus,  
carry, bring. (*Import.*) Cf. ferō

portus, -ūs, m., harbor, PORT  
poscō, poscere, poposci, —, de-  
mand. Cf. postulō

positus, see pōnō

possum, posse, potuī, —, be able,  
can; plūrimum posse, be very  
powerful, have most influence.  
(*Possible*)

post, prep. with acc., after, behind;  
adv., afterwards. (*Postscript*)

post-eā, adv., afterwards  
(*posterus*), -a, -um, adj. [*post*], fol-  
lowing, next. (*Postern, Posterity*)

post-quam, conj., after  
postrīdiē, adv. [*posterō diē*], on the  
next day

postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postu-  
lātus, ask, request, demand. (*Pos-  
tulate*) Cf. petō, quaerō, and  
rogō

potestās, -ātis, f. [*possum*], power,  
authority; opportunity, permission  
prae-, prefix, before, very

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened  
at the end, pointed

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitus  
[*prae-habēō*], hold forth, offer, fur-  
nish; cause, render

praecipuē, adv. [*praecipius*], chiefly,  
especially, particularly. Cf. maximē  
praecipiuus, -a, -um, adj., particular;  
of high rank

prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj., very splen-  
did, glorious

praeda, -ae, f. [*praedor*], booty, spoil,  
PREY. (*Predatory*)

praedor, praedārī, praedātus sum  
[*praeda*], rob, plunder. (*Depredation*)

prae-ficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus [-*faciō*], put in command.  
(*Prefect*)

prae-mittō, praemittere, praemisi,  
praemissus, send ahead

praemium, praemī, *n.*, reward, prize.  
(*Premium*)

Praeneste, -is, *n. and f.*, PRÆNESTE,  
a town of Italy

praesēns, -entis, *adj.*, instant, immediate, PRESENT

praeses, -idis, *m. and f.* [*prae-sedeō*],  
(one who sits before), protector, guardian

praesidium, praesidiū, *n.* [*praesideō*, sit before], defense, help, protection, support, guard. Cf. auxiliū and subsidium

prae-stō, praestāre, praestiti, praestitus, stand out, surpass, be superior to, be preferable; perform, furnish. Cf. superō and vincō

prae-sum, praeesse, praefui, praefutūrus, be before, be at the head of, command ; with dat.

praeter-eā, *adv.*, besides, moreover  
praeter-eō, praeterire, praeteriū, praeteritus, go by, pass by. (*Pret-erit*)

prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsus, grasp, seize. (*Comprehend*)

pretiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*preium*], costly, valuable, PRECIOUS

pretium, pretī, *n.*, PRICE, value; reward, ransom. (*Appreciate*)

prex, precis, *f.*, PRAYER, entreaty.  
(*Imprecate*)

prīmō, *adv.* [*primus*], at first, first, in the first place

prīmū, *adv.* [*primus*], first, at first

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first, foremost. (*Prime, Primal*)

prīnceps, -cipis, *m.* [*primus-capiō*], (taking the first place), chief, leader. (*Prince, Principal*) Cf. dux

Prīscus, -ī, *m.*, Tarquinius PRISCUS, one of the seven kings of Rome

prius, *adv.*, before, sooner, previously  
prius-quam, *conj.*, sooner than, before

privātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*privō*], PRIVATE

privō, privāre, privāvī, privātus, deprive; with abl.

prō, *prep.* with abl., before, in behalf of, for, instead of; considering; in accordance with

probō, probāre, probāvī, probātus, PROVE, APPROVE

prō-cēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessūs, come forward, go forward, advance, PROCEED. Cf. prōgrediōr and pergō

procul, *adv.*, far, afar off

prō-dūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus, lead forth, bring forth. (*Produce*)

proelium, proelī, *n.*, battle, combat, skirmish. Cf. pugna

profectus, see proficīscor

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out, march, go. Cf. exeō and ēgredior

prō-gredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum [-*gradior*, go], go forward, advance, PROGRESS. Cf. prōcēdō  
 prōgressus, see prōgredior  
 pro-hibēō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus [-*habeō*], prevent, keep from, PROHIBIT  
 prō-iciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectus [-*iaciō*], throw, cast. (*Projectile*)  
 prō-mittō, prōmittere, prōmisi, prōmissus, put forth, PROMISE  
 prōmō, prōmōre, prōmpsī, prōmptus [prō-emō], take out, bring forth. (*Prompt*)  
 prō-moveō, prōmovēre, prōmōvī, prōmōtus, MOVE forward, advance. (*Promote*)  
 prōmunturium, prōmunturī, n., PROMONTORY  
 prope, prep. with acc., near, near to; adv., close at hand, nearly, almost  
 properō, properāre, properāvī, prōperātūrus, hasten. Cf. mātūrō and contendō  
 propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope], near. (*Propinquity*)  
 propior, -ius, adj., comp. [prope], nearer, close  
 proprius, adv. [*propior*], nearer  
 prō-pōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, put before, set forth; make known, declare, PROPOSE. (*Proposition*)  
 propter, prep. with acc., on account of  
 prō-sternō, prōsternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, strike down, knock down

prōstrātus, -a, -um, adj. [prōsternō], thrown down, PROSTRATE  
 prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfūl, prōfutūrus, be before, be useful to, benefit, avail; with dat.  
 prōvectus, see prōvehō  
 prō-vehō, prōvehēre, prōvexī, prōvectus, carry forward, carry off; pass., advance, proceed  
 prōvincia, -ae, f., PROVINCE  
 prō-vocō, prōvocāre, prōvocāvī, prōvocātus, call forth, challenge, invite. (*Provoke*)  
 proximus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of propior, nearest, next. (*Proximity*)  
 pūblicē, adv., in the name of the state, PUBLICLY  
 Pūblicola, -ae, m., PUBLICOLA, a Roman surname  
 puella, -ae, f. [diminutive of *puer*], girl, maiden  
 puer, -erī, m., boy, child. (*Puerile*)  
 pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō], battle, contest, fight. Cf. proelium. (*Pugnacious*)  
 pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātūrus [pugna], fight. Cf. dīmicō  
 pulcher, -chra, -chrūm, adj., beautiful, fair, pretty. (*Pulchritude*)  
 pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī (pūniī), pūnītus [poena], PUNISH  
 putō, putāre, putāvī, putātus, think, believe, reckon. (*Compute*.) Cf. arbitrō and exīstimō  
 Pyrrhus, -ī, m., PYRRHUS, a king of Epirus  
 Pȳthia, -ae, f., the PYTHIA, the inspired prophetess of Apollo at Delphi

quā, *adv.* [*qui*], where  
 quadrāgintā, *adj.*, *indecl.*, forty  
 quaerō, quaerere, quaeſīvī (*quaesiī*),  
 quaeſitus, seek, ask, inquire.  
*Cf. petō and rogō*  
 quālis, -e, *interrog. and rel. adj.*,  
 what sort of. (*Quality*)  
 quam, *adv.* [*qui*], than, how  
 quam-quam, *conj.*, though, although  
 quandō, *adv.*, at any time  
 quantus, -a, -um, *interrog. and rel. adj.* [*quam*], how great, how much;  
 as great as, as much as. (*Quantity*)  
 quā-rē, *adv.*, for which reason,  
 wherefore, therefore  
 quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*quattuor*],  
 fourth. (*Quart*)  
 qua-si, *adv.*, as if  
 quattuor, *adj.*, *indecl.*, four  
 quattuor-decim, *adj.*, *indecl.* [-decem],  
 fourteen  
 -que, *conj.*, enclitic, and. *Cf. et and atque (ac)*  
 qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron. and adj.*,  
 who, which, what, that  
 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (*quid-dam*), *indef. pron. and adj.*, a  
 certain one, certain, a  
 quidem, *adv.* (*never the first word*),  
 indeed, certainly, in truth; nē  
 . . . quidem, not . . . even  
 quiēs, -ētis, *f.*, QUIET, rest, repose  
 quīnquāgintā, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*quīnque*],  
 fifty  
 quīnque, *adj.*, *indecl.*, five. (*Quin-quennial*)  
 quīntus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*quīnque*],  
 fifth

Quirīnālis, -is, *m.*, the QUIRINAL,  
 one of the hills of Rome  
 quis (*qui*), quae, quid (*quod*), *in-terrog. pron. and adj.*, who?  
 which? what?  
 quisquam, —, quidquam, *indef. pron. and adj.* (*no plur.*), any one,  
 anything (at all), any  
 quisque, quaeque, quidque (*quod-que*), *indef. pron. and adj.*, each  
 one, each, every  
 qui-vīs, quaevis, quodvīs (*quidvīs*),  
*indef. pron. and adj.*, any one,  
 anything (you wish), any what-ever  
 quō, *interrog. and rel. adv.* [*quis, qui*], whither, where  
 quod, *conj.* [*qui*], because, in that  
 quoque, *conj.* (*after an emphatic word*), also, too. *Cf. etiam*  
 quot, *interrog. and rel. adj., indecl.*,  
 how many? as many as  
 rapīna, -ae, *f.* [*rapiō*], robbery, plun-  
 dering. (*Rapine*)  
 rapiō, rapere, rapūi, raptus, seize;  
 snatch, drag. (*Rapt, Rapture*)  
 rārō, *adv.*, seldom, RARELY  
 ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a reckoning), reason,  
 method, plan, way, conduct.  
(*Ratio*)  
 re- (red-), *prefix*, back, again  
 re-cēdō, recēdere, recessī, recessūrus,  
 withdraw. (*Recede, Recess*)  
 re-cipiō, recipere, recēpi, receptus  
 [-capiō], take back, RECEIVE, re-  
 cover; sē recipere, withdraw,  
 retreat, betake one's self. (*Re-  
 ception*)

- rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*regō*], straight, DIRECT, right
- re-cumbō, recumbere, recubui, —, lie down, sink down. (*Recumbent*)
- re-currō, recurrere, recurri, —, (run back), retire, return. (*Recur*)
- re-cūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī, recūsātus [*causa*], decline, refuse
- red-dō, reddere, reddidī, redditus [*re(d)-dō*, put], give back, return, RENDER, make
- red-eō, redire, rediī, redditūrus [*re(d)-*], go back, return
- red-imō, redimere, redēmī, redēmptus [*re(d)-emō*], buy back, purchase, REDEEM, ransom. (*Redemption*)
- reditus, -ūs, *m.* [*redeō*], return
- re-dūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductus, lead back, bring back. (*Reduce*)
- re-ferō, referre, rettuli, relātus, bring back; return, repay; report, announce; pedem referre, withdraw, retreat, fall back. (*Refer, Relate*)
- refrāctus, see refringō
- re-fringō, refringere, refrēgī, refrāctus [-*frangō*], break down, break open. (*Refraction*)
- re-fugiō, refugere, refūgī, —, flee for safety, flee, take to flight. (*Refuge*)
- rēgīna, -ae, *f.* [*regō*], (the ruling one), queen
- regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, place, REGION, country
- rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [*rex*], the king's, of the king, royal
- rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātūrus [*rēgnum*], rule, REIGN
- rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [*rex*], kingdom
- regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus [*rex*], rule
- re-iciō, reicere, reiēcī, reiectus [-*iaciō*], throw back, drive back, hurl back. (*Reject*)
- re-lābor, relābī, relāpsus sum, (slide back), flow back, subside. (*Relapse*)
- re-linquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictus, leave behind, leave, abandon. (*Relinquish*)
- reliquo, -a, -um, *adj.*, remaining, rest of; plur. as noun, the rest. (*Relic.*) Cf. cēterī
- re-mandō, remandāre, remandāvī, remandātus, send back word. (*Remand*)
- re-moveō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus, (move back), REMOVE. (*Remote*)
- re-mūneror, remūnerārī, remūnerātus sum, repay, reward. (*Remunerate*)
- Remus, -ī, *m.*, REMUS, brother of Romulus
- rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar
- re-nūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātus, report, ANNOUNCE. (*Renunciation*)
- re-parō, reparāre, reparāvī, reparātus, renew, revive. (*Repair*)
- re-pellō, repellere, repulī, repulsus, drive away, cast down, deprive; REPULSE, REPEL
- repentīnō, *adv.* [*repentīnus*], suddenly, unexpectedly
- repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden
- re-periō, reperīre, repperī, reportus [-*pariō*, bring forth], find, discover, ascertain. Cf. inveniō
- repertor, -ōris, *m.* [*reperiō*], discoverer, inventor

re-pleō, replēre, replēvī, replētus, fill up again. (*Replete*)

re-pōnō, repōnere, reposūi, repositus, put away, store, keep

re-portō, reportāre, reportāvī, reportātus, bring back, win, gain. (*Report.*) Cf. referō

re-poscō, reposcere, —, —, demand back, ask for, claim

repositus, see repōnō

re-prehendō, reprehendere, reprehēdī, reprehēnsus, find fault with, blame. (*Reprehend*)

re-prōmittō, reprōmittere, reprōmisi, reprōmissus, promise in return

repulsus, see repellō

rēs, rēi, f., thing, event, circumstance, affair, scheme, cause, matter, fact; rēs pūblica, REPUBLIC, state, commonwealth; rēs frūmentaria, grain supply, provisions; quā rē, wherefore. (*Real, Rebus*)

re-scindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus, cut off, break down, demolish. (*Rescind*)

rescissus, see rescindō

re-sistō, resistere, restitī, —, RESIST, oppose; with dat.

re-spondeō, respondēre, respondī, responsus, (promise in return), answer, reply, RESPOND

responsum, -ī, n. [*respondeō*], reply, RESPONSE

re-stituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtus [-statuō, set up], replace, restore. (*Restitution*)

re-tineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentus [-teneō], keep back, reserve. (*Retain*)

reversus, see revertō

re-vertō, revertere, reverti, reversus (or, in the present system, commonly revertor, etc., deponent), turn back, return. (*Revert*)

rēx, rēgis, m. [*regō*], (ruler), king. (*Regal*)

Rhēa Silvia, Rhēae Silviae, f., RHEA SILVIA, a priestess of Vesta, and mother of Romulus and Remus

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the RHINE

Rhodanus, -ī, m., the RHONE

rīdeō, rīdere, rīsi, rīsus, smile, laugh at, laugh. (*Deride*)

rīpa, -aē, f., bank. (*Riparian*)

rogō, rogāre, rogāvī, rogātus, ask, question. Cf. quaerō, petō, and postulō

rogus, -ī, m., funeral pile, pyre

Rōma, -ae, f., ROME

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [*Rōma*], ROMAN; masc. as noun, a ROMAN

Rōmulus, -ī, m., ROMULUS, first king of Rome

rūpēs, -is, f., steep rock, cliff. Cf. saxum

rūrsus, adv. [*for reversus*], (turned back), again

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the SABINES, a tribe of Italy

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., SACRED

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [*sacer*], priest, priestess. (*Sacerdotal*)

sacrificium, sacrificī, n. [*sacrificō*], SACRIFICE

sacrificō, sacrificāre, sacrificāvī, sacrificātus [*sacer-faciō*], SACRIFICE

sacrum, -ī, n. [*sacer*], shrine

- saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently  
 saepiō, saepīre, saepsī, saeptus,  
 (hedge in), surround, fortify, guard  
 saevus, -a, -um, *adj.*, cruel, savage,  
 fierce. *Cf. atrōx and trux*  
 sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow. (*Sagittarius*)  
 saltus, -ūs, *m.*, forest, glade, thicket  
 salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, SAFETY, welfare;  
 greeting  
 Samnītēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the SAM-  
 NITES, a tribe of Italy  
 sanguis,-inis, *m.*, blood. (*Sanguinary*)  
 Santonēs, -um, *m. plur.*, the SAN-  
 TONES, a tribe of Gaul  
 satis, *adv.*, enough, sufficiently.  
*(Satisfy)*  
 saxum, -ī, *n.*, stone, rock. *Cf. rūpēs*  
 scelus, -eris, *n.*, wickedness, crime  
 sciō, scīre, scīvī (scii), scītus, know,  
 know how. (*Science*) *Cf. cognōscō*  
 Scipiō, -ōnis, *m.*, SCIPIO, a famous  
 Roman general  
 scribā, -ae, *m. [scribō]*, writer, clerk,  
 secretary. (*Scribe*)  
 scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus,  
 write. (*Scripture*)  
 scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield  
 sē, sēsē, see *sui*  
 sectiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (a cutting), sale of  
 confiscated goods, booty. (*Section*)  
 secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sequor*], fol-  
 lowing, next; SECOND  
 sed, *conj.*, but. *Cf. autem*  
 sēdecim, *adj.*, *indecl.* [*sex-decem*],  
 sixteen  
 sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus [*sēdēs*],  
 sit. (*Sedentary*)  
 sēdēs, -is, *f. [sedeō]*, seat, dwelling,  
 perch. (*See of a bishop*)  
 sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, discord, revolt,  
 SEDITION  
 Segusiāvī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the  
 SEGUSIAVI, a tribe of Gaul  
 semper, *adv.*, always, ever  
 senātor, -ōris, *m. [senātus]*, SENAT-  
 TOR  
 senātus, -ūs, *m. [senātor]*, council of  
 elders, SENATE  
 senectūs, -ūtis, *f. [senex, old]*, old age  
 senior, -ōris, *m. [comp. of senex, old]*,  
 elder. (*Senior*)  
 sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel,  
 know (by the senses), see, per-  
 ceive. (*Sense*) *Cf. percipiō*  
 sepeliō, sepelīre, sepelivī (sepelii),  
 sepultus, bury, inter. (*Sepulture*)  
 septem, *adj.*, *indecl.*, seven  
 septimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*septem*],  
 seventh  
 Sēquani, -ōrum, *m. plur.*, the SE-  
 QUANI, a tribe of Gaul  
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow.  
*(Prosecute)*  
 Seriphus, -ī, *f.*, SERIPHOS, a small  
 island east of Greece  
 serpēns, -entis, *m.*, SERPENT, snake  
 servitūs, -ūtis, *f. [servus]*, slavery,  
 SERVITUDE  
 Servius Tullius, Servī Tullī, *m.*,  
 SERVIUS TULLIUS, one of the kings  
 of Rome  
 servō, servāre, servāvī, servātus,  
 save, keep, PRESERVE  
 servus, -ī, *m.*, slave, SERVANT  
 sex, *adj.*, *indecl.*, six  
 sī, *conj.*, if, whether  
 sic, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way. *Cf.*  
 ita and tam

siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry; in siccō,  
on dry ground. (*Desiccate*)

Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, SICILY, an island off  
the coast of Italy

signum, -ī, *n.*, mark, SIGN, ensign,  
SIGNAL

silva, -ae, *f.*, wood, forest. (*Silvan*)

similis, -e, *adj.* [*simul*], like, resem-  
bling, SIMILAR

simul, *adv.* [*similis*], at the same  
time; simul ac, as soon as

sine, *prep.* with *abl.*, without.  
(*Sinecure*)

sinister, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, left (hand).  
(*Sinister*)

sinus, -ūs, *m.*, lap, bosom

situs, -a, -um, *adj.*, placed, set, lying,  
SITUATED

socius, soci, *m.*, comrade, companion,  
ally. (*Social*)

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun. (*Solar*)

sollicitō, sollicitāre, sollicitāvī, solli-  
citātus, stir, arouse, tempt. (*Solicit*)

sōlus, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, single; SOLE  
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, loose,  
loosen; melt; break; pay. (*Solve*)

somnus, -ī, *m.*, sleep. (*Somnolent*)

sonitus, -ūs, *m.*, SOUND, noise, din,  
clash

soror, -ōris, *f.*, sister. (*Sorority*)

Sparta, -ae; *f.*, SPARTA, a city of  
Greece

Spartānus, -ī, *m.*, a SPARTAN

spatium, spatī, *n.*, room, SPACE,  
distance, time

speciēs, (-ēi), *f.* [*spectō*], sight, ap-  
pearance, pretense. (*Species*)

spectāculum, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], a show,  
exhibition. (*Spectacle*)

spectō, spectāre, spectāvī, spectātus,  
look at, behold, witness. (*Spectator*)

speculum, -ī, *n.* [*spectō*], mirror

spēlunca, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern, den

spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētus,  
despise, reject, scorn, spurn

spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātus

[*spēs*], hope, hope for

spēs, speī, *f.* [*spērō*], hope; in spēm  
venīre, to entertain hopes

spondeō, spondēre, spoondī, spōnsus,  
pledge, promise. (*Spouse*)

sponte (suā), only *abl.*, of (one's own)  
accord. (*Spontaneous*)

statim, *adv.* [*stō*], (standing there),  
on the spot, immediately, at once.  
*Cf.* subitō

statua, -ae, *f.* [*statuō*, set up], (the  
thing set up), STATUE

stella, -ae, *f.*, star. (*Constellation*,  
*Stellar*)

stipendium, stīpendī, *n.*, wages, pay;  
military service. (*Stipend*)

stō, stāre, stetī, statūrus, stand

studeō, studēre, studuī, — [studium],  
desire, be eager for; with dat.  
(*Student*)

studiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*studium*],  
eager, desirous, STUDIOUS

studium, studī, *n.* [*studeō*], zeal,  
eagerness; STUDY

stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —, be as-  
tonished, be amazed. (*Stupefy*)

suādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus, ad-  
vise, urge; with dat. of person.  
(*Suasion*)

sub, *prep.* with acc. and abl., under,  
up to; sub vesperum, toward  
evening. (*Subway*)

sub-dō, subdere, subdidi, subditus  
[-dō, put], put under, set to  
sub-eō, subire, subiī, subitus, go  
under, go up to, enter; undergo  
sub-icio, subicere, subiēci, subiectus  
[-iaciō], put under, place under;  
with dat. of the object under  
which. (*Subject*)  
sub-igō, subigere, subēgi, subāctus  
[-agō], bring under, subdue  
subitō, adv., SUDDENly, unexpect-  
edly. Cf. statim  
sublātus, see tollō  
sublicius, -a, -um, adj., resting on  
piles; pōns Sublicius, the Sub-  
lician bridge, the pile bridge  
subsidiūm, subsidiī, n., help, aid, re-  
lief. (*Subsidy*) Cf. auxiliūm and  
praesidiūm  
suc-cēdō, succēdere, successī, suc-  
cessūrūs [sub-], come up, approach,  
follow. (*Succeed*)  
Suessa Pōmētia, Suessae Pōmētiae,  
f., SUESSA POMETIA, a city of Italy  
suī, reflex. pron., of himself (herself,  
itself, themselves). (*Suicide*)  
Sulpicius, Sulpiciī, m., a Roman  
name  
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist.  
(*Essence, Future*)  
summus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of  
superus, highest, greatest, extreme.  
(*Sum, Consummate*)  
sūmō, sūmēre, sūmpsī, sūmptus,  
take, take up; ASSUME  
super, prep. with acc. and abl., over,  
above, upon. (*Superhuman*)  
super-incidō, superincidere, ——,  
—, fall on from above

superior, -ius, adj., comp. of supe-  
rus, higher, SUPERIOR  
superō, superāre, superāvī, superā-  
tus [*super*], pass over; surpass,  
outdo, overcome, conquer. (*In-  
superable*) Cf. praestō and vincō  
super-sum, superesse, superfuī, su-  
perfutūrus, be over, be left over;  
survive; with dat.  
(superus), -a, -um, adj. [*super*], above  
supplicium, supplicī, n., punishment,  
torture  
suprā, adv. [*superus*], above, be-  
fore  
suprēmus, -a, -um, adj., superl. of  
superus, last. (*Supreme*)  
sus-cipiō, suspicere, suscēpi, suscep-  
tus [*sub(s)-capiō*], take up, under-  
take, receive. (*Susceptible*)  
suspīciō, -ōnis, f. [*suspīcor*], SUSPI-  
CION  
suspīcor, suspicārī, suspicātus sum  
[*suspīciō*], suspect, mistrust  
sus-tineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sus-  
tentus [*sub(s)-teneō*], hold up, bear,  
endure; support; withstand, SUS-  
TAIN  
suus, -a, -um, possess. and reflex.  
adj. and pron. [*suī*], his, her,  
hers; its, their, theirs  
tālāria, -ium, n. plur., winged shoes  
tālis, -e, adj., such  
tam, adv., so, so much. Cf. ita and  
sīc  
tamen, adv., yet, but, however,  
nevertheless  
tandem, adv. [*tam-*], (just so far),  
at length, finally

**tantulus**, -a, -um, adj. [diminutive of *tantus*], so small

**tantum**, adv. [*tantus*], only

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj. [*tam*], so great, so much, such. (*Tantamount*)

**Tarentinus**, -a, -um, adj., of Tarentum, a city of southern Italy; masc. plur. as noun, the TARENTINES

**Tarentum**, -i, n., TARENTUM, a city of southern Italy

**Tarquinius**, Tarquinī, m., TARQUIN, name of two kings of Rome, Tarquinius Priscus and Tarquinius Superbus

**tēlum**, -i, n., weapon

**temperō**, temperāre, temperāvī, temperātus, refrain from, keep from. (*Temperate*)

**tempestās**, -ātis, f. [*tempus*], storm, TEMPEST, weather

**templum**, -i, n., TEMPLE

**tempus**, -oris, n., time. (*Temporal*)

**teneō**, tenēre, tenuī, —, hold, keep,

have. (*Tenacious, Retain*)

**tentō**, tentāre, tentāvī, tentātus, try, ATTEMPT. Cf. experior

**tergum**, -i, n., back; ā tergō, behind, in the rear. (*Tergiversation*)

**terra**, -ae, f., earth, land; region. (*Terrace*)

**terreō**, terrēre, terrui, territus [*terror*], frighten, alarm, TERRIFY

**terribilis**, -e, adj. [*terreō*], dreadful, frightful, TERRIBLE. Cf. horribilis

**territōrium**, territōri, n. [*terra*], lands. (*Territory*)

**terror**, -ōris, m. [*terreō*], TERROR, alarm, fear. Cf. pavor and timor

**tertium**, adv. [*textius*], the third time

**tertius**, -a, -um, adj. [*trēs*], third. (*Tertiary*)

**Thalēs**, -is, m., THALES, a Greek philosopher

**Thēbae**, -ārum, f. plur., THEBES, a city of Greece

**Tiberis**, -is, m. (acc. -im), the TIBER, a river of Italy

**Ticīnus**, -i, m., the TICINUS, a river of Italy

**timeō**, timēre, timuī, — [*timor*], fear, be afraid of. Cf. vereor

**timidus**, -a, -um, adj. [*timeō*], faint-hearted, TIMID

**Timōn**, -ōnis, m., TIMON, an Athenian

**timor**, -ōris, m. [*timeō*], fear. Cf. pavor and terror. (*Timorous*)

**tintinnābulum**, -i, n., bell. (*Tintinnabulation*)

**Tiryns**, -nthis (-os) (acc. Tirynta), f., TIRYNS, a city of Greece

**tolerō**, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātus, bear, endure. (*Tolerate.*) Cf. ferō

**tollō**, tollere, sustuli, sublātus, raise, pick up, take. (*Extol*)

**Tolōsātēs**, -ium, m. plur., the TOLOSATES, inhabitants of Tolosa, a city in Gaul

**tōtus**, -a, -um, adj., whole, all, entire. (*Total.*) Cf. omnis, ūniversus, and cūnctus

**trabs**, trabis, f., beam, timber, log

**trāctō**, trāctāre, trāctāvī, trāctātus [*trahō*], handle, feel of. (*Tractate*)

**trā-dō**, trādere, trādidī, trāditus [*trāns-dō*, put], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; trādunt, they say. (*Tradition*)

trā-dūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāduc-tus [*trāns-*], lead over, lead across.

*Often with a secondary object, as,* flūmen cōpiās trādūcere, lead the troops across the river. (*Traduce*)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, draw, drag, lead. (*Traction*)

trā-iciō, trāicere, trāiēcī, trāiectus [*trāns-iaciō*], throw across, cross; pierce. (*Trajectory*)

trā-nō, trānāre, trānāvī, —— [*trāns-*], swim across

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm, TRANQUIL

trāns, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over, the other side of. (*Transatlantic*)

trāns-eō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitus, go over, cross. (*Transit*)

trāns-fīgō, trānsfigere, trānsfīxi, trānsfixus, pierce through, stab. (*Transfix*)

trānsfixus, see trānsfigō

trāns-fodiō, trānsfodere, trānsfōdī, trānsfōsus, run through, pierce through, stab

trāns-fugiō, trānsfugere, trānsfūgi, ——, go over (to the enemy), desert

trāns-marīnus, -a, -um, adj. [*mare*], foreign

trāns-portō, trānsportāre, trānspor-tāvī, trānsportātus, carry across. (*Transport*)

trecentī, -ae, -a, adj. [*tres-centum*], three hundred

trepidō, trepidāre, trepidāvī, trepi-dātūrūs, be in alarm, be in confusion. (*Trepidation*)

trēs, tria, adj., three. (*Trefoil*)

tribūnal, -ālis, n. [*tribūnus*], judgment seat, TRIBUNAL

tribūnus, -ī, m., TRIBUNE, a Roman officer

trīcēnsimus, -a, -um, adj., thirtieth trīduum, -ī, n., three days

trīstis, -e, adj., sad, gloomy

triumphō, triumphāre, triumphāvī, triumphātūrus, celebrate a TRIUMPH

Trōia, -ae, f., TROY, an ancient city of Asia Minor

trux, trucis, adj., wild, harsh, savage, fierce, TRUCULENT. Cf. atrōx and saevus

tū, pers. pron., thou, you

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet

Tullus Hostilius, Tullī Hostili, m., TULLUS HOSTILIUS, the third king of Rome

tum, adv., at that time; then

tunc, adv. [*tum*], at that time, then

turba, -ae, f. [*turbō*], crowd, throng; turmoil

turbō, turbāre, turbāvī, turbātūs [*turba*], DISTURB, confuse, trouble

turris, -is, f., TOWER. (*Turret*)

Tusci, -ōrum, m. plur., the Etruscans, people of Etruria, in Italy

Tuscia, -ae, f., Etruria, a district of Italy

Tusculum, -ī, n., TUSCULUM, a town near Rome

tūtēla, -ae, f., guardianship, charge, care. (*Tutelary*)

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe

tuus, -a, -um, possess. adj. and pron., thy, thine; your, yours (*of only one person*)

ubi, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, where,  
when  
ulciscor, *ulcisci*, ultus sum, avenge  
Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, ULYSSES, a Greek  
hero  
ullus, -a, -um, *adj. and pron.* [*for*  
*ūnulus, diminutive of ūnus*], any,  
any one, anybody  
ulterior, -ius, *adj., comp.*, farther,  
more remote. (*Ulterior*)  
ultimus, -a, -um, *adj., superl. of ul-*  
*terior*, farthest, last. (*Ultimate*)  
umbra, -ae, *f.*, shade, shadow. (*Um-*  
*brane, Umbrella*)  
umerus, -ī, *m.*, shoulder. (*Humerus*)  
umquam, *adv.*, at any time, ever  
unde, *interrog. and rel. adv.*, whence  
ūndecimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūndecim*],  
eleventh  
undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on  
all sides, everywhere  
ūniversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ūnus-versus*],  
(turned into one), whole, all, in a  
mass. (*Universal, Universe, Uni-*  
*versity.*) Cf. cūnctus, omnis, and  
tōtus  
ūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, one; alone.  
(*Union*)  
urbs, -is, *f.*, city. (*Suburb*)  
ūsus, -ūs, *m.* [*ūtor*], USE, benefit,  
advantage  
ut (*uti*), *adv. and conj.*, how, as,  
when; that, in order that, so  
that, to  
uter, -tra, -trum, *interrog. pron.*  
and *adj.*, which (of two)? uter  
. . . utrī, which . . . to the other  
ūter, -tris, *m.*, leather bottle, skin  
(of wine)

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *indef.*  
*pron. and adj.*, each (of two),  
both  
ūtilis, -e, *adj.* [*ūtor*], useful, advan-  
tageous. (*Utility*)  
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum [*ūsus*], USE,  
employ, enjoy, maintain; *with*  
*abl.*  
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife. (*Uxorius*)  
vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, —, be un-  
occupied. (*Vacant*)  
vadum, -ī, *n.*, shoal, ford  
vāgītus, -ūs, *m.*, a crying  
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus, be  
strong, be in good health; valē,  
farewell, good-by. (*Valiant, Value*)  
Valerius, Valerī, *m.*, VALERIUS, a  
Roman name  
valētūdō, -inis, *f.* [*valeō*], health, state  
of health. (*Valetudinarian*)  
validus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*valeō*], strong,  
stout, sturdy. (*Valid.*) Cf. fortis  
vāllum, -ī, *n.*, earthworks, rampart.  
(*Circumvallation*)  
vās, vāsis (*plur.* vāsa, -ōrum), *n.*,  
VASE, pot  
vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātus, lay  
WASTE, ravage  
-ve, *conj., enclitic*, or  
vehementer, *adv.*, eagerly, earnestly,  
very much, VEHEMENTLY  
Vēientēs, -ium, *m. plur.*, the inhab-  
itants of Veii  
vel, *conj.* [*volō*, wish], or; vel . . .  
vel, either . . . or. Cf. aut  
vēlō, vēlāre, vēlāvī, vēlātus, cover,  
encircle, envelop, VEIL  
vel-ut, *adv.*, just as, as if, like

- vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditus, sell, VEND
- venēnum, -ī, n., poison. (*Venom*)
- venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor. (*Venial*)
- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventūrus, come. (*Convene*)
- vēnor, vēnārī, vēnātus sum, hunt, chase. (*Venison*)
- venter, -tris, m., belly, stomach. (*Ventriloquist*)
- ventus, -ī, m., wind. (*Ventilate*)
- verbum, -ī, n., word. (*Verb*)
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum, fear, reverence, respect. Cf. timeō
- veritus, see vereor
- vērō, adv. [vērum], in truth, but
- versus, see vertō
- vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, turn, change. (*Convert, Verse*)
- vērum, conj. [vērō], but
- vesper, -erī, m., evening, nightfall. (*Vespers*)
- Vesta, -ae, f., VESTA, the goddess of the hearth
- vester, -tra, -trum, possess. adj. and pron., your, yours (of more than one person)
- vestis, -is, f., garment, robe, clothing
- Vesuvius, Vesuvī, m., VESUVIUS, a volcano near Naples
- Veturia, -ae, f., VETURIA, mother of Coriolanus
- via, -ae, f., way, road, street; gap. (*Via, Viaduct*)
- viātor, -ōris, m. [*via*], traveler
- vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj. [*vīcus*], near, neighboring; masc. as noun, neighbor. (*Vicinity*)
- victor, -ōris, m. [*vincō*], conqueror, VICTOR; as adj., VICTORIOUS
- victōria, -ae, f. [*victor*], VICTORY
- vīcūs, -ī, m., village, district, street
- videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, see, perceive; pass., be seen, seem. (*Vision*)
- vigilia, -ae, f., watch, night watch. (*Vigil*)
- vīgīntī, adj., indecl., twenty
- vīmen, -inis, n., pliant twig, wither, osier
- Vīmīnālīs, -is, m., the VIMINAL, one of the hills of Rome
- vīncīō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus, bind
- vīncō, vincere, vīcī, victus, conquer, defeat. (*Invincible.*) Cf. superō
- vīnculum, -ī, n. [*vīncīō*], chain, bond; in vīncula, into prison; into chains
- vīnea, -ae, f., covered shed, movable shelter, VINEA
- vīnum, -ī, n., WINE. (*Vine*)
- vir, virī, m., man, hero. (*Virile.*) Cf. homō
- vīrēō, virēre, viruī, —, be green
- virgō, -inis, f., maiden, VIRGIN
- virtūs, -ūtis, f. [*vir*], manliness, courage, bravery, valor; VIRTUE
- vīs, see volō, wish
- vīs, vīs, f., strength, power, force, violence. (*Vim*)
- vīta, -ae, f., life. (*Vital*)
- vīx, adv., hardly, with difficulty
- vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus [*vōx*], call. (*Vocation.*) Cf. appellō
- vocontī, -ōrum, m. plur., the vocontii, a tribe in the Roman province in southeastern Gaul

volō, velle, volui, —, wish, be  
willing, desire, intend. (*Volition*)

volō, volāre, volāvī, volātūrus, fly.  
(*Volatile*)

Volsci, -ōrum, *m.* plur., the VOL-  
SCIANS, a people of Italy

Volumnia, -ae, *f.*, VOLUMNIA, wife  
of Coriolanus

voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [*volō*, wish], will,  
good will, consent. (*Voluntary*)

voluptās, -ātis, *f.* [*volō*, wish], pleas-  
ure, enjoyment. (*Voluptuous*)

vōx, vōcis, *f.* [*vocō*], VOICE, word,  
remark. (*Vocal*)

Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, VULCAN, the god  
of fire

vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vul-  
nerātus [*vulnus*], wound, hurt, in-  
jure. (*Vulnerable*)

vulnus, -eris, *n.* [*vulnerō*], wound

vultus, -ūs, *m.*, countenance, looks,  
features

Zama, -ae, *f.*, ZAMA, a town in  
Africa

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

For the principal parts of verbs, and for other details not given here, reference may be made to the Latin-English Vocabulary or to the special vocabularies. The figures 1, 2, 3, 4 after verbs indicate the conjugation.

about, dē, *with abl.*  
 across, trāns, *with acc.*  
 act, agō, 3  
 advance, prōgredior, 3  
 advise, moneō, 2  
 after, post, *with acc.; implied in a participle*  
 afterwards, posteā  
 against, contrā or ad, *with acc.*  
 aid, auxilium, auxilī, *n.*  
 all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um  
 ally, socius, sociī, *in.*  
 alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um  
 also, etiam.  
 although, *implied in a participle*  
 among, inter, *with acc.; in, with abl.*  
 ample, amplus, -a, -um  
 and, et, -que; and also, atque; and so, itaque  
 announce, nūntiō, 1  
 another, aliis, -a, -ud  
 any, ūllus, -a, -um; aliquī, aliqua, aliquod; any at all, quisquam, —, quidquam; any one, aliquis  
 anything, aliquid  
 approach, appropinquō, 1  
 approve, probō, 1  
 arm, armō, 1  
 arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. plur.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*  
 arouse, incitō, 1; commoveō, 2  
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*  
 arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*  
 ask, rogō, 1; petō, 3  
 assistance, auxilium, auxilī, *n.*  
 at, in, *with acc. or abl.; abl. of cause; abl. of time; at last, tandem; at once, statim*  
**Athens**, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
 attack, v., oppugnō, 1; impetum faciō, 3  
 attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, *m.*  
 attempt, cōnor, 1  
 await, exspectō, 1  
 away from, ā or ab, *with abl.*  
 baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n.*  
*plur.*  
 band, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
 bank, rīpa, -ae, *f.*  
 barbarian, barbarus, -ī, *m.*  
 battle, pugna, -ae, *f.*; proelium, proelī, *n.*  
 be, sum, *irr.*; be able, possum, *irr.*; be made, fiō, *irr.*; be unwilling, nōlō, *irr.*; be wanting, dēsum, *irr.*; be willing, volō, *irr.*  
 bear, ferō, *irr.*

- because, quod ; because of, ob  
or propter, *with acc.* ; *abl. of cause*
- become, fīō, irr.
- began, coepī, *defective*
- best, optimus, -a, -um
- better, melior, melius
- between, inter, *with acc.*
- boat, nāvigmū, nāvigī, *n.*
- body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
- bold, audāx, -ācis ; fortis, -e
- book, liber, -brī, *m.*
- booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*
- both . . . and, et . . . et
- boy, puer, -erī, *m.*
- brave, fortis, -e
- bravely, fortiter ; cum virtūte
- bravery, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
- bring, portō, *I*
- Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f.*
- broad, lātus, -a, -um
- brother, frāter, -tris, *m.*
- build, aedificō, *I*
- building, aedificium, aedificī, *n.*
- but, sed
- buy, emō, *3*
- by, ā or ab, *with abl.* ; *abl. of means or instrument*
- Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
- call together, convocō, *I*
- camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. plur.*
- can, possum, irr.
- captive, captīvus, -ī, *m.*
- capture, capiō, *3*
- care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
- carry, portō, *I* ; carry on war, bel-lum gerō, *3*
- cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
- cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
- cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*
- centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m.*
- certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam  
(quiddam)
- certainly, certē
- chief, prīnceps, -cipis, *m.*
- children, līberī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*
- citizen, cīvis, -is, *m.*
- city, urbs, urbīs, *f.*
- clan, cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*
- cohort, cohors, cohōrtis, *f.*
- come, veniō, *4* ; come near, accēdō,  
3 ; appropinquō, *I*
- coming, adventus, -ūs, *m.*
- command, v., iubeō, *2* ; imperō, *I*,  
*with dat.*
- command, *n.*, imperium, imperī, *n.*
- comrade, socius, sociī, *m.*
- concerning, dē, *with abl.*
- conference, conloquium, conlo-quī, *n.*
- confidence, fidēs, -eī, *f.*
- confuse, perturbō, *I*
- conquer, superō, *I* ; vincō, *3*
- contend, pugnō, *I*
- Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, *f.*
- Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*
- country, patria, -ae, *f.*
- courage, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*
- cut off, interclūdō, *3*
- daily, cotīdiē
- danger, perīculum, -ī, *n.*
- daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*
- dawn (at), prīmā lūce
- day, diēs, -eī, *m.*
- daybreak (at), prīmā lūce
- death, mors, mortis, *f.*

- decide, cōnstituō, 3  
 deep, altus, -a, -um  
 defend, dēfendō, 3  
 delay, v., moror, 1  
 delay, n., mora, -ae, f.  
 delight, dēlectō, 1  
 Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, m. plur.  
 demand, postulō, 1  
 depart, discēdō, 3  
 deprive, prīvō, 1  
 desire, cupiō, 3 ; studeō, 2, *with dat.*  
 desist, dēsistō, 3  
 difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.  
 diligence, dīlignantia, -ae, f.  
 dismiss, dīmittō, 3  
 disturb, commoveō, 2  
 do, faciō, 3 ; agō, 3  
 down from, dē, *with abl.*  
 draw up, īstruō, 3  
 dwell, habitō, 1 ; incolō, 3  
 each, each one, quisque; each of  
     two, uterque, utraque, utrumque  
 eager, ācer, ācris, ācre  
 easy, facilis, -e  
 embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, f.  
 enemy, hostis, -is, m.  
 enough, satis  
 every one, quisque; omnēs, -ium,  
     m. plur.  
 exhort, hortor, 1  
 extend, pateō, 2  
 fact, rēs, reī, f.; the fact that, quod,  
     *with a clause of fact*  
 fail, dēsum, irr., *with dat.*  
 farmer, agricola, -ae, m.  
 father, pater, -tris, m.  
 fear, v., timeō, 2 ; vereor, 2  
 fear, n., timor, -ōris, m.  
 few, paucī, -ae, -a, plur.  
 field, ager, agrī, m.  
 fight, v., pugnō, 1  
 fight, n., pugna, -ae, f.  
 fill, compleō, 2  
 find, reperiō, 4  
 fire, ignis, -is, m.  
 first, prīmus, -a, -um  
 fit, idōneus, -a, -um  
 five, quīnque  
 flank, cornū, -ūs, n.  
 flee, fugiō, 3  
 follow, sequor, 3  
 food, cibus, -ī, m.  
 foot, pēs, pedis, m.; foot soldier,  
     pedes, peditis, m.  
 for, sign of the dative; prō, *with*  
     *abl.*; for the purpose of, ad, *with*  
     *gerundive or gerund*; ut, *with*  
     *subjunctive*  
 force, vīs, vīs, f.  
 forest, silva, -ae, f.  
 formerly, ōlim  
 fortify, mūniō, 4  
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.  
 free, v., līberō, 1  
 free, adj., līber, -era, -erum  
 friend, amīcus, -ī, m.  
 friendly, amīcus, -a, -um  
 frighten, terreō, 2  
 from, dē, *with abl.*; away from, ā  
     *or ab*, *with abl.*; out from, ē *or*  
     *ex*, *with abl.*; *abl.* of separation  
 Galba, Galba, -ae, m.  
 garden, hortus, -ī, m.  
 gate, porta, -ae, f.  
 gather together, cōgō, 3

- Gaul, Gallia, -ae, *f.*; a Gaul, Gallus, -ī, *m.*  
 general, dux, ducis, *m.*  
 Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 Germany, Germānia, -ae, *f.*  
 gift, dōnum, -ī, *n.*  
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*  
 give, dō, 1; dōnō, 1  
 go, eō, *irr.*; go away, discēdō, 3;  
     go forward, prōgredior, 3; go  
     out, ēgredior, 3  
 god, deus, -ī, *m.*  
 good, bonus, -a, -um  
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*  
 great, magnus, -a, -um; great num-  
     ber, multitūdō, -inis, *f.*  
 greatly, magnopere  
 Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*  
 grieve, doleō, 2  
  
 hand, manus, -ūs, *f.*  
 happen, fīō, *irr.*  
 harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*  
 hardship, labor, -ōris, *m.*  
 harm, noceō, 2, *with dat.*  
 hasten, properō, 1  
 have, habeō, 2  
 he, is, hic, ille  
 head, caput, -itis, *n.*  
 hear, audiō, 4  
 heavy, gravis, -e  
 help, auxilium, auxili, *n.*; subsidium,  
     subsidi, *n.*  
 Helvetians, Helvētiī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*  
 her, (*objective*) eam, hanc, illam;  
     (*possessive*) eius, huius, illius;  
     (*reflexive possessive*) suus, -a,  
     -um  
 herself, sui  
 high, altus, -a, -um; superus, -a,  
     -um  
 hill, collis, -is, *m.*  
 him, eum, hunc, illum  
 himself, suī  
 hinder, impediō, 4  
 his, eius, huius, illius; (*reflexive*)  
     suus, -a, -um  
 hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; hold in  
     check, sustineō, 2  
 home, domus, -ūs, *f.*  
 hope, spēs, speī, *f.*  
 horn, cornū, -ūs, *n.*  
 horse, equus, -ī, *m.*  
 horseman, eques, -itis, *m.*  
 hostage, obses, -idis, *m.*  
 hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
 house, domus, -ūs, *f.*  
 how many, quot  
 however, tamen  
 hundred, centum  
 hurl, iaciō, 3  
 hurry, properō, 1  
  
 I, ego  
 if, implied in a participle  
 impel, incitō, 1  
 in, in, *with abl.*; abl. of specifica-  
     tion; in defense of, prō, *with abl.*;  
     in front of, prō, *with abl.*; in order  
     to, ut, *with subjunctive*; in such  
     a way, ita; in vain, frūstrā  
 increase, augēō, 2  
 infantry, peditātus, -ūs, *m.*  
 inform, certiōrem faciō, 3  
 inhabitant, incola, -ae, *m.*  
 injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.*  
 into, in, *with acc.*  
 island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*

|   |   |
|---|---|
| it, id, hoc, illud                                      | long, longus, -a, -um; for a long time, diū       |
| Italy, Italia, -ae, f.                                  | look at, spectō, I                                |
| javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.                                  | love, amō, I                                      |
| journey, iter, itineris, n.                             |   |
| Julia, Iūlia, -ae, f.                                   | make, faciō, 3                                    |
| kill, interficiō, 3                                     | man, vir, virī, m.; homō, -inis, m.               |
| king, rēx, rēgis, m.                                    | many, multī, -ae, -a, plur.                       |
| know, sciō, 4; cognōscō, 3, in <i>perf.</i> tenses      | march, v., iter faciō; 3                          |
|   | march, n., iter, itineris, n.                     |
| Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, m.                              | Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, m.                            |
| labor, labōrō, I  | marsh, palūs, palūdis, f.                         |
| lack, v., careō, 2, with abl.; dēsum, irr., with dat.   | master, dominus, -ī, m.                           |
| lack, n., inopia, -ae, f.                               | meanwhile, interim                                |
| lady, domina, -ae, f.                                   | messenger, nūntius, nūntī, m.                     |
| lake, lacus, -ūs, m.                                    | mile, mīle passuum                                |
| land, terra, -ae, f.                                    | mine, meus, -a, -um                               |
| large, magnus, -a, -um                                  | money, pecūnia, -ae, f.                           |
| last, proximus, -a, -um                                 | more, plūs, plūris                                |
| lay waste, vāstō, I                                     | most, plūrimus, -a, -um                           |
| lead, dūcō, 3; lead back, redūcō, 3; lead out, ēdūcō, 3 | mother, māter, -tris, f.                          |
| leader, dux, ducis, m.                                  | mountain, mōns, montis, m.                        |
| learn, cognōscō, 3                                      | move, moveō, 2                                    |
| least, minimus, -a, -um                                 | much, adj., multus, -a, -um                       |
| leave behind, relinquō, 3                               | much, adv., multum; multō                         |
| left, sinister, -tra, -trum                             | must, passive periphrastic conjugation            |
| legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.                                | my, meus, -a, -um                                 |
| lest, nē, with subjunctive                              |   |
| letter, litterae, -ārum, f. plur.                       | nation, nātiō, -ōnis, f.                          |
| liberate, līberō, I                                     | native land, patria, -ae, f.                      |
| lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.                             | near, adj., fīnitimus, -a, -um; proximus, -a, -um |
| like, similis, -e                                       | near, prep., apud, with acc.                      |
| line of battle; aciēs, -ēī, f.                          | neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um                   |
| little, parvus, -a, -um                                 | neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.              |
| live, habitō, I   | neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque              |
|   | never, numquam                                    |
|   | new, novus, -a, -um                               |

**night**, nox, noctis, *f.*

**no**, nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer**, nōn iam  
nor, neque

**not**, nōn; **not even**, nē . . . quidem

**nothing**, nihil

**now**, iam, nunc

**number**, numerus, -ī, *m.*

**ocean**, ōceanus, -ī, *m.*

**of**, *sign of the genitive*; dē, *with abl.*; *out of*, ē or ex, *with abl.*

**offer**, dō, *i*

**often**, saepe

**on**, in, *with abl.*; *abl. of time*; on  
*account of*, ob or propter, *with acc.*

**once (upon a time)**, ūlīm

**one**, ūnus, -a, -um

**order**, v., iubeō, 2; imperō, *i*, *with dat.*

**order (in order that)**, ut, *with sub-junctive*

**other**, aliis, -a, -ud; **other of two**,  
alter, -era, -erum

**ought**, dēbeō, 2; *passive periphrastic conjugation*

**our**, noster, -tra, -trum; **our men**,  
nostrī, -ōrum, *m. plur.*

**ourselves**, nōs; ipsi, -ae

**out of**, ē or ex, *with abl.*

**overcome**, superō, *i*; vincō, 3

**own**, (his, her, its, their) suus, -a,  
-um; (my) meus, -a, -um; (our)

noster, -tra, -trum; (your, sing.)  
tuus, -a, -um; (your, plur.) vester,  
-tra, -trum

**part**, pars, partis, *f.*

**peace**, pāx, pācis, *f.*

**people**, populus, -ī, *m.*; nātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

**personal enemy**, inimīcus, -ī, *m.*

**persuade**, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*  
**pirate**, pīrātā, -ae, *m.*

**pitch camp**, castra pōnō, 3

**place**, v., pōnō, 3; conlocō, *i*;  
**place in command**, praeficiō, 3,  
*with dat. of the object over which*

**place**, *n.*, locus, -ī (*plur.* loca and  
rarely locī), *m.*

**plan**, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, *n.*

**plead**, ūrō, *i*

**please**, placeō, 2, *with dat.*

**pleasing**, grātus, -a, -um

**plenty**, cōpia, -ae, *f.*

**poet**, poēta, -ae, *m.*

**point out**, dēmōnstrō, *i*

**poor**, miser, -era, -erum

**power**, potestās, -ātis, *f.*; vīs, vīs, *f.*

**praise**, laudō, *i*

**prefer**, mālō, *irr.*

**prisoner**, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

**promise**, pollicēor, 2

**protection**, subsidium, subsidī, *n.*

**province**, prōvinciā, -ae, *f.*

**purpose (for the purpose of)**, ut (*neg.*

· nē), *with subjunctive*; ad, *with gerund or gerundive*; causā, fol-  
lowing a gerund or gerundive

**put in command**, praeficiō, 3, *with dat. of the object over which*;

**put to flight**, fugō, *i*

**queen**, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

**receive**, capiō, 3; recipiō, 3

**relate**, nārrō, *i*

**remain**, maneō, 2

**remember**, memoriā teneō, 2

|  |  |
|--|--|
| reply, respondeō, 2  | shore, lītus, -oris, <i>n.</i>   |
| report, nūntiō, I  | short, brevis, -e  |
| resist, resistō, 3, <i>with dat.</i>   | show, dēmōnstrō, I; praebeō, 2;  |
| rest, reliquī, -ōrum, <i>m. plur.</i> ; rest<br>of, reliquus, -a, -um          | doceō, 2   |
| return, revertō, 3; <i>commonly depo-</i><br><i>nent in the present system</i> | shut off, interclūdō, 3  |
| reward, praemium, praemī, <i>n.</i>  | sick, aeger, -gra, -grum   |
| right, dexter, -tra, -trum   | signal, signum, -ī, <i>n.</i>  |
| river, flūmen, -inis, <i>n.</i>  | since; <i>implied in a participle</i>  |
| road, via, -ae, <i>f.</i>  | sing, cantō, I   |
| Roman, <i>adj.</i> , Rōmānus, -a, -um  | sister, sōror, -ōris, <i>f.</i>  |
| Roman, <i>n.</i> , Rōmānus, -ī, <i>m.</i>                                      | six, sex   |
| Rome, Rōma, -ae, <i>f.</i>   | slave, servus, -ī, <i>m.</i>   |
| rule, regō, 3  | slight, parvus, -a, -um  |
| sail, nāvigō, I  | small, parvus, -a, -um   |
| sailor, nauta, -ae, <i>m.</i>  | so, tam, ita; so as not to, nē, <i>with</i><br><i>subjunctive</i> ; so great, tantus, -a,<br>-um; so that, ut, <i>with subjunctive</i> |
| sake (for the sake of), causā, fol-<br>lowing a genitive                       | soldier, mīlēs, -itis, <i>m.</i>   |
| same, idem, eadem, idem  | some . . . others, aliī . . . aliī   |
| say, dīcō, 3   | somebody, some one, aliquis  |
| scare, terreō, 2   | something, aliquid   |
| scout, explōrātor, -ōris, <i>m.</i>  | sometimes, interdum  |
| sea, mare, -is, <i>n.</i>  | son, filius, filī, <i>m.</i>   |
| second, secundus, -a, -um  | sortie, ēruptiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>  |
| see, videō, 2  | spear, hasta, -ae, <i>f.</i>   |
| seek, petō, 3  | speed, celeritās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>   |
| self, ipse, -a, -um; suī   | spend the winter, hiemō, I   |
| senate, senātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>  | state, cīvitās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>   |
| send, mittō, 3; send ahead, prae-<br>mittō, 3                                  | station, conlocō, I  |
| servant, servus, -ī, <i>m.</i>   | stay, maneō, 2   |
| set free, liberō, I; set out, proficīs-<br>cor, 3                              | story, fābula, -ae, <i>f.</i>  |
| severe, gravis, -e   | street, via, -ae, <i>f.</i>  |
| she, ea, haec, illa  | strength, vīs, vīs, <i>f.</i>  |
| shield, scūtum, -ī, <i>n.</i>  | summer, aestās, -ātis, <i>f.</i>   |
| ship, nāvis, -is, <i>f.</i>  | sun, sōl, sōlis, <i>m.</i>   |
|  | sunset, sōlis occāsus  |
|  | supplies, commeātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i>  |
|  | surpass, superō, I   |
|  | surrender, dēditiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>   |

- survive, supersum, *irr.*, with *dat.*  
 swamp, palūs, palūdis, *f.*  
 swim, natō, *i*  
 sword, gladius, gladi, *m.*
- take, capiō, 3  
 tall, altus, -a, -um  
 teach, doceō, 2  
 tell, nārrō, *i*; dīcō, 3  
 ten, decem  
 tenth, decimus, -a, -um  
 terms, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 territory, finēs, -ium, *m. plur.*  
 than, quam  
 that, *dem. pron.*, is, ea, id; ille, illa,  
     illud; that of yours, iste, -a, -ud  
 that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod  
 that, *conj.*, in purpose or result  
     clauses, ut, with *subjunctive*; not  
     expressed after a verb of saying;  
 that not, nē, ut nōn, with *sub-  
     junctive*
- their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*re-  
     flexive*) suus, -a, -um  
 them, eōs, eās, ea  
 themselves, sē (sēsē); ipsī, -ae, -a  
 then, tum  
 there, ibi; not translated in such  
     expressions as there is  
 therefore, itaque  
 they, eī, eae, ea; hī, hae, haec; illī,  
     illae, illa  
 thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; sometimes omitted  
 think, putō, *i*  
 third, tertius, -a, -um  
 this, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc  
 though, implied in a participle  
 thousand, mīlle  
 three, trēs, tria
- through, per, with *acc.*  
 throw, iaciō, 3  
 time, tempus, -oris, *n.*  
 tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um  
 to, sign of the dative; ad or in, with  
     *acc.*; expressing purpose, ut, with  
     *subjunctive*; ad, with gerund or  
     gerundive; causā, following a  
     gerund or gerundive  
 to-day, hodiē  
 toward, ad, with *acc.*  
 tower, turris, -is, *f.*  
 town, oppidum, -ī, *n.*  
 trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*  
 tree, arbor, -oris, *f.*  
 tribune, tribūnus, -ī, *m.*  
 troops, cōpiae, -ārum, *f. plur.*  
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*  
 turret, turris, -is, *f.*  
 two, duo, -ae, -o; which of two, uter,  
     utra, utrum; each of two, uter-  
     que, utraque, utrumque
- unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um  
 unhappy, miser, -era, -erum  
 unwilling (be), nōlō, *irr.*  
 urge, hortor, *i*
- valor, virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*  
 very, superlative degree; maximē;  
     ipše, -a, -um  
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*  
 village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
- wage, gerō, 3  
 wagon, carrus, -ī, *m.*  
 wait, wait for, exspectō, *i*  
 walk, ambulō, *i*  
 wall, mūrus, -ī, *m.*

- war, bellum, -ī, *n.*  
 warn, moneō, *z*  
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.*  
 way, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*  
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*  
 welcome, *v.*, recipiō, *3*  
 welcome, *adj.*, grātus, -a, -um  
 well, bene  
 what, quis (qui), quae, quid (quod)  
 when, cum; *ablative absolute*; implied in a participle  
 whence, unde  
 where, ubi  
 whether, num  
 which, qui, quae, quod; which of two, uter, utra, utrum  
 while, cum; implied in a participle  
 whither, quo  
 who, (*rel.*) qui, quae; (*interrog.*) quis  
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e  
 why, cūr  
 wide, lātus, -a, -um  
 width, lātitūdō, -inis, *f.*
- wind, ventūs, -ī, *m.*  
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*; winter quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. plur.*  
 wish, volō, *irr.*; cupiō, *3*  
 with, cum, with abl.; sometimes abl. alone  
 without, sine, with abl.  
 woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*  
 woods, silva, -ae, *f.*  
 word, verbum, -ī, *n.*  
 work, labōrō, *1*  
 wound, *v.*, vulnerō, *1*  
 wound, *n.*, vulnus, -eris, *n.*  
 wretched, miser, -era, -erum  
 year, annus, -ī, *m.*  
 yet, tamen  
 you, (*sing.*) tū; (*plur.*) vōs  
 young man, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*  
 your, (*sing.*) tuus, -a, -um; (*plur.*) vester, -tra, -trum  
 zeal, studium, studī, *n.*



# INDEX

References are to sections unless otherwise indicated

- ā or ab with ablative of agent, 242, 243  
ablative, XXIV, b  
of adjectives of third declension, 208, c  
absolute, 452-455  
of accompaniment, 142, 143  
of agent, 242, 243  
of cause, 184, 185  
of degree of difference, 320, 321  
of manner, 128, 129  
of means, 121, 122  
of place from which, 177, 229, 230  
of place where, 58, 59  
of separation, 281, 282  
of specification, 480, 481  
of time, 218, 219  
with ex, equivalent to partitive genitive, 309, a  
with prepositions, 194  
accent, 20-22  
accusative, XXIV, b  
in indirect statements, 400, 401  
object of transitive verbs, 32, 33  
of extent, 332, 333  
of place to which, 179, 229, 230  
subject of the infinitive, 398, 399  
with prepositions, 193  
ācer, declension, 644  
comparison, 306, 647  
adjectives, definition, III, a  
kinds and definitions, III, b-f  
of first and second declensions, 78, 79, 643; in -er, 103, 643; with genitive in -ius and dative in -i, 385-387, 646  
of third declension, 208, 644; of one, two, and three terminations, 208  
agreement, 79  
comparison, 296, 306, 307, 317, 319, 647, 649; irregular, 307, 317, 319, 649; by adverbs, XXVI, c

- declension of comparatives, 297, 648  
meaning of comparative and superlative, 296, c  
interrogative, 152, 154  
possessive, 278; distinction in use: between suus and eius, 279; between tuus and vester, 278; omission of suus, 280  
predicate, xv, a; 86, 88; with complementary infinitive, 394, b  
used as nouns, III, f; 196  
adverbial clauses with quā and ut, 497  
adverbs, definition, v, a  
kinds and definitions, v, b-f  
formation, 325, 326; of the comparative and superlative, 327, a.  
comparison, 327, 650  
agent, expressed by the ablative with  
ā or ab, 242, 243  
ager, declension, 97, 637  
agreement, of adjectives, 79; after a complementary infinitive, 394, b  
of appositives, 93, 94  
of predicate nouns, xv, c; 87  
of relative pronouns, 247, 248  
of verb with its subject, 29  
aliquis, 420, c; 657  
alius, declension, 646  
    alius . . . aliis, 387  
alphabet, i  
alter . . . alter, 387  
amāns, declension, 645  
amō, conjugation, 658  
antecedent, definition, II, b  
antepenult, II  
    when accented, 21  
apposition, 93, 94  
article, not used in Latin, 27, a  
audāx, declension, 644  
    comparison, 296, 647  
audiō, conjugation, 662

- base, 63, *a*  
**bonus**, declension, 643  
  comparison, 317, 649  
**brevis**, declension, 644  
  comparison, 296, 647
- capiō**, conjugation, 661  
**caput**, declension, 171, 638  
**cardinals**, definition, III, *c*  
  declension, 378, 646  
  indeclinable forms, 378  
  table of, 651
- case**, definition, XXIV  
  of relative pronoun, 247
- case endings**, 25, *a*; 63, 73, 171, 189,  
  292, 331
- cases**, names of English, XXIV, *a*  
  names of Latin, XXIV, *b*. See under  
  nominative, genitive, etc.  
  uses, 512
- causā** with gerund, 461, *a*  
  with gerundive, 472
- causal clauses** with *quod*, 50, 51
- cause**, expressed by the ablative, 184,  
  185  
  expressed by a prepositional phrase,  
  186, 195, *b*
- characteristic vowels** of the four con-  
  jugations, 38
- clauses**, definitions, XX, *a-f*  
  indirect questions, 372, 373  
  of cause, with *quod*, 50, 51  
  of purpose, with *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344;  
  substantive, 355, 356  
  of result, with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357,  
  358  
  temporal, with *cum*, 487, 488
- cohors**, declension, 189, 639
- comparative**, declined, 297, 648  
  formation, 296, *a*  
  meaning too, etc., 296, *c*
- comparison**, definition, XXVI, *a*  
  methods of, in English and in Latin,  
  XXVI, *b, c*  
  of adjectives, 296, 306, 307, 317,  
  319, 647, 649; of adjectives in  
  -*lis*, 307; irregular, 307, 317, 319,  
  649  
  of adverbs, 327, 650
- complement of verb**, XV, *b*  
**complementary infinitive**, 394
- conjugation**, definition, XXVII, *a*. See  
  verbs  
  in English and Latin verbs, XXVII,  
  *b, c*
- conjunctions**, definition, VII, *a*  
  kinds and definitions, VII, *b, c*
- consonant-i**, 3
- consonants**, how pronounced, 6
- contraction** in genitive of nouns in  
  -iūm and -iūs, 98
- coördinate clauses**, XX, *f*
- copula**, XV, *b*
- cornū**, declension, 292, 640
- cum** (conj.) in temporal clauses, 487,  
  488
- cum** (prep.), with ablative of accom-  
  paniment, 142, 143  
  with ablative of manner, 128, 129  
  joined to ablative of personal, re-  
  flexive, relative, and interrogative  
  pronouns, p. 109, note 1
- dative**, XXIV, *a*, 4; *b*  
  double, 426, *a*  
  of indirect object, 56, 57  
  of purpose, 426, 427  
  of reference, 426, 428  
  with adjectives, 110, 111  
  with compound verbs, 424, 425  
  with special intransitive verbs, 432,  
  433
- declension**, definition, XXII. See nouns,  
  pronouns, adjectives, and compara-  
  tives
- degree of difference**, expressed by  
  the ablative, 320, 321
- demonstrative adjectives and pro-  
  nouns**, definition, II, *f*; III, *e*.  
  See pronouns; also *hic*, *idem*, *ille*,  
  *ipse*, *is*, *iste*
- dependent clause**, XIX, note; XX, *a-e*
- deponent verbs**, 482, 483, 669
- deus**, declension, 642
- diēs**, declension, 331, 641  
  gender, 331
- diphthongs**, how pronounced, 5
- direct statements**, 400
- domō**, used of place from which,  
  229, 230, *a*
- domum**, used of place to which, 229,  
  230, *b*

domus, declension, 642  
 gender, 292, *b*  
**dōnum**, declension, 73, 637  
**dum** with present indicative, p. 133,  
 note 4  
**duo**, declension, 646

**ego**, declension, 652  
**eius** compared with **suus**, 279  
**enclitics**, 22  
**eō**, conjugation, 667  
**Eutropius**, selections from, 547–551  
**exercitus**, declension, 292, 640  
**extent** of time or space, how ex-  
 pressed, 332, 333

**ferō**, conjugation, 666  
**fifth declension**, 331, 641  
**filius**, declension, 98, 637  
**fiō**, conjugation, 668  
**first declension**, 63, 636  
**fourth declension**, 292, 640  
**future active participle**, XXXIV, *b*  
 formation, 441, *a*  
 in principal parts, p. 63, note 1  
 use, 444  
**future perfect tense**, formation of,  
 active, 223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*

**gender**, in English and in Latin,  
 XXV, *a*, *b*; 64  
 in first declension, 64, *a*  
 in second declension, 99  
 in third declension, 171, *b*  
 in fourth declension, 292 and *b*  
 in fifth declension, 331  
**genitive**, XXIV, *a*, 2; *b*  
 objective, 380, 381  
 of material, p. 79, note 1  
 partitive, 308, 309  
 possessive, 43, 44  
**gerund**, a verbal noun, XXXII, *c*; 459,  
 460  
 uses, 461  
**gerundive**, a verbal adjective, 471  
 agreement of, 471  
 used with ad and **causā** to express  
 purpose, 472  
 used with **sum** to form the passive  
 periphrastic conjugation, 473;  
 expresses necessary action, 473, *a*

**Helvetians**, campaign against the,  
 440, 451, 479, 494, 514–523  
**hic**, declension, 654  
 uses, 228, 263  
**hortor**, conjugation, 669  
**hortus**, declension, 73, 637  
**hostis**, declension, 189, 639

**i** with force of a consonant before a  
 vowel, 3  
**i-stems**, 189, 639  
**idem**, declension, 654  
 use, 410, *a*  
**iēns**, declension, 645  
**ille**, declension, 654  
 uses, 228, 263  
**in** with accusative and ablative, 193,  
 194  
**indefinite pronouns and adjectives**,  
 definition, II, *g*; III, *e*. See pro-  
 nouns  
**independent clause**, XVIII, note  
**indirect object**, definition, XIV, *b*  
 case of, 56, 57  
**indirect questions**, 372, 373  
**indirect statements**, 400–402  
**infinitive**, definition and English uses,  
 XXXII, *a*, *b*  
 formation, 38, 392; omission of  
 esse in compound forms, p. 190,  
 note 1  
 as object, 398  
 as subject, 393  
 complementary, 394  
 in indirect statements, 400–402;  
 tenses in, 402  
 not used to express purpose,  
 343, *b*  
 takes a subject accusative, 398,  
 399  
**inflection**, definition, XXI  
**interjection**, definition, VIII  
**interrogative adjective**, 152, 154  
**interrogative pronoun**, 152, 153  
**intransitive verb**, definition, IV, *c*  
 followed by dative, 432, 433  
**-iō**, verbs in, of the third conjugation,  
 175, 661  
**ipse**, declension, 654  
 distinguished from **sui**, 410, *c*  
 used for emphasis, 410, *c*

- irregular adjectives (genitives in -*iūs*), 385-387, 646  
 irregular comparison, 307, 317, 319, 649  
 irregular verbs: *eō*, 667; *ferō*, 666; *fiō*, 668; *possum*, 664; *sum*, 663; *volō*, *nōlō*, and *mālō*, 665  
**is**, declension, 147, 654  
 relation to *hic* and *ille*, 148  
 uses as a demonstrative pronoun and adjective, 148  
 used as a personal pronoun, 263  
**iste**, declension, 654  
 uses, 410, *a*, *b*  
**iter**, declension, 642  
**Iuppiter**, declension, 642  
**lātior**, declension, 297, 648  
**lātus**, comparison, 296, 647  
**liber**, declension, 643  
**locative case**, XXIV, *b*  
**magnus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**mālō**, conjugation, 665  
**malus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**manner**, how expressed, 128, 129  
**manus**, gender, 292, *b*  
**mare**, declension, 189, 639  
**means**, expressed by the ablative, 121, 122  
**miles**, declension, 171, 638  
**mille**, declension, 378, 646  
 use, 379  
**miser**, comparison, 306, 647  
**moneō**, conjugation, 659  
**mōns**, declension, 189, 639  
**moods**, kinds and definitions, XXIX-XXXI  
**multus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**-ne**, enclitic, 22, 27, *d*  
**nē**, *that not (lest)*, introducing negative clauses of purpose, 343, 344  
**nōlō**, conjugation, 665  
**nominative**, XXIV, *a*, *1*; *b*  
 as subject of a finite verb, 28  
 of pronouns expressed only for emphasis or contrast, 39, *b*; 264  
 predicate, 86-88  
**nōs**, declension, 652  
**noster**, declension, 643  
**nouns**, definition, *1*, *a*  
 kinds and definitions, *1*, *b-f*  
 first declension, 63, 636  
 second declension, 73, 97, 98, 637  
 third declension, 171, 189, 638, 639  
 fourth declension, 292, 640  
 fifth declension, 331, 641  
 predicate, 87  
 rules of gender, 64, *a*; 99, 171, *b*; 292 and *b*, 331  
**number**, singular and plural, XXIII  
**numerals**, definition, III, *c*  
 declension, 378  
 table of, 651  
**object**, definition, XIV, *a*  
 direct and indirect, XIV, *b*  
 of a transitive verb, 33  
**on account of**, how expressed in Latin, 195  
**order of words**, 35, 60, 81, 89, 228, 386, *b*  
**ordinals**, definition, III, *c*  
 declined like *bonus*, 378  
 table of, 651  
**participles**, definition and uses, XXXIV, *a-c*  
 agreement, 443  
 declension, 442, 645  
 formation, 441, *a*  
 in deponent verbs, 483; perfect, 483, *a*  
 no past and perfect active and no present passive, in Latin, XXXIV, *b*  
 often best rendered as a clause, 445  
 tenses, 444  
**partitive genitive**, 308, 309  
**parvus**, comparison, 317, 649  
**passive voice**, XXVIII, 237  
 formation, 238, *a*; 239, 286, *a*, *c*  
 agent expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, 242, 243  
**penult**, definition, *II*  
 when accented, 21  
**perfect tense**, formation of, active, 134 and *b*; passive, 286, *a*, *c*  
 definite and indefinite, 134, *a*  
**periphrastic conjugation**, passive, 473  
 synopsis of, 670

- person**, distinctions, II, *c*  
**personal pronouns**, see pronouns  
**phrase**, definition and kinds, XVI, *a-c*  
**place to which and from which**, 229,  
  230  
**pluperfect tense**, formation of, active,  
  223, *a*; passive, 286, *b*  
**plūs**, declension, 648  
**portus**, irregular dative and ablative  
  plural, 292, *a*  
**possessive adjectives**, see adjectives  
**possum**, how compounded, 411  
  conjugation, 664  
**potior**, conjugation, 669  
**predicate**, definition, XI, *c*  
  complete, XIII  
  simple, XII  
**predicate adjective**, agreement, 88  
  definition, XV  
**predicate nominative**, XV, *c*  
**predicate noun**, agreement, 87  
  definition, XV  
**prefixes**, 630  
**prepositions**, definition, VI  
  with the ablative, 194  
  with the accusative, 193  
**primary tenses**, 349  
**principal parts of verbs**, 132  
**proelium**, declension, 98, 637  
**pronouns**, definition, II, *a*  
  kinds and definitions, II, *c-h*  
  demonstrative, definition, II, *f*; de-  
    clension, 654; *hic* and *ille*, uses,  
    228; *is*, uses, 228; relation of *is*  
    to *hic* and *ille*, 148; *iste*, *idem*,  
    *ipse*, 410  
  indefinite, definition, II, *g*; de-  
    clension, 657; uses, 420; *quid* forms  
    used as pronouns, *quod* forms as  
    adjectives, 420, *e*  
  interrogative, definition, II, *e*; de-  
    clension, 153, 656; followed by  
    *cum*, p. 109, note 1  
  personal, definition, II, *c*; de-  
    clension, 652; nominative expressed  
    only for emphasis or contrast,  
    264; third person supplied by *is*,  
    sometimes by *hic* or *ille*, 263;  
    followed by *cum*, p. 109, note 1  
  possessive, see possessive adje-  
    ctives
- reflexive, definition, II, *h*; de-  
  clension, 653; use, 266; followed by  
  *cum*, p. 109, note 1  
**relative**, definition, II, *d*; agree-  
  ment, 247, 248; declension, 246,  
  655; followed by *cum*, p. 109,  
  note 1; referring to a personal  
  pronoun, 267  
**pronunciation**, sounds of letters, 4-6  
**puer**, declension, 97, 637  
**purpose**, dative of, 426, 427  
  expressed by the accusative of the  
  gerund or gerundive with *ad*,  
  461, 472  
  expressed by the genitive of the  
  gerund or gerundive with *causā*,  
  461, 472  
  expressed by the subjunctive with  
  *ut* and *nē*, 343, 344  
  not expressed by the infinitive,  
  343, *b*  
  substantive clauses of, 355, 356
- quā** in adverbial clauses, 497  
**-que**, enclitic, 22  
**questions**, indirect, 372, 373  
**qui**, declension, 246, 655  
**quidam**, 420, *d*; 657  
**quis**, declension, 153, 656  
**quisquam**, 420, 657  
**quisque**, 420, 657  
**quod clause of fact**, 495, 496
- reflexive pronouns**, see pronouns  
**regō**, conjugation, 660  
**relative pronouns**, see pronouns  
**rēs**, declension, 331, 641  
**result**, expressed by the subjunctive  
  with *ut* and *ut nōn*, 357, 358  
**rēx**, declension, 171, 638
- sē**, distinguished from *ipse*, 410, *c*  
**second declension**, 73, 97, 98, 637  
**secondary tenses**, 349  
**sentences**, definition, IX  
  kinds and definitions, X, *a-d*  
**separation**, expressed by the ablative,  
  281, 282  
**sequence of tenses**, 348-352  
**sequor**, conjugation, 669  
**space, extent of**, 332, 333

- specification, ablative of, 480, 481  
 stems of verbs, 132, 133  
**Stories from Roman History**, 552–  
 555  
**Stories of Hercules**, 529–538  
**Stories of Perseus**, 277, 291, 316, 339,  
 370, 391, 408  
**Stories of Ulysses**, 539–546  
**Story of the Aduatuci**, 524–528  
**subject**, definition, XI, b  
 complete, XIII  
 simple, XII  
 agreement of verb with, 29  
 not expressed, 264  
 of an infinitive, 399  
 of a verb, 28  
**subjunctive**, definition, XXX  
 formation, of present, 342; of im-  
 perfect, 347; of perfect and plu-  
 perfect, 371  
 in indirect questions, 372, 373  
 in purpose clauses, 343, 344, 355,  
 356  
 in result clauses, 357, 358  
 in temporal clauses with *cum*, 487,  
 488  
 tenses, 341; sequence of, 348–352  
**subordinate clauses** in indirect state-  
 ments, 501, 502  
**substantive clauses**, of fact with *quod*,  
 495, 496  
 of purpose, 355, 356  
**suffixes**, 632  
**suī**, declension, 653  
 distinguished from *ipse*, 410, c  
**sum**, conjugation, 663  
**summary of uses**, of nouns, 512  
 of verbs, 513  
**suus**, 278, 279  
 compared with *eius*, 279  
 omission of, 280  
**syllables**, number of, 8  
 division of, 9, 10; in compound  
 words, 10  
 how named, 11  
 long and short, 17–19  
**synopsis** of the verb, 671  
  
**temporal clauses** introduced by *cum*,  
 487, 488  
**tense**, XXXIII, a, b  
**tenses**, distinction in use between the  
 perfect and the imperfect, 134, a  
 of the infinitive in indirect state-  
 ments, 402  
 primary and secondary, 349  
 sequence of, 348–352  
 sign of the future, 126, a  
 sign of the imperfect, 120, b  
**terminations**, of first declension, 63  
 of second declension, 73  
 of third declension, 171, 189  
 of fourth declension, 292  
 of fifth declension, 331  
**third declension**, 171, 638  
 i-stems, 189, 639  
**time**, at which and within which, 218,  
 219  
 extent of, 332, 333  
**to**, how expressed in Latin, 195  
**towns**, names of, expressing place to  
 which and from which, 229, 230  
**transitive verb**, IV, b  
**trēs**, declension, 646  
**tū**, declension, 652  
**tuus**, compared with *vester*, 278  
  
**-ubus**, in irregular dative and ablative  
 plural, 292, a  
**ultima**, 11  
**ūnus**, declension, 646  
**ut**, in adverbial clauses, 497  
 in clauses of purpose, 343, 344, 355,  
 356  
 in clauses of result, 357, 358  
 translations, 343, I and b  
  
**verbs**, definition, IV, a  
 kinds and definitions, IV, b–f  
 agreement, 29; in relative clauses,  
 267  
 case, of subject, 28; of object, 33  
 conjugations, how distinguished, 38  
 deponent, form, meaning, how  
 distinguished, 482; active forms,  
 483; participles of both voices,  
 483; perfect participle, active in  
 meaning, 483, a; conjugation, 669  
 intransitive, which are transitive in  
 English, 432, 433  
 irregular, see *eō*, *ferō*, *fiō*, *mālō*, *nōlō*,  
*possum*, *sum*, and *volō*

of first conjugation, 658  
of second conjugation, 659  
of third conjugation, 660, 661  
of fourth conjugation, 662  
passive periphrastic conjugation,  
    473; synopsis of, 670  
personal endings, 25, *a*; 39, 134  
    principal parts, 132  
*vereor*, conjugation, 669  
*vester*, compared with *tuus*, 278  
*vir*, declension, 97, 637

*virtūs*, declension, 171, 638  
*vis*, declension, 642  
**vocative case**, XXIV, *b*  
**voice**, XXVIII  
*volō*, conjugation, 665  
*vōs*, declension, 652  
**vowels**, how pronounced, 4  
    long, 14, 15  
    short, 12, 13  
**with**, how expressed in Latin, 195





14 DAY USE  
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED

**LOAN DEPT.**

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or  
on the date to which renewed.  
Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

2 Jun '61 JR

RECD LD

JUN 1 1961

5 Dec '61 RH

REC'D LD

NOV 22 1961

SENT ON ILL

JUL 14 2003

U. C. BERKELEY

LD 21A-50m-12-'60  
(B6221s10)476B

General Library  
University of California  
Berkeley



